APEX CALCULUS I
Late Transcendentals

University of North Dakota

Adapted from APEX Calculus by
Gregory Hartman, Ph.D.
Department of Applied Mathematics
Virginia Military Institute

Contributing Authors
Troy Siemers, Ph.D.
Department of Applied Mathematics
Virginia Military Institute

Brian Heinold, Ph.D.
Department of Mathematics and Computer Science
Mount Saint Mary's University

Dimplekumar Chalishajar, Ph.D.
Department of Applied Mathematics
Virginia Military Institute

Editor
Jennifer Bowen, Ph.D.
Department of Mathematics and Computer Science
The College of Wooster

Contents

Preface

A Note on Using this Text

Thank you for reading this short preface. Allow us to share a few key points about the text so that you may better understand what you will find beyond this page.

This text comprises a three–volume series on Calculus. The first part covers material taught in many “Calculus 1” courses: limits, derivatives, and the basics of integration, found in Chapters 1 through 6. The second text covers material often taught in “Calculus 2”: integration and its applications, along with an introduction to sequences, series and Taylor Polynomials, found in Chapters 7 through 10. The third text covers topics common in “Calculus 3” or “Multivariable Calculus”: parametric equations, polar coordinates, vector–valued functions, and functions of more than one variable, found in Chapters 11 through 13. All three are available separately for free.

Printing the entire text as one volume makes for a large, heavy, cumbersome book. One can certainly only print the pages they currently need, but some prefer to have a nice, bound copy of the text. Therefore this text has been split into these three manageable parts, each of which can be purchased separately.

A result of this splitting is that sometimes material is referenced that is not contained in the present text. The context should make it clear whether the “missing” material comes before or after the current portion. Downloading the appropriate pdf, or the entire *APEX Calculus LT* pdf, will give access to these topics.[1]

For Students: How to Read this Text

Mathematics textbooks have a reputation for being hard to read. High–level mathematical writing often seeks to say much with few words, and this style often seeps into texts of lower–level topics. This book was written with the goal of being easier to read than many other calculus textbooks, without becoming too verbose.

Each chapter and section starts with an introduction of the coming material, hopefully setting the stage for “why you should care,” and ends with a look ahead to see how the just-learned material helps address future problems. Additionally, each chapter includes a section zero, which provides a basic review and practice problems of pre-calculus skills. Since this content is a pre-requisite for calculus, reviewing and mastering these skills are considered your responsibility. This means that it is your responsibility to seek assistance outside of class from your instructor, the Math Learning Center or other math tutoring available on-campus. A solid understanding of these skills are essential to your success in solving calculus problems.

[1] The second and third parts are still being revised, but will be ready soon.

Please read the text; it is written to explain the concepts of Calculus. There are numerous examples to demonstrate the meaning of definitions, the truth of theorems, and the application of mathematical techniques. When you encounter a sentence you don't understand, read it again. If it still doesn't make sense, read on anyway, as sometimes confusing sentences are explained by later sentences.

You don't have to read every equation. The examples generally show "all" the steps needed to solve a problem. Sometimes reading through each step is helpful; sometimes it is confusing. When the steps are illustrating a new technique, one probably should follow each step closely to learn the new technique. When the steps are showing the mathematics needed to find a number to be used later, one can usually skip ahead and see how that number is being used, instead of getting bogged down in reading how the number was found.

Some proofs have been delayed until later (or omitted completely). In mathematics, *proving* something is always true is extremely important, and entails much more than testing to see if it works twice. However, students often are confused by the details of a proof, or become concerned that they should have been able to construct this proof on their own. To alleviate this potential problem, we do not include the more difficult proofs in the text. The interested reader is highly encouraged to find other proofs online or from their instructor. In most cases, one is very capable of understanding what a theorem *means* and *how to apply it* without knowing fully *why* it is true.

Work through the examples. The best way to learn mathematics is to do it. Reading about it (or watching someone else do it) is a poor substitute. For this reason, every page has a place for *you* to put *your* notes so that *you* can work out the examples. That being said, sometimes it is useful to watch someone work through an example. For this reason, this text also provides links to online videos where someone is working through a similar problem. If you want even more videos, these are generally chosen from

- Khan Academy: `https://www.khanacademy.org/`
- Math Doctor Bob: `http://www.mathdoctorbob.org/`
- Just Math Tutorials: `http://patrickjmt.com/` (unfortunately, they're not well organized)

Some other sites you may want to consider are

- Larry Green's Calculus Videos: `http://www.ltcconline.net/greenl/courses/105/videos/VideoIndex.htm`
- Mathispower4u: `http://www.mathispower4u.com/`
- Yay Math: `http://www.yaymath.org/` (for prerequisite material)

All of these sites are completely free (although some will ask you to donate). Here's a sample one:

Watch the video:
Practical Advice for Those Taking College Calculus at
`https://youtu.be/ILNfpJTZLxk`

Interactive, 3D Graphics

New to Version 3.0 is the addition of interactive, 3D graphics in the .pdf version. Nearly all graphs of objects in space can be rotated, shifted, and zoomed in/out so the reader can better understand the object illustrated.

As of this writing, the only pdf viewers that support these 3D graphics are Adobe Reader & Acrobat (and only the versions for PC / Mac / Unix / Linux computers, not tablets or smartphones). To activate the interactive mode, click on the image. Once activated, one can click/drag to rotate the object and use the scroll wheel on a mouse to zoom in/out. (A great way to investigate an image is to first zoom in on the page of the pdf viewer so the graphic itself takes up much of the screen, then zoom inside the graphic itself.) A CTRL-click/drag pans the object left/right or up/down. By right-clicking on the graph one can access a menu of other options, such as changing the lighting scheme or perspective. One can also revert the graph back to its default view. If you wish to deactivate the interactivity, one can right-click and choose the "Disable Content" option.

Thanks

There are many people who deserve recognition for the important role they have played in the development of this text. First, I thank Michelle for her support and encouragement, even as this "project from work" occupied my time and attention at home. Many thanks to Troy Siemers, whose most important contributions extend far beyond the sections he wrote or the 227 figures he coded in Asymptote for 3D interaction. He provided incredible support, advice and encouragement for which I am very grateful. My thanks to Brian Heinold and Dimplekumar Chalishajar for their contributions and to Jennifer Bowen for reading through so much material and providing great feedback early on. Thanks to Troy, Lee Dewald, Dan Joseph, Meagan Herald, Bill Lowe, John David, Vonda Walsh, Geoff Cox, Jessica Libertini and other faculty of VMI who have given me numerous suggestions and corrections based on their experience with teaching from the text. (Special thanks to Troy, Lee & Dan for their patience in teaching Calc III while I was still writing the Calc III material.) Thanks to Randy Cone for encouraging his tutors of VMI's Open Math Lab to read through the text and check the solutions, and thanks to the tutors for spending their time doing so. A very special thanks to Kristi Brown and Paul Janiczek who took this opportunity far above & beyond what I expected, meticulously checking every solution and carefully reading every example. Their comments have been extraordinarily helpful. I am also thankful for the support provided by Wane Schneiter, who as my Dean provided me with extra time to work on this project. I am blessed to have so many people give of their time to make this book better.

APEX — Affordable Print and Electronic teXts

APEX is a consortium of authors who collaborate to produce high–quality, low–cost textbooks. The current textbook–writing paradigm is facing a potential revolution as desktop publishing and electronic formats increase in popularity. However, writing a good textbook is no easy task, as the time requirements alone are substantial. It takes countless hours of work to produce text, write examples and exercises, edit and publish. Through collaboration, however, the cost to any individual can be lessened, allowing us to create texts that we freely distribute electronically and sell in printed form for an incredibly low cost. Having said that, nothing is entirely free; someone always bears some cost. This text "cost" the authors of this book their time, and that was not enough. *APEX Calculus* would not exist had not the Virginia Military Institute, through a generous Jackson–Hope grant, given the lead author significant time away from teaching so he could focus on this text.

Each text is available as a free .pdf, protected by a Creative Commons Attribution — Noncommercial 4.0 copyright. That means you can give the .pdf to anyone you like, print it in any form you like, and even edit the original content and redistribute it. If you do the latter, you must clearly reference this work and you cannot sell your edited work for money.

We encourage others to adapt this work to fit their own needs. One might add sections that are "missing" or remove sections that your students won't need. The source files can be found at `https://github.com/APEXCalculus`.

You can learn more at `www.vmi.edu/APEX`.

Greg Hartman

Creating APEX LT

Starting with the source at `https://github.com/APEXCalculus`, faculty at the University of North Dakota made several substantial changes to create APEX Late Transcendentals. The most obvious change was to rearrange the text to delay proving the derivative of transcendental functions until Calculus 2. UND also created the prerequisite sections, included links to videos and Geogebra, and added several examples and exercises. In the end, though, nearly every section had some edits made, resulting in a document that is about 20% longer. The source files can now be found at
`https://github.com/teepeemm/APEXCalculusLT_Source`.

Calculus I

1: LIMITS

Calculus means "a method of calculation or reasoning." When one computes the sales tax on a purchase, one employs a simple calculus. When one finds the area of a polygonal shape by breaking it up into a set of triangles, one is using another calculus. Proving a theorem in geometry employs yet another calculus.

Despite the wonderful advances in mathematics that had taken place into the first half of the 17^{th} century, mathematicians and scientists were keenly aware of what they *could not do.* (This is true even today.) In particular, two important concepts eluded mastery by the great thinkers of that time: area and rates of change.

Area seems innocuous enough; areas of circles, rectangles, parallelograms, etc., are standard topics of study for students today just as they were then. However, the areas of *arbitrary* shapes could not be computed, even if the boundary of the shape could be described exactly.

Rates of change were also important. When an object moves at a constant rate of change, then "distance = rate $\times$ time." But what if the rate is not constant — can distance still be computed? Or, if distance is known, can we discover the rate of change?

It turns out that these two concepts were related. Two mathematicians, Sir Isaac Newton and Gottfried Leibniz, are credited with independently formulating a system of computing that solved the above problems and showed how they were connected. Their system of reasoning was "a" calculus. However, as the power and importance of their discovery took hold, it became known to many as "the" calculus. Today, we generally shorten this to discuss "calculus."

The foundation of "the calculus" is the *limit.* It is a tool to describe a particular behavior of a function. This chapter begins our study of the limit by approximating its value graphically and numerically. After a formal definition of the limit, properties are established that make "finding limits" tractable. Once the limit is understood, then the problems of area and rates of change can be approached.

1.0 Chapter Prerequisites

The material in this section provides a basic review of and practice problems for pre-calculus skills essential to your success in Calculus. You should take time to review this section and work the suggested problems (checking your answers against those in the back of the book). Since this content is a pre-requisite for Calculus, reviewing and mastering these skills are considered your responsibility. This means that minimal, and in some cases no, class time will be devoted to this section. When you identify areas that you need help with we strongly urge you to seek assistance outside of class from your instructor or other student tutoring service.

Functions

A **function** f is a rule that assigns each element x from a set (called the domain) to exactly one element, called $f(x)$, in another set. Unless we say otherwise, the **domain** is the set of all real numbers for which the rule makes sense and defines a real number. All possible values of $f(x)$ are called the **range** of f. We use four ways to represent a function.

- By a graph
- By a table of values
- By an explicit formula
- By a verbal description

Throughout the book we will use several representations of any given function to help give us a better understanding of the problem. The graphs in Figure 1.1 contain most of the base functions we can use to build other functions using transformations.

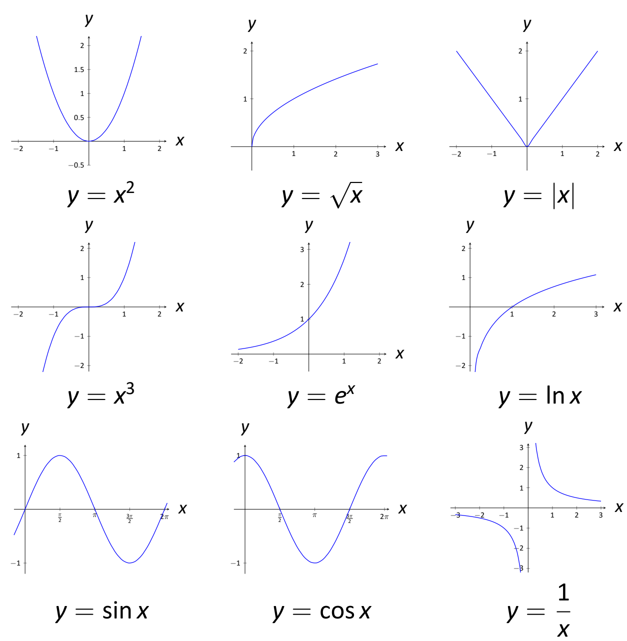


Figure 1.1: Basic Function Graphs

Notes:

We will often transform these functions into other functions as given in the next two figures.

The function	shifts $f(x)$
$y = f(x) + c$	c units upward
$y = f(x) - c$	c units downward
$y = f(x + c)$	c units left
$y = f(x - c)$	c units right

Figure 1.2: Translations of Basic Functions with $c > 0$

The function	transforms $f(x)$ by
$y = cf(x)$	stretching vertically by a factor of c
$y = \frac{1}{c}f(x)$	shrinking vertically by a factor of c
$y = f(cx)$	shrinking horizontally by a factor of c
$y = f(\frac{x}{c})$	stretching horizontally by a factor of c
$y = -f(x)$	reflecting about the x-axis
$y = f(-x)$	reflecting about the y-axis

Figure 1.3: Scaling Basic Functions with $c > 1$

Domain

We said above that domain is the set of real numbers for which the function (rule) defines a real number and makes sense. Ask yourself, "what values can I put into the function and get a real value out?" There are generally two key expressions that will limit the domain of a function from all real numbers. We may not divide by zero and we may not have a negative number underneath an even root. The following examples illustrate how we restrict the domain when we see these expressions.

Example 1.0.1 Finding a domain
Find the domain of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 4}$.

Solution The square root of a negative number is not defined as a real number so the domain of f will be all real numbers for which $x - 4 \geq 0$ which is $x \geq 4$. In interval notation, this is $[4, \infty)$.

Notes:

Example 1.0.2 Finding a domain

Find the domain of the function $g(x) = \dfrac{3}{x^2-9}$.

Solution We cannot divide by zero so we factor the denominator of g and exclude those values where the denominator is zero.

$$g(x) = \frac{3}{x^2-9} = \frac{3}{(x-3)(x+3)}$$

We see that $x \neq 3, -3$ for g to be defined, which is written in interval notation as $(-\infty, -3) \cup (-3, 3) \cup (3, \infty)$.

Example 1.0.3 Finding a domain

Find the domain of the function $h(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-4}}$

Solution For h to be defined as a real number we must have $x^2 - 4 > 0$. This is equivalent to $(x-2)(x+2) > 0$. From the sign chart below, we can see that $x^2 - 4$ will be greater than zero on $(-\infty, -2) \cup (2, \infty)$.

x		-2		2	
x^2-4	$+$		$-$		$+$

Notes:

Exercises 1.0 (solutions)

Problems

In Exercises 1 – 10, find the domain of the given function.

1. $g(x) = (x-3)^2 + 5$

2. $f(x) = \sqrt{x+7} - 3$

3. $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 6x - 7}$

4. $f(x) = 3\left|x-2\right| + 4$

5. $f(x) = \dfrac{x-3}{x^2 - 4x + 4}$

6. $g(x) = \dfrac{x-3}{x^2 - x + 6}$

7. $h(x) = \sin(x + 3\pi)$

8. $f(x) = \dfrac{4x+1}{\sqrt{x^2-4}}$

9. $h(x) = \dfrac{\cos x}{x}$

10. $g(x) = \left|x^2 - x - 6\right|$

In Exercises 11 – 14, evaluate the expressions for the given f.

11. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 3 & x < 2 \\ x - 4 & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$

12. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 3 & x \leq -1 \\ 2 - x^2 & -1 < x < 2 \\ -3 & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$

13. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 3 & x < -2 \\ x^2 + 4 & -2 \leq x \leq 3 \\ e^{-x} & x > 3 \end{cases}$

14. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x & x \leq 0 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}$

In Exercises 15 – 17, evaluate the expressions for the given f.

15. $f(x) = 3x^2 - 2x + 6$
    (a) $f(2)$
    (b) $f(-1)$
    (c) $f(a)$
    (a) $f(x+h)$
    (b) $\dfrac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$

16. $f(x) = \sqrt{x-2}$
    (a) $f(4)$
    (b) $f(-3)$
    (c) $f(t)$
    (a) $f(x+h)$
    (b) $\dfrac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$
    (a) $f(-1)$
    (b) $f(9)$
    (c) $f(t+3)$
    (a) $f(x+h)$
    (b) $\dfrac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$

1.1 An Introduction To Limits

We begin our study of *limits* by considering examples that demonstrate key concepts that will be explained as we progress.

Consider the function $y = \frac{\sin x}{x}$. When x is near the value 1, what value (if any) is y near?

While our question is not precisely formed (what constitutes "near the value 1"?), the answer does not seem difficult to find. One might think first to look at a graph of this function to approximate the appropriate y values. Consider Figure 1.4(a), where $y = \frac{\sin x}{x}$ is graphed. For values of x near 1, it seems that y takes on values near 0.85. In fact, when $x = 1$, then $y = \frac{\sin 1}{1} \approx 0.84$, so it makes sense that when x is "near" 1, y will be "near" 0.84.

Consider this again at a different value for x. When x is near 0, what value (if any) is y near? By considering Figure 1.4(b), one can see that it seems that y takes on values near 1. But what happens when $x = 0$? We have

$$y \rightarrow \frac{\sin 0}{0} \rightarrow \text{“}\frac{0}{0}\text{”}.$$

The expression "0/0" has no value; it is *indeterminate.* Such an expression gives no information about what is going on with the function nearby. We cannot find out how y behaves near $x = 0$ for this function simply by letting $x = 0$.

Finding a limit entails understanding how a function behaves near a particular value of x. Before continuing, it will be useful to establish some notation. Let $y = f(x)$; that is, let y be a function of x for some function f. The expression "the limit of y as x approaches 1" describes a number, often referred to as L, that y nears as x nears 1. We write all this as

$$\lim_{x\to 1} y = \lim_{x\to 1} f(x) = L.$$

This is not a complete definition (that will come in the next section); this is a pseudo-definition that will allow us to explore the idea of a limit.

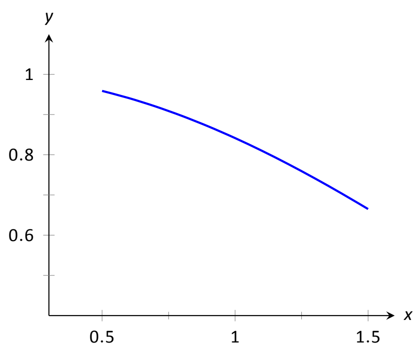
Above, where $f(x) = \sin(x)/x$, we approximated

$$\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{\sin x}{x} \approx 0.84 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} \approx 1.$$

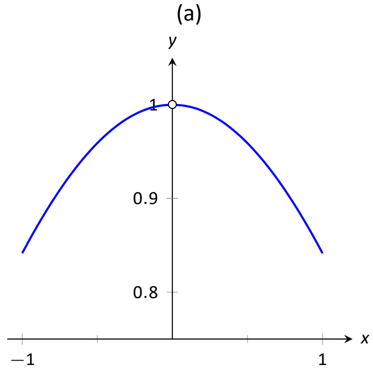
(We *approximated* these limits, hence used the "$\approx$" symbol, since we are working with the pseudo-definition of a limit, not the actual definition.)

Once we have the true definition of a limit, we will find limits *analytically*; that is, exactly using a variety of mathematical tools. For now, we will *approximate* limits both graphically and numerically. Graphing a function can provide a good approximation, though often not very precise. Numerical methods can

Notes:



(a)



(b)

Figure 1.4: $\sin(x)/x$ near $x = 1$ (top) and $x = 0$ (bottom).

provide a more accurate approximation. We have already approximated limits graphically, so we now turn our attention to numerical approximations.

Consider again $\lim_{x\to 1}\sin(x)/x$. To approximate this limit numerically, we can create a table of x and $f(x)$ values where x is "near" 1. This is done in Figure 1.5(a).

Notice that for values of x near 1, we have $\sin(x)/x$ near 0.841. The $x=1$ row is in bold to highlight the fact that when considering limits, we are *not* concerned with the value of the function at that particular x value; we are only concerned with the values of the function when x is *near* 1.

Now approximate $\lim_{x\to 0}\sin(x)/x$ numerically. We already approximated the value of this limit as 1 graphically in Figure 1.4(b). The table in Figure 1.5(b) shows the value of $\sin(x)/x$ for values of x near 0. Ten places after the decimal point are shown to highlight how close to 1 the value of $\sin(x)/x$ gets as x takes on values very near 0. We include the $x=0$ row in bold again to stress that we are not concerned with the value of our function at $x=0$, only on the behavior of the function *near* 0.

This numerical method gives confidence to say that 1 is a good approximation of $\lim_{x\to 0}\sin(x)/x$; that is,

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\sin(x)/x \approx 1.$$

Later we will be able to prove that the limit is *exactly* 1.

x	$\sin(x)/x$
0.9	0.870363
0.99	0.844471
0.999	0.841772
1	**0.841471**
1.001	0.841170
1.01	0.838447
1.1	0.810189

(a)

x	$\sin(x)/x$
-0.1	0.9983341665
-0.01	0.9999833334
-0.001	0.9999998333
0	**not defined**
0.001	0.9999998333
0.01	0.9999833334
0.1	0.9983341665

(b)

Figure 1.5: Values of $\sin(x)/x$ with x near 1 and near 0.

Watch the video:
Intro to limits: What are limits? at
`https://www.khanacademy.org/video/introduction-to-limits-hd`

We now consider several examples that allow us to explore different aspects of the limit concept.

Example 1.1.1 Approximating the value of a limit

Use graphical and numerical methods to approximate

$$\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^2-x-6}{6x^2-19x+3}.$$

Solution To graphically approximate the limit, graph

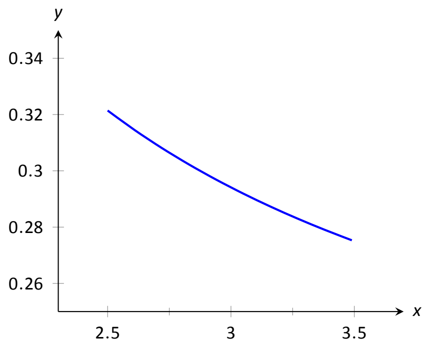
$$y=(x^2-x-6)/(6x^2-19x+3)$$

Notes:

on a small interval that contains 3. To numerically approximate the limit, create a table of values where the x values are near 3. This is done in Figure 1.6.

The graph shows that when x is near 3, the value of y is very near 0.3. By considering values of x near 3, we see that $y = 0.294$ is a better approximation. The graph and the table imply that

$$\lim_{x\to 3} \frac{x^2 - x - 6}{6x^2 - 19x + 3} \approx 0.294.$$



(a)

x	$\frac{x^2-x-6}{6x^2-19x+3}$
2.9	0.298780
2.99	0.294569
2.999	0.294163
3	**not defined**
3.001	0.294073
3.01	0.293669
3.1	0.289773

(b)

Figure 1.6: Graphically and numerically approximating a limit in Example 1.1.1.

This example may bring up a few questions about approximating limits (and the nature of limits themselves).

1. If a graph does not produce as good an approximation as a table, why bother with it?

2. How many values of x in a table are "enough?" In the previous example, could we have just used $x = 3.001$ and found a fine approximation?

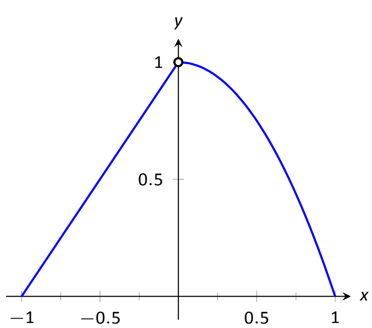
Graphs are useful since they give a visual understanding concerning the behavior of a function. Sometimes a function may act "erratically" near certain x values which is hard to discern numerically but very plain graphically. Since graphing utilities are very accessible, it makes sense to make proper use of them.

Since tables and graphs are used only to *approximate* the value of a limit, there is not a firm answer to how many data points are "enough." Include enough so that a trend is clear, and use values (when possible) both less than and greater than the value in question. In Example 1.1.1, we used both values less than and greater than 3. Had we used just $x = 3.001$, we might have been tempted to conclude that the limit had a value of 0.3. While this is not far off, we could do better. Using values "on both sides of 3" helps us identify trends.

Example 1.1.2 Approximating the value of a limit

Graphically and numerically approximate the limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches 0, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & x < 0 \\ -x^2+1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$



(a)

x	$f(x)$
−0.1	0.9
−0.01	0.99
−0.001	0.999
0.001	0.999999
0.01	0.9999
0.1	0.99

(b)

Figure 1.7: Graphically and numerically approximating a limit in Example 1.1.2.

SOLUTION Again we graph $f(x)$ and create a table of its values near $x = 0$ to approximate the limit. Note that this is a piecewise defined function, so it behaves differently on either side of 0. Figure 1.7(a) shows a graph of $f(x)$, and on either side of 0 it seems the y values approach 1. Note that $f(0)$ is not actually defined, as indicated in the graph with the open circle.

Notes:

The table shown in Figure 1.7(b) shows values of $f(x)$ for values of x near 0. It is clear that as x takes on values very near 0, $f(x)$ takes on values very near 1. It turns out that if we let $x = 0$ for either "piece" of $f(x)$, 1 is returned; this is significant and we'll return to this idea later.

The graph and table allow us to say that $\lim_{x \to 0} f(x) \approx 1$; in fact, we are probably very sure it *equals* 1.

Identifying When Limits Do Not Exist

A function may not have a limit for all values of x. That is, we cannot say $\lim\limits_{x \to c} f(x) = L$ for some numbers L for all values of c, for there may not be a number that $f(x)$ is approaching. There are three ways in which a limit may fail to exist.

1. The function $f(x)$ may approach different values on either side of c.
2. The function may grow without upper or lower bound as x approaches c.
3. The function may oscillate as x approaches c.

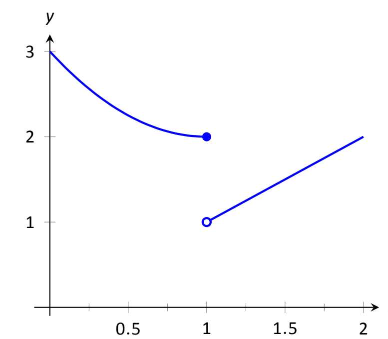
We'll explore each of these in turn.

Example 1.1.3 Different Values Approached From Left and Right

Explore why $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} f(x)$ does not exist, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 2x + 3 & x \leq 1 \\ x & x > 1 \end{cases}.$$

Solution A graph of $f(x)$ around $x = 1$ and a table are given in Figure 1.8. It is clear that as x approaches 1, $f(x)$ does not seem to approach a single number. Instead, it seems as though $f(x)$ approaches two different numbers. When considering values of x less than 1 (approaching 1 from the left), it seems that $f(x)$ is approaching 2; when considering values of x greater than 1 (approaching 1 from the right), it seems that $f(x)$ is approaching 1. Recognizing this behavior is important; we'll study this in greater depth later. Right now, it suffices to say that the limit does not exist since $f(x)$ is not approaching one value as x approaches 1.



(a)

x	$f(x)$
0.9	2.01
0.99	2.0001
0.999	2.000001
1.001	1.001
1.01	1.01
1.1	1.1

(b)

Figure 1.8: Graphically and numerically observing no limit as $x \to 1$ in Example 1.1.3.

Notes:

Example 1.1.4 The Function Grows Without Bound

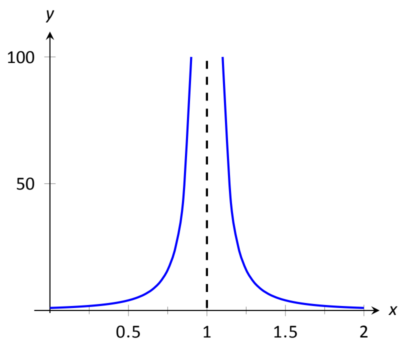
Explore why $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} 1/(x-1)^2$ does not exist.

Solution A graph and table of $f(x) = 1/(x-1)^2$ are given in Figure 1.9. Both show that as x approaches 1, $f(x)$ grows larger and larger.

We can deduce this on our own, without the aid of the graph and table. If x is near 1, then $(x-1)^2$ is very small, and:

$$\frac{1}{\text{very small number}} = \text{very large number}.$$

Since $f(x)$ is not approaching a single number, we conclude that $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} \dfrac{1}{(x-1)^2}$ does not exist.



(a)

x	$f(x)$
0.9	100
0.99	10000
0.999	1×10^6
1.001	1×10^6
1.01	10000
1.1	100

(b)

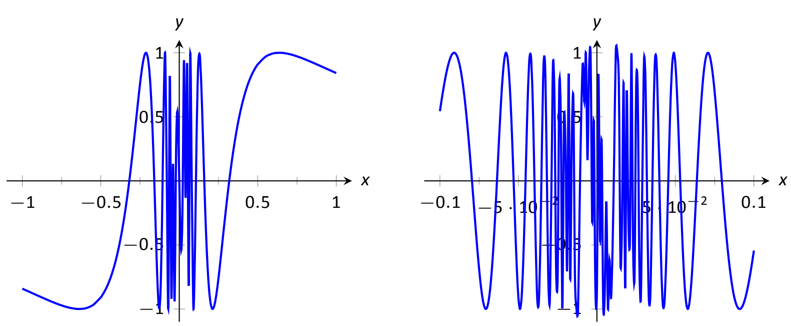
Figure 1.9: Graphically and numerically observing no limit as $x \to 1$ in Example 1.1.4.

Example 1.1.5 The Function Oscillates

Explore why $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \sin(1/x)$ does not exist.

Solution Two graphs of $f(x) = \sin(1/x)$ are given in Figure 1.10. Figure 1.10(a) shows $f(x)$ on the interval $[-1, 1]$; notice how $f(x)$ seems to oscillate near $x = 0$. One might think that despite the oscillation, as x approaches 0, $f(x)$ approaches 0. However, Figure 1.10(b) zooms in on $\sin(1/x)$, on the interval $[-0.1, 0.1]$. Here the oscillation is even more pronounced. Finally, in the table in Figure 1.10(c), we see $\sin(x)/x$ evaluated for values of x near 0. As x approaches 0, $f(x)$ does not appear to approach any value.

It can be shown that in reality, as x approaches 0, $\sin(1/x)$ takes on all values between -1 and 1 infinitely many times! Because of this oscillation, $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \sin(1/x)$ does not exist.



(a) (b)

x	$\sin(1/x)$
0.1	-0.544021
0.01	-0.506366
0.001	0.826880
0.0001	-0.305614
1.0×10^{-5}	0.035749
1.0×10^{-6}	-0.349994
1.0×10^{-7}	0.420548

(c)

Figure 1.10: Observing that $f(x) = \sin(1/x)$ has no limit as $x \to 0$ in Example 1.1.5.

Notes:

Limits of Difference Quotients

We have approximated limits of functions as x approached a particular number. We will consider another important kind of limit after explaining a few key ideas.

Let $f(x)$ represent the position function, in feet, of some particle that is moving in a straight line, where x is measured in seconds. Let's say that when $x = 1$, the particle is at position 10 ft., and when $x = 5$, the particle is at 20 ft. Another way of expressing this is to say

$$f(1) = 10 \quad \text{and} \quad f(5) = 20.$$

Since the particle traveled 10 feet in 4 seconds, we can say the particle's *average velocity* was 2.5 ft/s. We write this calculation using a "quotient of differences," or, a *difference quotient*:

$$\frac{f(5) - f(1)}{5 - 1} = \frac{10}{4} = 2.5\text{ft/s}.$$

This difference quotient can be thought of as the familiar "rise over run" used to compute the slopes of lines. In fact, that is essentially what we are doing: given two points on the graph of f, we are finding the slope of the *secant line* through those two points. See Figure 1.11.

Now consider finding the average speed on another time interval. We again start at $x = 1$, but consider the position of the particle h seconds later. That is, consider the positions of the particle when $x = 1$ and when $x = 1 + h$. The difference quotient is now

$$\frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{(1+h) - 1} = \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h}.$$

Let $f(x) = -1.5x^2 + 11.5x$; note that $f(1) = 10$ and $f(5) = 20$, as in our discussion. We can compute this difference quotient for all values of h (even negative values!) except $h = 0$, for then we get "0/0," the indeterminate form introduced earlier. For all values $h \neq 0$, the difference quotient computes the average velocity of the particle over an interval of time of length h starting at $x = 1$.

For small values of h, i.e., values of h close to 0, we get average velocities over very short time periods and compute secant lines over small intervals. See Figure 1.12. This leads us to wonder what the limit of the difference quotient is as h approaches 0. That is,

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} = \ ?$$

As we do not yet have a true definition of a limit nor an exact method for computing it, we settle for approximating the value. While we could graph the

Notes:

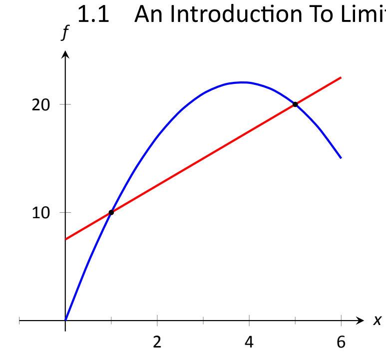


Figure 1.11: Interpreting a difference quotient as the slope of a secant line.

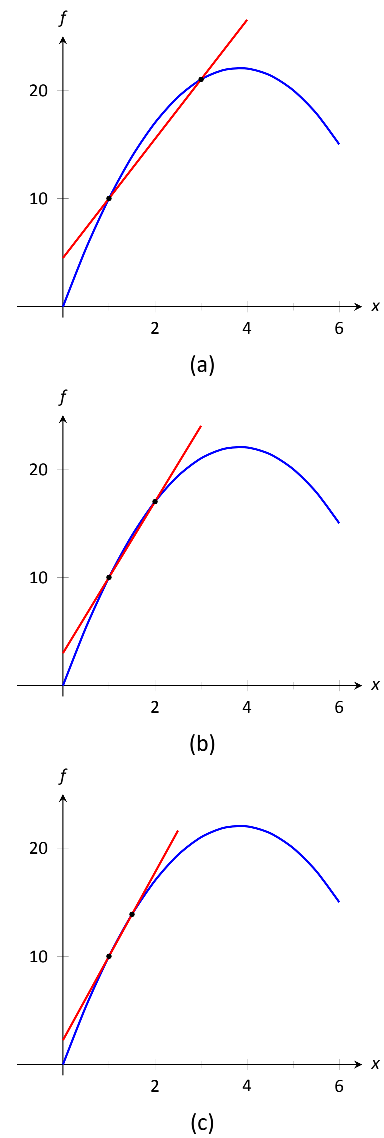


Figure 1.12: Secant lines of $f(x)$ at $x = 1$ and $x = 1 + h$, for shrinking values of h (i.e., $h \to 0$).

difference quotient (where the x-axis would represent h values and the y-axis would represent values of the difference quotient) we settle for making a table. See Figure 1.13. The table gives us reason to assume the value of the limit is about 8.5.

h	$\frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h}$
-0.5	9.250
-0.1	8.650
-0.01	8.515
0.01	8.485
0.1	8.350
0.5	7.750

Figure 1.13: The difference quotient for $f(x) = -1.5x^2 + 11.5x$ evaluated at values of h near 0.

Proper understanding of limits is key to understanding calculus. With limits, we can accomplish seemingly impossible mathematical things, like adding up an infinite number of numbers (and not get infinity) and finding the slope of a line between two points, where the "two points" are actually the same point. These are not just mathematical curiosities; they allow us to link position, velocity and acceleration together, connect cross-sectional areas to volume, find the work done by a variable force, and much more.

In the next section we give the formal definition of the limit and begin our study of finding limits analytically. In the following exercises, we continue our introduction and approximate the value of limits.

Notes:

Exercises 1.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. In your own words, what does it mean to "find the limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches 3"?

2. An expression of the form $\frac{0}{0}$ is called ____.

3. T/F: The limit of $f(x)$ as x approaches 5 is $f(5)$.

4. Describe three situations where $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x)$ does not exist.

5. In your own words, what is a difference quotient?

Problems

In Exercises 6 – 16, approximate the given limits both numerically and graphically.

6. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} x^2 + 3x - 5$

7. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} x^3 - 3x^2 + x - 5$

8. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x+1}{x^2+3x}$

9. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} \dfrac{x^2-2x-3}{x^2-4x+3}$

10. $\lim\limits_{x\to -1} \dfrac{x^2+8x+7}{x^2+6x+5}$

11. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2+7x+10}{x^2-4x+4}$

12. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} f(x)$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x+2 & x \leq 2 \\ 3x-5 & x > 2 \end{cases}.$$

13. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} f(x)$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2-x+1 & x \leq 3 \\ 2x+1 & x > 3 \end{cases}.$$

14. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} f(x)$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & x \leq 0 \\ x^2+3x+1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

15. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi/2} f(x)$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x & x \leq \pi/2 \\ \cos x & x > \pi/2 \end{cases}.$$

In Exercises 16 – 25, a function f and a value a are given. Approximate the limit of the difference quotient, $\lim\limits_{h\to 0} \dfrac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h}$, using $h = \pm 0.1, \pm 0.01$.

16. $f(x) = -7x + 2, \quad a = 3$

17. $f(x) = 9x + 0.06, \quad a = -1$

18. $f(x) = x^2 + 3x - 7, \quad a = 1$

19. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x+1}, \quad a = 2$

20. $f(x) = -4x^2 + 5x - 1, \quad a = -3$

21. $f(x) = \ln x, \quad a = 5$

22. $f(x) = \sin x, \quad a = \pi$

23. $f(x) = \cos x, \quad a = \pi$

24. $f(x) = \sqrt{x+4}, \quad a = 0$

1.2 Epsilon-Delta Definition of a Limit

This section introduces the formal definition of a limit. Many refer to this as "the epsilon–delta," definition, referring to the letters ε and δ of the Greek alphabet.

Before we give the actual definition, let's consider a few informal ways of describing a limit. Given a function $y = f(x)$ and an x-value, c, we say that "the limit of the function f, as x approaches c, is a value L":

1. if "y tends to L" as "x tends to c."

2. if "y approaches L" as "x approaches c."

3. if "y is near L" whenever "x is near c."

The problem with these definitions is that the words "tends," "approach," and especially "near" are not exact. In what way does the variable x tend to, or approach, c? How near do x and y have to be to c and L, respectively?

The definition we describe in this section comes from formalizing **3**. A quick restatement gets us closer to what we want:

3′. If x is within a certain *tolerance level* of c, then the corresponding value $y = f(x)$ is within a certain *tolerance level* of L.

The traditional notation for the x-tolerance is the lowercase Greek letter delta, or δ, and the y-tolerance is denoted by lowercase epsilon, or ε. One more rephrasing of **3′** nearly gets us to the actual definition:

3″. If x is within δ units of c, then the corresponding value of y is within ε units of L.

We can write "x is within δ units of c" mathematically as

$$|x - c| < \delta, \qquad \text{which is equivalent to} \qquad c - \delta < x < c + \delta.$$

Letting the symbol "$\longrightarrow$" represent the word "implies," we can rewrite **3″** as

$$|x - c| < \delta \longrightarrow |y - L| < \varepsilon \qquad \text{or} \qquad c - \delta < x < c + \delta \longrightarrow L - \varepsilon < y < L + \varepsilon.$$

The point is that δ and ε, being tolerances, can be any positive (but typically small) values. Finally, we have the formal definition of the limit with the notation seen in the previous section.

Notes:

Definition 1 The Limit of a Function f

Let I be an open interval containing c, and let f be a function defined on I, except possibly at c. The **limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches c, is L**, denoted by

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L,$$

means that given any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \neq c$, if $|x - c| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$.

(Mathematicians often enjoy writing ideas without using any words. Here is the wordless definition of the limit:

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L \iff \forall\, \varepsilon > 0, \exists\, \delta > 0 \text{ s.t. } 0 < |x - c| < \delta \longrightarrow |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon.)$$

Note the order in which ε and δ are given. In the definition, the y-tolerance ε is given *first* and then the limit will exist **if** we can find an x-tolerance δ that works.

Watch the video:
Limits 1b — Delta-Epsilon Formulation at
`https://youtu.be/v5zsbgYrunM`

An example will help us understand this definition. Note that the explanation is long, but it will go through all steps necessary to understand the ideas.

Example 1.2.1 Evaluating a limit using the definition

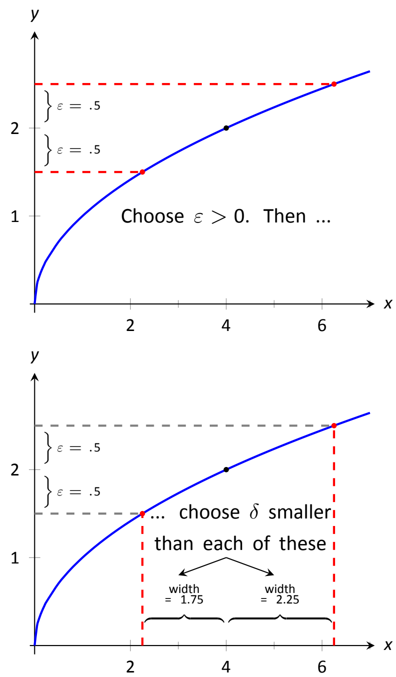
Show that $\lim_{x\to 4} \sqrt{x} = 2$.

Solution Before we use the formal definition, let's try some numerical tolerances. What if the y tolerance is 0.5, or $\varepsilon = 0.5$? How close to 4 does x have to be so that y is within 0.5 units of 2, i.e., $1.5 < y < 2.5$? In this case, we can proceed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 1.5 <& \quad y &< 2.5 \\ 1.5 <& \sqrt{x} &< 2.5 \\ 1.5^2 <& \quad x &< 2.5^2 \\ 2.25 <& \quad x &< 6.25. \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

So, what is the desired x tolerance? Remember, we want to find a symmetric interval of x values, namely $4-\delta < x < 4+\delta$. The lower bound of 2.25 is 1.75 units from 4; the upper bound of 6.25 is 2.25 units from 4. We need the smaller of these two distances; we must have $\delta \le 1.75$. See Figure 1.14.



With $\varepsilon = 0.5$, we pick any $\delta < 1.75$.

Figure 1.14: Illustrating the $\varepsilon - \delta$ process.

Given the y tolerance $\varepsilon = 0.5$, we have found an x tolerance, $\delta \le 1.75$, such that whenever x is within δ units of 4, then y is within ε units of 2. That's what we were trying to find.

Let's try another value of ε.

What if the y tolerance is 0.01, i.e., $\varepsilon = 0.01$? How close to 4 does x have to be in order for y to be within 0.01 units of 2 (or $1.99 < y < 2.01$)? Again, we just square these values to get $1.99^2 < x < 2.01^2$, or

$$3.9601 < x < 4.0401.$$

What is the desired x tolerance? In this case we must have $\delta \le 0.0399$, which is the minimum distance from 4 of the two bounds given above.

What we have so far: if $\varepsilon = 0.5$, then $\delta \le 1.75$ and if $\varepsilon = 0.01$, then $\delta \le 0.0399$. A pattern is not easy to see, so we switch to general ε try to determine δ symbolically. We start by assuming $y = \sqrt{x}$ is within ε units of 2:

$$\begin{aligned}
|y-2| &< \varepsilon \\
-\varepsilon < y-2 &< \varepsilon && \text{(Definition of absolute value)} \\
-\varepsilon < \sqrt{x}-2 &< \varepsilon && (y=\sqrt{x}) \\
2-\varepsilon < \sqrt{x} &< 2+\varepsilon && \text{(Add 2)} \\
(2-\varepsilon)^2 < x &< (2+\varepsilon)^2 && \text{(Square all)} \\
4-4\varepsilon+\varepsilon^2 < x &< 4+4\varepsilon+\varepsilon^2 && \text{(Expand)} \\
4-(4\varepsilon-\varepsilon^2) < x &< 4+(4\varepsilon+\varepsilon^2) && \text{(Rewrite in the desired form)} \\
-(4\varepsilon-\varepsilon^2) < x-4 &< (4\varepsilon+\varepsilon^2) && \text{(Rewrite in the desired form)}
\end{aligned}$$

The "desired form" in the last step is "$-$*something* $< x-4 <$ *something*." Since we want this last interval to describe an x tolerance around 4, we have that either $\delta \le 4\varepsilon - \varepsilon^2$ or $\delta \le 4\varepsilon + \varepsilon^2$, whichever is smaller:

$$\delta \le \min\{4\varepsilon - \varepsilon^2, 4\varepsilon + \varepsilon^2\}.$$

Since $\varepsilon > 0$, the minimum is $\delta \le 4\varepsilon - \varepsilon^2$. That's the formula: given an ε, set $\delta \le 4\varepsilon - \varepsilon^2$.

Notes:

We can check this for our previous values. If $\varepsilon = 0.5$, the formula gives $\delta \leq 4(0.5) - (0.5)^2 = 1.75$ and when $\varepsilon = 0.01$, the formula gives $\delta \leq 4(0.01) - (0.01)^2 = 0.399$.

So given any $\varepsilon > 0$, set $\delta \leq 4\varepsilon - \varepsilon^2$. Then if $|x - 4| < \delta$ (and $x \neq 4$), then $|f(x) - 2| < \varepsilon$, satisfying the definition of the limit. We have shown formally (and finally!) that $\lim\limits_{x \to 4} \sqrt{x} = 2$.

The previous example was a little long in that we sampled a few specific cases of ε before handling the general case. Normally this is not done. The previous example is also a bit unsatisfying in that $\sqrt{4} = 2$; why work so hard to prove something so obvious? Many ε-δ proofs are long and difficult to do. In this section, we will focus on examples where the answer is, frankly, obvious, because the non–obvious examples are even harder. In the next section we will learn some theorems that allow us to evaluate limits *analytically*, that is, without using the ε-δ definition.

We will follow a general pattern to work through δ-ε problems. In some sense, each starts out "backwards." That is, while we want to

1. start with $|x - c| < \delta$ and conclude that
2. $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$,

we actually start by assuming

1. $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$, then perform some algebraic manipulations to give an inequality of the form
2. $|x - c| <$ *something*.

When we have properly done this, the *something* on the "greater than" side of the inequality becomes our δ. We can refer to this as the "scratch–work" phase of our proof. Once we have δ, we can formally start with $|x - c| < \delta$ and use algebraic manipulations to conclude that $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$, usually by using the same steps of our "scratch–work" in reverse order.

We will highlight this process in the following examples.

Example 1.2.2 Evaluating a limit using the definition

Show that $\lim\limits_{x \to 1} 3x - 5 = -2$

Solution Let's do this example symbolically from the start.

Scratch-Work:

We start our scratch-work by considering $|f(x) - (-2)| < \varepsilon$:

Notes:

$$\begin{aligned}
|f(x) - (-2)| &< \varepsilon \\
|3x - 5 + 2| &< \varepsilon \\
|3x - 3| &< \varepsilon \\
3\,|x - 1| &< \varepsilon \\
|x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{3}
\end{aligned}$$

This suggests that we set $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{3}$,

Proof
Given $\varepsilon > 0$, choose $\delta = \dfrac{\varepsilon}{3}$. We assume $|x - 1| < \delta$

$$\begin{aligned}
|x - 1| &< \delta \\
|x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{3} && \text{(Our choice of } \delta\text{)} \\
3\,|x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{3} \cdot 3 && \text{(Multiply by 3)} \\
|3x - 3| &< \varepsilon && \text{(Simplify)} \\
|3x - 5 + 2| &< \varepsilon \\
|3x - 5 - (-2)| &< \varepsilon,
\end{aligned}$$

which is what we wanted to show. Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} 3x - 5 = -2$. □

Example 1.2.3 Evaluating a limit using the definition
Show that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} 4 - \dfrac{3}{2}x = 1$.

Solution Scratch-Work:
We start our scratch-work by considering $|f(x) - 1| < \varepsilon$:

Notes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
|f(x) - 1| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|4 - \frac{3}{2}x - 1\right| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|3 - \frac{3}{2}x\right| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|-\frac{3}{2}(-2 + x)\right| &< \varepsilon \\
\frac{3}{2}|x - 2| &< \varepsilon \\
|x - 2| &< \frac{2\varepsilon}{3}
\end{aligned}
$$

This suggests that we set $\delta = \frac{2\varepsilon}{3}$,

Proof
Given $\varepsilon > 0$, choose $\delta = \dfrac{2\varepsilon}{3}$. We assume $|x - 2| < \delta$

$$
\begin{aligned}
|x - 2| &< \delta \\
|x - 2| &< \frac{2\varepsilon}{3} \\
\frac{3}{2}|x - 2| &< \frac{2\varepsilon}{3} \cdot \frac{3}{2} \\
\left|-\frac{3}{2}(x - 2)\right| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|-\frac{3}{2}x + 3\right| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|4 - \frac{3}{2}x - 1\right| &< \varepsilon,
\end{aligned}
$$

which is what we wanted to show. Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} 4 - \dfrac{3}{2}x = 1$. □

Example 1.2.4 Evaluating a limit using the definition
Show that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^2 = 4$.

Solution Scratch-Work: We start our scratch-work by considering $|f(x) - 4| <$

Notes:

ε:

$$\begin{aligned}
|f(x) - 4| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|x^2 - 4\right| &< \varepsilon \qquad\qquad \text{(Now factor)} \\
|(x-2)(x+2)| &< \varepsilon \\
|x - 2| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{|x+2|}. \qquad\qquad (1.1)
\end{aligned}$$

We are at the phase of saying that $|x-2| < $ *something*, where *something*$=$ $\varepsilon/|x+2|$. We want to turn that *something* into δ. Could we not set $\delta = \dfrac{\varepsilon}{|x+2|}$?

We are close to an answer, but the catch is that δ must be a *constant* value (so it can't contain x). There is a way to work around this, but we do have to make an assumption. Remember that ε is supposed to be a small number, which implies that δ will also be a small value. In particular, we can (probably) assume that $\delta < 1$. If this is true, then $|x-2| < \delta$ would imply that $|x-2| < 1$, giving $1 < x < 3$.

Now, back to the fraction $\dfrac{\varepsilon}{|x+2|}$. If $1 < x < 3$, then $3 < x+2 < 5$ (add 2 to all terms in the inequality). Taking reciprocals, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{5} &< \frac{1}{|x+2|} < \frac{1}{3} \qquad\qquad \text{which implies} \\
\frac{1}{5} &< \frac{1}{|x+2|} \qquad\qquad \text{which implies} \\
\frac{\varepsilon}{5} &< \frac{\varepsilon}{|x+2|}. \qquad\qquad (1.2)
\end{aligned}$$

This suggests that we set $\delta \leq \dfrac{\varepsilon}{5}$. This ends our scratch–work, and we begin the formal proof (which also helps us understand why this was a good choice of δ).

Proof

Given ε, let $\delta \leq \varepsilon/5$. We want to show that when $|x-2| < \delta$, then $\left|x^2 - 4\right| < \varepsilon$. We start with $|x-2| < \delta$:

$$\begin{aligned}
|x-2| &< \delta \\
|x-2| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{5} \\
|x-2| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{5} < \frac{\varepsilon}{|x+2|} \qquad \text{(for } x \text{ near 2, from Equation (1.2))} \\
|x-2| \cdot |x+2| &< \varepsilon \\
|(x-2)(x+2)| &< \varepsilon \\
\left|x^2 - 4\right| &< \varepsilon,
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

which is what we wanted to show. Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^2 = 4$. $\square$

We have arrived at $\left|x^2 - 4\right| < \varepsilon$ as desired. Note again, in order to make this happen we needed δ to first be less than 1. That is a safe assumption; we want ε to be arbitrarily small, forcing δ to also be small.

We have also picked δ to be smaller than "necessary." We could get by with a slightly larger δ, as shown in Figure 1.15. The dashed outer lines show the boundaries defined by our choice of ε. The dotted inner lines show the boundaries defined by setting $\delta = \varepsilon/5$. Note how these dotted lines are within the dashed lines. That is perfectly fine; by choosing x within the dotted lines we are guaranteed that $f(x)$ will be within ε of 4.

In summary, given $\varepsilon > 0$, set $\delta \leq \varepsilon/5$. Then $|x-2| < \delta$ implies $|x^2 - 4| < \varepsilon$ (i.e. $|y-4| < \varepsilon$) as desired. This shows that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^2 = 4$. Figure 1.15 gives a visualization of this; by restricting x to values within $\delta = \varepsilon/5$ of 2, we see that $f(x)$ is within ε of 4.

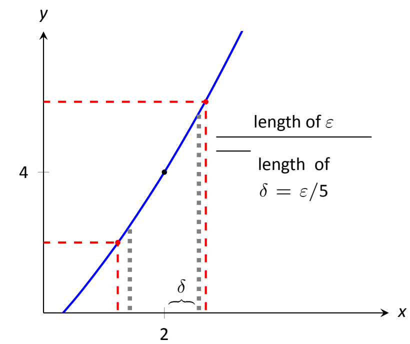


Figure 1.15: Choosing $\delta = \varepsilon/5$ in Example 1.2.4.

To better understand the definition of a limit, experiment with the Geogebra app at `http://ggbm.at/RtY27ybS`.

This formal definition of the limit is not an easy concept grasp. Our examples are actually "easy" examples, using "simple" functions like polynomials, square–roots and exponentials. It is very difficult to prove, using the techniques given above, that $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} (\sin x)/x = 1$, as we approximated in the previous section.

There is hope. The next section shows how one can evaluate complicated limits using certain basic limits as building blocks. While limits are an incredibly important part of calculus (and hence much of higher mathematics), rarely are limits evaluated using the definition. Rather, the techniques of the following section are employed.

Notes:

Exercises 1.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What is wrong with the following "definition" of a limit?

   > "The limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches a, is K" means that given any $\delta > 0$ there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that whenever $|f(x) - K| < \varepsilon$, we have $|x - a| < \delta$.

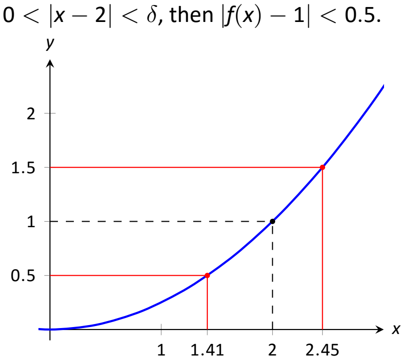
2. Which is given first in establishing a limit, the x–tolerance or the y–tolerance?

3. T/F: ε must always be positive.

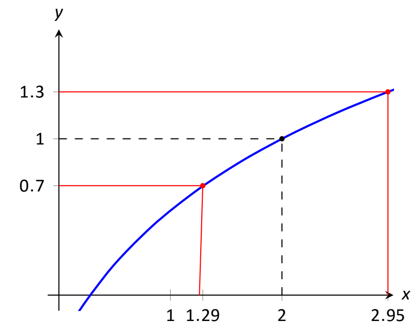
4. T/F: δ must always be positive.

Problems

5. Use the graph below of f to find a number δ such that if $0 < |x - 2| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - 1| < 0.5$.



6. Use the graph below of f to find a number δ such that if $0 < |x - 2| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - 1| < 0.3$.



In Exercises 7 – 14, prove the given limit using an $\varepsilon - \delta$ proof.

7. $\lim\limits_{x\to 5} 3 - x = -2$

8. $\lim\limits_{x\to 5} 4x - 12 = 8$

9. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} 5 - 2x = -1$

10. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} x^2 - 3 = 6$

11. $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} x^2 + x - 5 = 15$

12. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} x^3 - 1 = 7$

13. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} 5 = 5$

14. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \sin x = 0$ (Hint: use the fact that $|\sin x| \leq |x|$, with equality only when $x = 0$.)

1.3 Finding Limits Analytically

In Section 1.1 we explored the concept of the limit without a strict definition, meaning we could only make approximations. In the previous section we gave the definition of the limit and demonstrated how to use it to verify our approximations were correct. Thus far, our method of finding a limit is (1) make a really good approximation either graphically or numerically, and (2) verify our approximation is correct using an ε-δ proof.

Recognizing that ε-δ proofs are cumbersome, this section gives a series of theorems which allow us to find limits much more quickly and intuitively.

Suppose that $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} f(x) = 2$ and $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} g(x) = 3$. What is $\lim\limits_{x\to 2}(f(x) + g(x))$? Intuition tells us that the limit should be 5, as we expect limits to behave in a nice way. The following theorem states that already established limits do behave nicely.

Theorem 1 Basic Limit Properties

Let b, c, L and K be real numbers, let n be a positive integer, and let f and g be functions with the following limits:

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L \text{ and } \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = K.$$

The following limits hold.

1. Constants: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} b = b$
2. Identity: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} x = c$
3. Sums/Differences: $\lim\limits_{x\to c}(f(x) \pm g(x)) = L \pm K$
4. Scalar Multiples: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} b \cdot f(x) = bL$
5. Products: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x) \cdot g(x) = LK$
6. Quotients: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x)/g(x) = L/K$, $(K \neq 0)$
7. Powers: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x)^n = L^n$
8. Roots: $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \sqrt[n]{f(x)} = \sqrt[n]{L}$ (when n is odd or $L \geq 0$)

Notes:

We will now prove the Sum Property using the formal definition of a limit from the previous section. We know that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = K$. We want to show that $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) + g(x) = L + K$.

Proof
We must show that given any $\varepsilon > 0$, we can find a $\delta > 0$ such that

$$\text{if } 0 < |x - c| < \delta, \text{ then } |f(x) + g(x) - (L + K)| < \varepsilon.$$

We know $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$. So for any $\varepsilon_1 > 0$, we can find $\delta_1 > 0$ such that if $0 < |x - c| < \delta_1$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon_1$. Similarly we know $\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = K$ so for any $\varepsilon_2 > 0$, we can find $\delta_2 > 0$ such that if $0 < |x - c| < \delta_2$, then $|g(x) - K| < \varepsilon_2$. We will let both ε_1 and ε_2 be $\frac{\varepsilon}{2}$. Now, we have a $\delta_1 > 0$ and a $\delta_2 > 0$ such that:

$$\text{if } 0 < |x - c| < \delta_1, \text{ then } |f(x) - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

and

$$\text{if } 0 < |x - c| < \delta_2, \text{ then } |g(x) - K| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

We will choose $\delta = \min(\delta_1, \delta_2) > 0$. If $0 < |x - c| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$ and $|g(x) - K| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$. Add the two inequalities together so that

$$|f(x) - L| + |g(x) - K| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2} + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon.$$

We will now use the triangle inequality: $|A + B| \leq |A| + |B|$.

$$|f(x) - L + g(x) - K| \leq |f(x) - L| + |g(x) - K| < \varepsilon$$

Thus $|(f(x) + g(x)) - (L + K)| < \varepsilon$, which is what we were trying to show. $\square$

The other Basic Limit Properties can be proven in a similar way and are left for the reader. Our next theorem requires a few more conditions.

Theorem 2 Limits of Composition
Suppose that

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L \text{ and } \lim_{x\to L} g(x) = g(L) = K.$$

Then $\lim_{x\to c} g(f(x)) = K$.

Notes:

Watch the video:
Limit Laws to Evaluate a Limit, Example 1 at
https://youtu.be/v_Nz6UUQ4HQ

We apply the theorem to an example.

Example 1.3.1 Using basic limit properties

Let

$$\lim_{x\to 2} f(x) = 2, \quad \lim_{x\to 2} g(x) = 3 \qquad \text{and} \qquad p(x) = 3x^2 - 5x + 7.$$

Find the following limits:

1. $\lim_{x\to 2} \big(f(x) + g(x)\big)$
2. $\lim_{x\to 2} \big(5f(x) + g(x)^2\big)$
3. $\lim_{x\to 2} p(x)$

Solution

1. Using the Sum/Difference rule, we know that $\lim_{x\to 2} \big(f(x)+g(x)\big) = 2+3 = 5$.
2. Using the Scalar Multiple and Sum/Difference rules, we find that $\lim_{x\to 2} \big(5f(x) + g(x)^2\big) = 5 \cdot 2 + 3^2 = 19$.
3. Here we combine the Power, Scalar Multiple, Sum/Difference and Constant Rules. We show quite a few steps, but in general these can be omitted:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to 2} p(x) &= \lim_{x\to 2} (3x^2 - 5x + 7)\\ &= \lim_{x\to 2} 3x^2 - \lim_{x\to 2} 5x + \lim_{x\to 2} 7\\ &= 3 \cdot 2^2 - 5 \cdot 2 + 7\\ &= 9.\end{aligned}$$

Part 3 of the previous example demonstrates how the limit of a quadratic polynomial can be determined using the properties of Theorem 1. Not only that, recognize that

$$\lim_{x\to 2} p(x) = 9 = p(2);$$

Notes:

i.e., the limit at 2 was found just by plugging 2 into the function. This holds true for all polynomials, and also for rational functions (which are quotients of polynomials), as stated in the following theorem.

Theorem 3 Limits of Polynomial and Rational Functions
Let $p(x)$ and $q(x)$ be polynomials and c a real number. Then:

1. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} p(x) = p(c)$

2. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \dfrac{p(x)}{q(x)} = \dfrac{p(c)}{q(c)}$, where $q(c) \neq 0$.

Example 1.3.2 Finding a limit of a rational function
Using Theorem 3, find

$$\lim_{x\to -1} \frac{3x^2-5x+1}{x^4-x^2+3}.$$

Solution Using Theorem 3, we can quickly state that

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to -1} \frac{3x^2-5x+1}{x^4-x^2+3} &= \frac{3(-1)^2-5(-1)+1}{(-1)^4-(-1)^2+3}\\ &= \frac{9}{3} = 3.\end{aligned}$$

It was likely frustrating in Section 1.2 to do a lot of work to prove that

$$\lim_{x\to 2} x^2 = 4$$

as it seemed fairly obvious. The previous theorems state that many functions behave in such an "obvious" fashion, as demonstrated by the rational function in Example 1.3.2.

Polynomial and rational functions are not the only functions to behave in such a predictable way. The following theorem gives a list of functions whose behavior is particularly "nice" in terms of limits. In the next section, we will give a formal name to these functions that behave "nicely."

Notes:

Theorem 4 Limits of Basic Functions
Let c be a real number in the domain of the given function and let n be a positive integer. The following limits hold:

1. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \sin x = \sin c$
2. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \cos x = \cos c$
3. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \tan x = \tan c$
4. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \csc x = \csc c$
5. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \sec x = \sec c$
6. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \cot x = \cot c$
7. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} a^x = a^c \ (a > 0)$
8. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \ln x = \ln c$
9. $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \sqrt[n]{x} = \sqrt[n]{c}$

Many times, we will combine this theorem with Theorems 1 and 2. If our expression can be built up from the pieces in those theorems, then we can quickly evaluate the limit.

Example 1.3.3 Evaluating limits analytically
Evaluate the following limits.

1. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi} \cos x$
2. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} (\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x)$
3. $\lim\limits_{x\to \frac{\pi}{2}} \cos x \sin x$
4. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} e^{\ln x}$
5. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin x}{x}$

Solution

1. This is a straightforward application of Theorem 4: $\lim\limits_{x\to\pi} \cos x = \cos \pi = -1$.
2. We can approach this in at least two ways. First, by directly applying Theorems 1 and 4, we have:
$$\lim_{x\to 3}(\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x) = \sec^2 3 - \tan^2 3.$$
Using the Pythagorean Theorem, this last expression is 1; therefore
$$\lim_{x\to 3}(\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x) = 1.$$
We can also use the Pythagorean Theorem from the start:
$$\lim_{x\to 3}(\sec^2 x - \tan^2 x) = \lim_{x\to 3} 1 = 1,$$
using the Constant limit rule. Either way, we find the limit is 1.

Notes:

3. Applying the Product limit rule of Theorem 1 and Theorem 4 gives

$$\lim_{x\to\pi/2} \cos x \sin x = \cos(\pi/2)\sin(\pi/2) = 0 \cdot 1 = 0.$$

4. Again, we can approach this in two ways. First, we can use the exponential/logarithmic identity that $e^{\ln x} = x$ and evaluate $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} e^{\ln x} = \lim\limits_{x\to 1} x = 1$.

   We can also use Theorem 2. Using Theorem 4, we have $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} \ln x = \ln 1 = 0$. Applying the Composition rule,

$$\lim_{x\to 1} e^{\ln x} = \lim_{x\to 0} e^x = e^0 = 1.$$

   Both approaches are valid, giving the same result.

5. We encountered this limit in Section 1.1. Applying our theorems, we attempt to find the limit as

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} \rightarrow \frac{\sin 0}{0} \rightarrow \text{“}\frac{0}{0}\text{”}.$$

   This, of course, violates a condition of Theorem 1, as the limit of the denominator is not allowed to be 0. Therefore, we are still unable to evaluate this limit with tools we currently have at hand.

The section could have been titled "Using Known Limits to Find Unknown Limits." By knowing certain limits of functions, we can find limits involving sums, products, powers, etc., of these functions. We further the development of such comparative tools with the Squeeze Theorem, a clever and intuitive way to find the value of some limits.

Before stating this theorem formally, suppose we have functions f, g and h where g always takes on values between f and h; that is, for all x in an interval,

$$f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x).$$

If f and h have the same limit at c, and g is always "squeezed" between them, then g must have the same limit as well. That is what the Squeeze Theorem states, as illustrated in Figure 1.16.

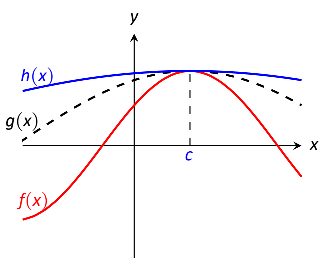


Figure 1.16: The situation of the squeeze theorem

Notes:

Theorem 5 Squeeze Theorem
Let f, g and h be functions on an open interval I containing c such that for all x in I,

$$f(x) \leq g(x) \leq h(x).$$

If

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L = \lim_{x\to c} h(x),$$

then

$$\lim_{x\to c} g(x) = L.$$

It can take some work to figure out appropriate functions by which to "squeeze" the given function of which you are trying to evaluate a limit. However, that is generally the only place work is necessary; the theorem makes the "evaluating the limit part" very simple.

We use the Squeeze Theorem in the following example to finally prove that $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin x}{x} = 1$.

Example 1.3.4 Using the Squeeze Theorem
Use the Squeeze Theorem to show that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1.$$

Solution We begin by considering the unit circle. Each point on the unit circle has coordinates $(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ for some angle θ as shown in Figure 1.17. Using similar triangles, we can extend the line from the origin through the point to the point $(1, \tan\theta)$, as shown. (Here we are assuming that $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi/2$. Later we will show that we can also consider $\theta \leq 0$.)

Figure 1.17 shows three regions have been constructed in the first quadrant, two triangles and a sector of a circle, which are also drawn below. The area of the large triangle is $\frac{1}{2}\tan\theta$; the area of the sector is $\theta/2$; the area of the triangle contained inside the sector is $\frac{1}{2}\sin\theta$. It is then clear from the diagram that

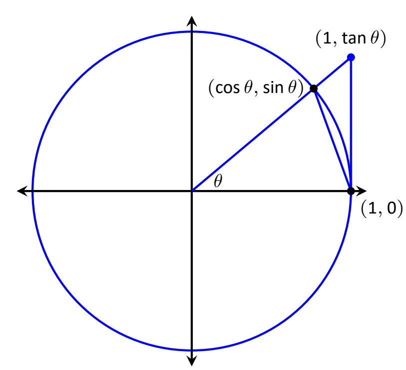
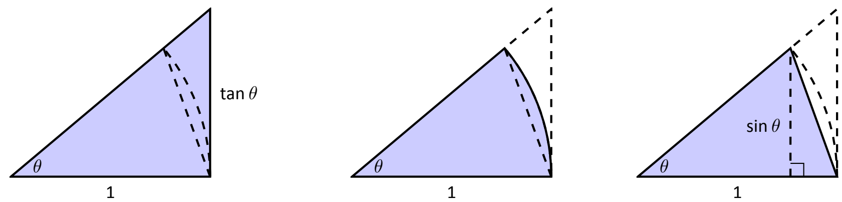


Figure 1.17: The unit circle and related triangles.

Notes:



$$\frac{\tan\theta}{2} \qquad \geq \qquad \frac{\theta}{2} \qquad \geq \qquad \frac{\sin\theta}{2}$$

Multiply all terms by $\dfrac{2}{\sin\theta}$, giving

$$\frac{1}{\cos\theta} \geq \frac{\theta}{\sin\theta} \geq 1.$$

Taking reciprocals reverses the inequalities, giving

$$\cos\theta \leq \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} \leq 1.$$

(These inequalities hold for all values of θ near 0, even negative values, since $\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$ and $\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta$.)

Now take limits.

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\theta\to 0} \cos\theta \leq \lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} &\leq \lim_{\theta\to 0} 1 \\ \cos 0 \leq \lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} &\leq 1 \\ 1 \leq \lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} &\leq 1 \end{aligned}$$

Clearly this means that $\displaystyle\lim_{\theta\to 0} \frac{\sin\theta}{\theta} = 1$.

Two notes about the previous example are worth mentioning. First, one might be discouraged by this application, thinking "I would *never* have come up with that on my own. This is too hard!" Don't be discouraged; within this text we will guide you in your use of the Squeeze Theorem. As one gains mathematical maturity, clever proofs like this are easier and easier to create.

Second, this limit tells us more than just that as x approaches 0, $\sin(x)/x$ approaches 1. Both x and $\sin x$ are approaching 0, but the *ratio* of x and $\sin x$ approaches 1, meaning that they are approaching 0 in essentially the same way. Another way of viewing this is: for small x, the functions $y = x$ and $y = \sin x$ are essentially indistinguishable.

Notes:

We include this special limit, along with three others, in the following theorem.

Theorem 6 Special Limits

1. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$
2. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\cos x - 1}{x} = 0$
3. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} (1+x)^{\frac{1}{x}} = e$
4. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1$

A short word on how to interpret the latter three limits. We know that as x goes to 0, $\cos x$ goes to 1. So, in the second limit, both the numerator and denominator are approaching 0. However, since the limit is 0, we can interpret this as saying that "$\cos x$ is approaching 1 faster than x is approaching 0."

In the third limit, inside the parentheses we have an expression that is approaching 1 (though never equaling 1), and we know that 1 raised to any power is still 1. At the same time, the power is growing toward infinity. What happens to a number near 1 raised to a very large power? In this particular case, the result approaches Euler's number, e, approximately 2.718.

In the fourth limit, we see that as $x \to 0$, e^x approaches 1 "just as fast" as $x \to 0$, resulting in a limit of 1.

Our final theorem for this section will be motivated by the following example.

Example 1.3.5 Using algebra to evaluate a limit

Evaluate the following limit:

$$\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1}.$$

Solution We would like to apply Theorems 1 and 4 and substitute 1 for x in the quotient. This gives:

$$\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{x^2 - 1}{x - 1} = \frac{1^2 - 1}{1 - 1} = \text{“}\frac{0}{0}\text{”},$$

an indeterminate form. We cannot apply the Theorem 1 because the denominator is 0.

By graphing the function, as in Figure 1.18, we see that the function seems to be linear, implying that the limit should be easy to evaluate. Recognize that

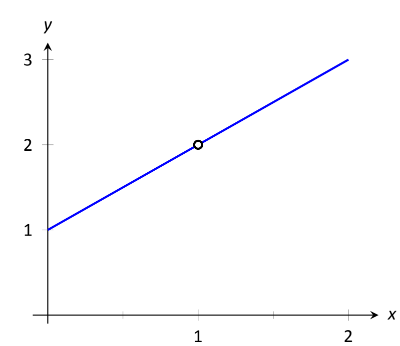


Figure 1.18: Graphing f in Example 1.3.5 to understand a limit.

Notes:

the numerator of our quotient can be factored:

$$\text{Let } f(x) = \frac{x^2-1}{x-1} = \frac{(x-1)(x+1)}{x-1}.$$

The function is not defined when $x = 1$, but for all other x,

$$\frac{x^2-1}{x-1} = \frac{(x-1)(x+1)}{x-1} = \frac{\cancel{(x-1)}(x+1)}{\cancel{x-1}} = x+1.$$

Clearly $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} x+1 = 2$. Recall that when considering limits, we are not concerned with the value of the function at 1, only the value the function approaches as x approaches 1. Since $(x^2-1)/(x-1)$ and $x+1$ are the same at all points except $x = 1$, they both approach the same value as x approaches 1. Therefore we can conclude that

$$\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{x^2-1}{x-1} = \lim_{x\to 1} \frac{(x-1)(x+1)}{x-1} = \lim_{x\to 1} x+1 = 2.$$

The key to the above example is that the functions $y = (x^2-1)/(x-1)$ and $y = x+1$ are identical except at $x = 1$. Since limits describe a value the function is approaching, not the value the function actually attains, the limits of the two functions are always equal.

Theorem 7 Limits of Functions Equal At All But One Point

Let $g(x) = f(x)$ for all x in an open interval, except possibly at c, and let $\lim\limits_{x\to c} g(x) = L$ for some real number L. Then

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = L.$$

The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra tells us that when dealing with a rational function of the form $g(x)/f(x)$ and directly evaluating the limit $\lim\limits_{x\to c} \dfrac{g(x)}{f(x)}$ returns "0/0", then $(x-c)$ is a factor of both $g(x)$ and $f(x)$. One can then use algebra to factor this term out, divide, then apply Theorem 7. Some useful algebraic techniques to rewrite functions that return an indeterminate form when evaluating a limit are:

- factoring and dividing out common factors,
- rationalizing the numerator or denominator,
- simplifying the expression, and

Notes:

- finding a common denominator.

We will demonstrate some of these techniques in the following examples.

Example 1.3.6 Evaluating a limit using Theorem 7

Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^3-2x^2-5x+6}{2x^3+3x^2-32x+15}$.

Solution We begin by attempting to apply Theorems 1 and 4 and substituting 3 for x. This returns the familiar indeterminate form of "0/0". Since the numerator and denominator are each polynomials, we know that $(x-3)$ is factor of each. Using whatever method is most comfortable to you, factor out $(x-3)$ from each (using polynomial division, synthetic division, a computer algebra system, etc.). We find that

$$\frac{x^3-2x^2-5x+6}{2x^3+3x^2-32x+15}=\frac{(x-3)(x^2+x-2)}{(x-3)(2x^2+9x-5)}.$$

We can divide the $(x-3)$ terms as long as $x\neq 3$. Using Theorem 7 we conclude:

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{x^3-2x^2-5x+6}{2x^3+3x^2-32x+15}&=\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{(x-3)(x^2+x-2)}{(x-3)(2x^2+9x-5)}\\&=\lim_{x\to 3}\frac{(x^2+x-2)}{(2x^2+9x-5)}\\&=\frac{10}{40}=\frac{1}{4}.\end{aligned}$$

Example 1.3.7 Evaluating a limit by rationalizing

Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 2}\frac{\sqrt{x^2+4}-2}{x-2}$.

Solution We begin by applying Theorem 4 and substituting 2 for x. This returns the familiar indeterminate form of "0/0". We see the radical in the

Notes:

numerator so we will rationalize the numerator. Using Theorem 7 we find that

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sqrt{x+4}-2}{x} &= \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sqrt{x+4}-2}{x}\cdot\frac{\sqrt{x+4}+2}{\sqrt{x+4}+2}\\
&= \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{(x+4)-4}{x(\sqrt{x+4}+2)}\\
&= \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{x}{x(\sqrt{x+4}+2)} && \text{Simplify the numerator.}\\
&= \lim_{x\to 0}\frac{1}{\sqrt{x+4}+2} && \text{Divide out } x.\\
&= \frac{1}{\sqrt{4}+2}=\frac{1}{4}.
\end{aligned}$$

Notice that we didn't distribute the denominator in the second line. Generally speaking, when we are hoping to divide out a factor in a fraction we will need to undo any distributing that we may have prematurely done.

We end this section by revisiting a limit first seen in Section 1.1, a limit of a difference quotient. Let $f(x) = -1.5x^2 + 11.5x$; we approximated the limit $\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h} \approx 8.5$. We formally evaluate this limit in the following example.

Example 1.3.8 Evaluating the limit of a difference quotient

Let $f(x) = -1.5x^2 + 11.5x$; find $\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h}$.

Solution Since f is a polynomial, our first attempt should be to employ Theorem 4 and substitute 0 for h. However, we see that this gives us "0/0." Knowing that we have a rational function hints that some algebra will help. Con-

Notes:

sider the following steps:

$$\begin{aligned}
&\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(1+h)-f(1)}{h}\\
&\quad=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-1.5(1+h)^2+11.5(1+h)-\big(-1.5(1)^2+11.5(1)\big)}{h}\\
&\quad=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-1.5(1+2h+h^2)+11.5+11.5h-10}{h}\\
&\quad=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-1.5h^2+8.5h}{h}\\
&\quad=\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{h(-1.5h+8.5)}{h}\\
&\quad=\lim_{h\to 0}(-1.5h+8.5)\qquad\big(\text{using Theorem 7, as } h\neq 0\big)\\
&\quad=8.5\qquad\big(\text{using Theorem 4}\big)
\end{aligned}$$

This matches our previous approximation.

This section contains several valuable tools for evaluating limits. One of the main results of this section is Theorem 4; it states that many functions that we use regularly behave in a very nice, predictable way. In Section 1.6 we give a name to this nice behavior; we label such functions as *continuous.* Defining that term will require us to look again at what a limit is and what causes limits to not exist.

Notes:

Exercises 1.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Explain in your own words, without using ε-δ formality, why $\lim\limits_{x\to c} b = b$.

2. Explain in your own words, without using ε-δ formality, why $\lim\limits_{x\to c} x = c$.

3. What does the text mean when it says that certain functions' "behavior is 'nice' in terms of limits"? What, in particular, is "nice"?

4. Sketch a graph that visually demonstrates the Squeeze Theorem.

5. You are given the following information:

   (a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x) = 0$

   (b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} g(x) = 0$

   (c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)/g(x) = 2$

   What can be said about the relative sizes of $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ as x approaches 1?

Problems

Use the following limits to evaluate the limits given in Exercises 6 – 13, where possible. If it is not possible, state so.

$\lim\limits_{x\to 9} f(x) = f(9) = 6$ $\qquad$ $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} f(x) = f(6) = 9$

$\lim\limits_{x\to 9} g(x) = g(9) = 3$ $\qquad$ $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} g(x) = g(6) = 3$

6. $\lim\limits_{x\to 9} (f(x) + g(x))$

7. $\lim\limits_{x\to 9} (3f(x)/g(x))$

8. $\lim\limits_{x\to 9} \left(\dfrac{f(x) - 2g(x)}{g(x)}\right)$

9. $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} \left(\dfrac{f(x)}{3 - g(x)}\right)$

10. $\lim\limits_{x\to 9} g\big(f(x)\big)$

11. $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} f\big(g(x)\big)$

12. $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} g\big(f(f(x))\big)$

13. $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} f(x)g(x) - f^2(x) + g^2(x)$

Use the following limits to evaluate the limits given in Exercises 14 – 17, where possible. If it is not possible, state so.

$\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x) = f(1) = 2$ $\qquad$ $\lim\limits_{x\to 10} f(x) = f(10) = 1$

$\lim\limits_{x\to 1} g(x) = g(1) = 0$ $\qquad$ $\lim\limits_{x\to 10} g(x) = g(10) = \pi$

14. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)^{g(x)}$

15. $\lim\limits_{x\to 10} \cos\big(g(x)\big)$

16. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)g(x)$

17. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} g\big(5f(x)\big)$

In Exercises 18 – 37, evaluate the given limit.

18. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} x^2 - 3x + 7$

19. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi} \left(\dfrac{x-3}{x-5}\right)^7$

20. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi/4} \cos x \sin x$

21. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \ln x$

22. $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} 4^{x^3-8x}$

23. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi/6} \csc x$

24. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \ln(1+x)$

25. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi} \dfrac{x^2+3x+5}{5x^2-2x-3}$

26. $\lim\limits_{x\to \pi} \dfrac{3x+1}{1-x}$

27. $\lim\limits_{x\to 6} \dfrac{x^2-4x-12}{x^2-13x+42}$

28. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} \dfrac{x^2+2x}{x^2-2x}$

29. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2+6x-16}{x^2-3x+2}$

30. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} \dfrac{x^2-10x+16}{x^2-x-2}$

31. $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} \dfrac{x^2-5x-14}{x^2+10x+16}$

32. $\lim\limits_{x\to -1} \dfrac{x^2+9x+8}{x^2-6x-7}$

33. $\lim_{t\to 9} \dfrac{\sqrt{t}-3}{t-9}$

34. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sqrt{x^2+4}-2}{x^2}$

35. $\lim_{t\to 3} \dfrac{\frac{1}{t}-\frac{1}{3}}{t-3}$

36. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{1}{x}-\dfrac{1}{x^2+x}$

37. $\lim_{t\to 0} \dfrac{(t-4)^2-16}{t}$

Use the Squeeze Theorem in Exercises 38 – 42, where appropriate, to evaluate the given limit.
Hint: $-1 \leq \sin x \leq 1$ **and** $-1 \leq \cos x \leq 1$**.**

38. $\lim_{x\to 0} x \sin\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)$

39. $\lim_{x\to 0} \sin x \cos\left(\dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)$

40. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$, where $3x-2 \leq f(x) \leq x^3$.

41. $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x)$, where $6x-9 \leq f(x) \leq x^2$.

42. $\lim_{x\to 0} x^2 \cos\left(\dfrac{1}{x}\right)$

Exercises 43 – 48 challenge your understanding of limits that can be evaluated using the knowledge gained in this section.

43. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin 3x}{x}$

44. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin 5x}{8x}$

45. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\ln(1+x)}{x}$

46. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\sin x}{x}$, where x is measured in degrees, not radians.

47. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tan 4x}{\tan 3x}$

48. $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\tan 5x}{\sin 7x}$

49. Verify $\lim_{x\to 0} \dfrac{\cos x - 1}{x} = 0$ Hint: Multiply by $\dfrac{\cos x + 1}{\cos x + 1}$

1.4 One Sided Limits

In Section 1.1 we explored the three ways in which limits of functions failed to exist:

1. The function approached different values from the left and right,
2. The function grows without bound, and
3. The function oscillates.

In this section we explore in depth the concepts behind #1 by introducing the *one-sided limit*. We begin with formal definitions that are very similar to the definition of the limit given in Section 1.2, but the notation is slightly different and "$x \neq c$" is replaced with either "$x < c$" or "$x > c$." We will consider #2 in more detail in Section 1.5.

Definition 2 One Sided Limits
Left-Hand Limit
Let I be an open interval containing c, and let f be a function defined on I, except possibly at c. The **limit of** $f(x)$**, as** x **approaches** c **from the left, is** L, or, **the left–hand limit of** f **at** c **is** L, denoted by

$$\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x) = L,$$

means that given any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x < c$, if $|x - c| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$.

Right-Hand Limit
Let I be an open interval containing c, and let f be a function defined on I, except possibly at c. The **limit of** $f(x)$**, as** x **approaches** c **from the right, is** L, or, **the right–hand limit of** f **at** c **is** L, denoted by

$$\lim_{x\to c^+} f(x) = L,$$

means that given any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x > c$, if $|x - c| < \delta$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$.

Practically speaking, when evaluating a left-hand limit, we consider only values of x "to the left of c," i.e., where $x < c$. The admittedly imperfect notation $x \to c^-$ is used to imply that we look at values of x to the left of c. The notation has nothing to do with positive or negative values of either x or c. A similar

Notes:

statement holds for evaluating right-hand limits; there we consider only values of x to the right of c, i.e., $x > c$. We can use the theorems from previous sections to help us evaluate these limits; we just restrict our view to one side of c.

Watch the video:
One-sided limits from graphs: Here we use graphs to find the limit of a function as you approach a point from just one side at
`https://www.khanacademy.org/video/one-sided-limits-from-graphs`

We practice evaluating left and right-hand limits through a series of examples.

Example 1.4.1 **Evaluating one sided limits**

Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 6-2x & 1 < x < 2 \end{cases}$, as shown in Figure 1.19. Find each of the following:

1. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
2. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
3. $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)$
4. $f(1)$
5. $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$
6. $f(0)$
7. $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
8. $f(2)$

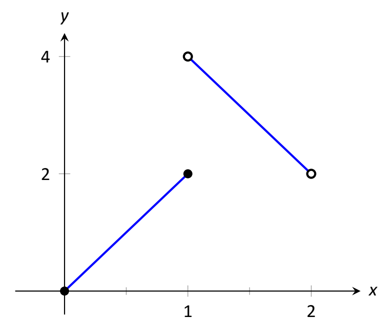


Figure 1.19: A graph of f in Example 1.4.1.

Solution For these problems, the visual aid of the graph is likely more effective in evaluating the limits than using f itself. Therefore we will refer often to the graph.

1. As x goes to 1 *from the left*, we see that $f(x)$ is approaching the value of 2. Therefore $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 2$.
2. As x goes to 1 *from the right*, we see that $f(x)$ is approaching the value of 4. Recall that it does not matter that there is an "open circle" there; we are evaluating a limit, not the value of the function. Therefore $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = 4$.
3. *The* limit of f as x approaches 1 does not exist, as discussed in the first section. The function does not approach one particular value, but two

Notes:

different values from the left and the right.

4. Using the definition and by looking at the graph we see that $f(1) = 2$.
5. As x goes to 0 from the right, we see that $f(x)$ is also approaching 0. Therefore $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = 0$. Note we cannot consider a left-hand limit at 0 as f is not defined for values of $x < 0$.
6. Using the definition and the graph, $f(0) = 0$.
7. As x goes to 2 from the left, we see that $f(x)$ is approaching the value of 2. Therefore $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^-} f(x) = 2$.
8. The graph and the definition of the function show that $f(2)$ is not defined.

Note how the left and right-hand limits were different at $x = 1$. This, of course, causes *the* limit to not exist. The following theorem states what is fairly intuitive: *the* limit exists precisely when the left and right-hand limits are equal.

Theorem 8 Limits and One Sided Limits
Let f be a function defined on an open interval I containing c. Then

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$$

if, and only if,

$$\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x) = L \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to c^+} f(x) = L.$$

The phrase "if, and only if" means the two statements are *equivalent*: they are either both true or both false. If the limit equals L, then the left and right hand limits both equal L. If the limit is not equal to L, then at least one of the left and right-hand limits is not equal to L (it may not even exist).

One thing to consider in Examples 1.4.1 – 1.4.4 is that the value of the function may/may not be equal to the value(s) of its left/right-hand limits, even when these limits agree.

Example 1.4.2 Evaluating limits of a piecewise–defined function
Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2-x & 0 < x < 1 \\ (x-2)^2 & 1 < x < 2 \end{cases}$, as shown in Figure 1.20. Evaluate the following.

Notes:

1. $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
2. $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
3. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
4. $f(1)$
5. $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$
6. $f(0)$
7. $\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
8. $f(2)$

Solution Again we will evaluate each using both the definition of f and its graph.

1. As x approaches 1 from the left, we see that $f(x)$ approaches 1. Therefore $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 1$.
2. As x approaches 1 from the right, we see that again $f(x)$ approaches 1. Therefore $\lim_{x\to 1+} f(x) = 1$.
3. *The* limit of f as x approaches 1 exists and is 1, as f approaches 1 from both the right and left. Therefore $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x) = 1$.
4. $f(1)$ is not defined. Note that 1 is not in the domain of f as defined by the problem, which is indicated on the graph by an open circle when $x = 1$.
5. As x goes to 0 from the right, $f(x)$ approaches 2. So $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = 2$.
6. $f(0)$ is not defined as 0 is not in the domain of f.
7. As x goes to 2 from the left, $f(x)$ approaches 0. So $\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x) = 0$.
8. $f(2)$ is not defined as 2 is not in the domain of f.

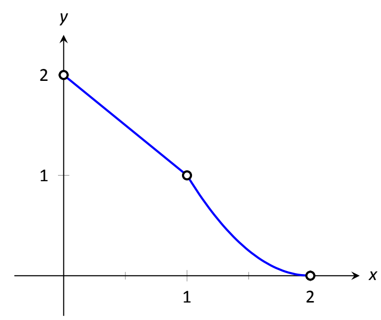


Figure 1.20: A graph of f from Example 1.4.2

Example 1.4.3 Evaluating limits of a piecewise–defined function

Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} (x-1)^2 & 0 \le x \le 2, x \neq 1 \\ 1 & x = 1 \end{cases}$, as shown in Figure 1.21. Evaluate the following.

1. $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
2. $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
3. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
4. $f(1)$

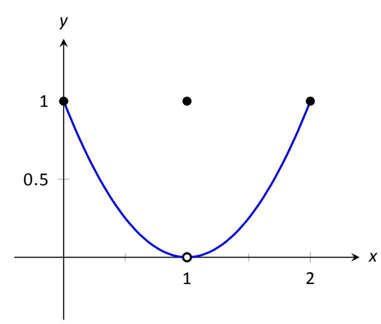


Figure 1.21: Graphing f in Example 1.4.3

Notes:

Solution It is clear by looking at the graph that both the left and right-hand limits of f, as x approaches 1, is 0. Thus it is also clear that *the* limit is 0; i.e., $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x) = 0$. It is also clearly stated that $f(1) = 1$.

Example 1.4.4 Evaluating limits of a piecewise–defined function

Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & 0 \le x \le 1 \\ 2 - x & 1 < x \le 2 \end{cases}$. Evaluate the following.

1. $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
2. $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
3. $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
4. $f(1)$

Solution In this example, we will evaluate the limit by only considering the definition of f.

1. As x approaches 1 from the left, $f(x)$ is defined to be x^2. Therefore
$$\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^-} x^2 = 1.$$
2. As x approaches 1 from the right, $f(x)$ is defined to be $2 - x$. Therefore
$$\lim_{x\to 1+} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 1+} 2 - x = 1.$$
3. Since the right and left hand limits are equal at $x = 1$, i.e., $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = \lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = 1$, this tells us $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x) = 1$.
4. To find $f(1)$, we use the x^2 piece of our function, so $f(1) = 1$.

In Examples 1.4.1 – 1.4.4 we were asked to find both $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$ and $f(1)$. Consider the following table:

	$\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$	$f(1)$
Example 1.4.1	does not exist	2
Example 1.4.2	1	not defined
Example 1.4.3	0	1
Example 1.4.4	1	1

Only in Example 1.4.4 do both the function and the limit exist and agree. This seems “nice;” in fact, it seems “normal.” This is in fact an important situation

Notes:

which we explore in Section 1.6, entitled "Continuity." In short, a *continuous function* is one in which when a function approaches a value as $x \to c$ (i.e., when $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = L$), it actually *attains* that value at c. Such functions behave nicely as they are very predictable.

In the next section we examine one more aspect of limits: limits that involve infinity.

Notes:

Exercises 1.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What are the three ways in which a limit may fail to exist?

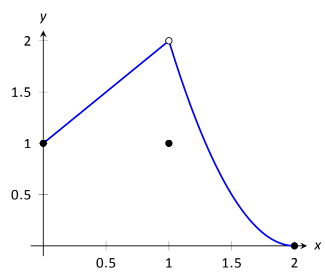
2. T/F: If $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 5$, then $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x) = 5$

3. T/F: If $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 5$, then $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = 5$

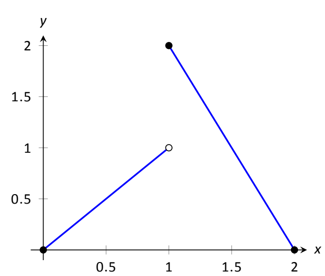
4. T/F: If $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x) = 5$, then $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 5$

Problems

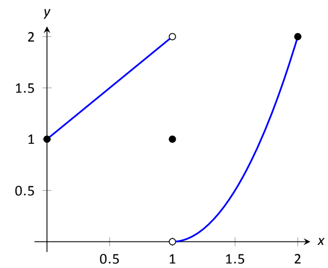
In Exercises 5 – 12, evaluate each expression using the given graph of $f(x)$.

5. 

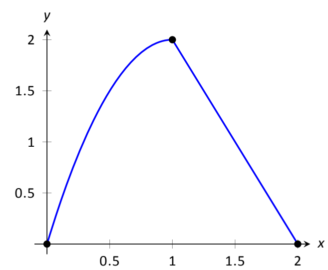
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$
(e) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$
(f) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$

6. 

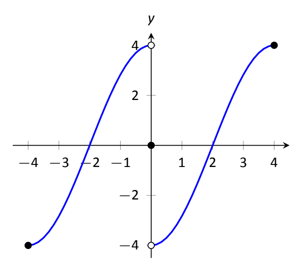
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$
(e) $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
(f) $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$

7. 

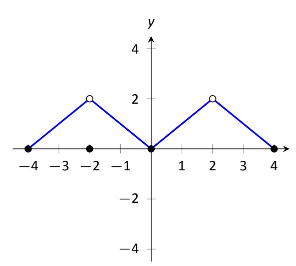
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$

8. 

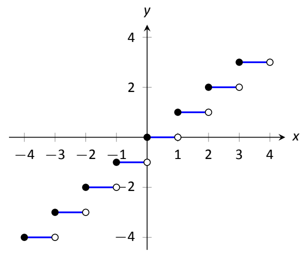
(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$

9. 

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to 0} f(x)$
(d) $f(0)$

10. 

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to -2^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to -2^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} f(x)$
(d) $f(-2)$
(e) $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
(f) $\lim\limits_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$
(g) $\lim\limits_{x\to 2} f(x)$
(h) $f(2)$

11. 

Let $-3 \le a \le 3$ be an integer.

(a) $\lim_{x\to a^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to a^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to a} f(x)$
(d) $f(a)$

In Exercises 12 – 20, evaluate the given limits of the piecewise defined functions f.

12. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & x \le 1 \\ x^2-5 & x > 1 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$

13. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x^2+5x-1 & x < 0 \\ \sin x & x \ge 0 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$
(d) $f(0)$

14. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2-1 & x < -1 \\ x^3+1 & -1 \le x \le 1 \\ x^2+1 & x > 1 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to -1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to -1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to -1} f(x)$
(d) $f(-1)$
(e) $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(f) $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(g) $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(h) $f(1)$

15. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & x < \pi \\ \sin x & x \ge \pi \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to \pi^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to \pi^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to \pi} f(x)$
(d) $f(\pi)$

16. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1-\cos^2 x & x < a \\ \sin^2 x & x \ge a \end{cases}$,
where a is a real number.

(a) $\lim_{x\to a^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to a^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to a} f(x)$
(d) $f(a)$

17. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x+1 & x < 1 \\ 1 & x = 1 \\ x-1 & x > 1 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x)$
(d) $f(1)$

18. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & x < 2 \\ x+1 & x = 2 \\ -x^2+2x+4 & x > 2 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to 2^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to 2^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to 2} f(x)$
(d) $f(2)$

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} a(x-b)^2+c & x < b \\ a(x-b)+c & x \ge b \end{cases}$,
where a, b and c are real numbers.

(a) $\lim_{x\to b^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to b^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to b} f(x)$
(d) $f(b)$

20. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{|x|}{x} & x \ne 0 \\ 0 & x = 0 \end{cases}$

(a) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$
(b) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$
(c) $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$
(d) $f(0)$

In Exercises 21 – 24, sketch the graph of a function f that satisfies all of the given conditions.

21. $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = 2$, $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = -3$, $f(1) = 0$.

22. $\lim_{x\to -1} f(x) = 3$, $\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x) = 1$, $\lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x) = -2$, $f(-1) = 1$, $f(3) = -2$.

23. $\lim_{x\to -2^-} f(x) = 1$, $\lim_{x\to -2^+} f(x) = 0$, $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x) = 3$, $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = -1$, $f(-2) = 4$, $f(0) = -3$.

24. $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x) = 0$, $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x) = 2$, $\lim_{x\to 4^-} f(x) = -2$, $\lim_{x\to 4^+} f(x) = 1$, $f(0) = 2$, $f(4) = -2$.

Review

25. Evaluate the limit: $\lim_{x \to -1} \frac{x^2 + 5x + 4}{x^2 - 3x - 4}$.

26. Evaluate the limit: $\lim_{x \to -4} \frac{x^2 - 16}{x^2 - 4x - 32}$.

27. Evaluate the limit: $\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{\sqrt{3+h} - \sqrt{3}}{h}$.

28. Approximate the limit numerically: $\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{(2+h)^2 - 4}{h}$.

29. Approximate the limit numerically: $\lim_{x \to 0.2} \frac{x^2 + 5.8x - 1.2}{x^2 - 4.2x + 0.8}$.

1.5 Limits Involving Infinity

In Definition 1 we stated that in the equation $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x) = L$, both c and L were numbers. In this section we relax that definition a bit by considering situations when it makes sense to let c and/or L be "infinity."

As a motivating example, consider $f(x) = 1/x^2$, as shown in Figure 1.22. Note how, as x approaches 0, $f(x)$ grows very, very large. It seems appropriate, and descriptive, to state that

$$\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1}{x^2} = \infty.$$

Also note that as x gets very large, $f(x)$ gets very, very small. We could represent this concept with notation such as

$$\lim_{x\to \infty} \frac{1}{x^2} = 0.$$

We explore both types of use of ∞ in turn.

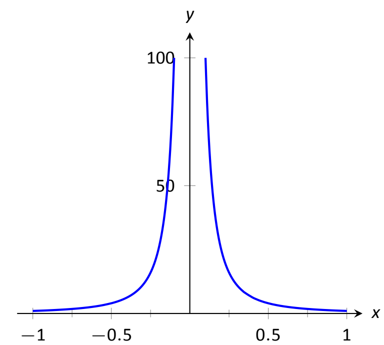


Figure 1.22: Graphing $f(x) = 1/x^2$ for values of x near 0.

Definition 3 **Limit of Infinity, ∞**

We say $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x) = \infty$ if for every $M > 0$ there exists $\delta > 0$ such that for all $x \neq c$, if $|x - c| < \delta$, then $f(x) \geq M$.

This is just like the ε–δ definition from Section 1.2. In that definition, given any (small) value ε, if we let x get close enough to c (within δ units of c) then $f(x)$ is guaranteed to be within ε of $f(c)$. Here, given any (large) value M, if we let x get close enough to c (within δ units of c), then $f(x)$ will be at least as large as M. In other words, if we get close enough to c, then we can make $f(x)$ as large as we want. We can define limits equal to $-\infty$ in a similar way.

It is important to note that by saying $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x) = \infty$ we are implicitly stating that *the* limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches c, *does not exist.* A limit only exists when $f(x)$ approaches an actual numeric value. We use the concept of limits that approach infinity because it is helpful and descriptive.

Watch the video:
Calculus — Infinite Limits at
`https://youtu.be/-vwcLvb9A0s`

Notes:

Example 1.5.1 Evaluating limits involving infinity

Find $\lim_{x\to 1} \frac{1}{(x-1)^2}$ as shown in Figure 1.23.

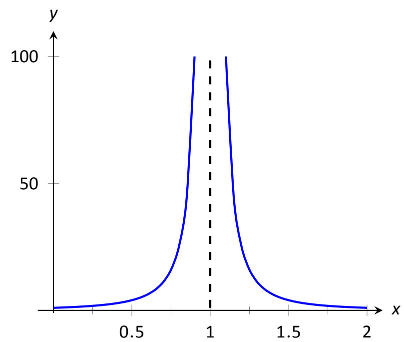


Figure 1.23: Observing infinite limit as $x \to 1$ in Example 1.5.1.

Solution In Example 1.1.4 of Section 1.1, by inspecting values of x close to 1 we concluded that this limit does not exist. That is, it cannot equal any real number. But the limit could be infinite. And in fact, we see that the function does appear to be growing larger and larger, as $f(.99) = 10^4$, $f(.999) = 10^6$, $f(.9999) = 10^8$. A similar thing happens on the other side of 1. In general, let a "large" value M be given. Let $\delta = 1/\sqrt{M}$. If x is within δ of 1, i.e., if $|x-1| < 1/\sqrt{M}$, then:

$$\begin{aligned} |x-1| &< \frac{1}{\sqrt{M}} \\ (x-1)^2 &< \frac{1}{M} \\ \frac{1}{(x-1)^2} &> M, \end{aligned}$$

which is what we wanted to show. So we may say $\lim_{x\to 1} 1/(x-1)^2 = \infty$.

Example 1.5.2 Evaluating limits involving infinity

Find $\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1}{x}$, as shown in Figure 1.24.

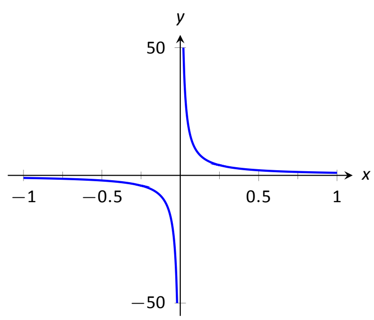


Figure 1.24: Evaluating $\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1}{x}$.

Solution It is easy to see that the function grows without bound near 0, but it does so in different ways on different sides of 0. Since its behavior is not consistent, we cannot say that $\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{1}{x} = \infty$. However, we can make a statement about one–sided limits. We can state that $\lim_{x\to 0^+} \frac{1}{x} = \infty$ and $\lim_{x\to 0^-} \frac{1}{x} = -\infty$.

Vertical asymptotes

Definition 4 Vertical Asymptote

The function $f(x)$ has a **vertical asymptote at $\mathbf{x = c}$** if any one of the following is true:

$$\lim_{x\to c^-} f(x) = \pm\infty, \quad \lim_{x\to c^+} f(x) = \pm\infty, \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x\to c} f(x) = \pm\infty$$

Notes:

Example 1.5.3 Finding vertical asymptotes

Find the vertical asymptotes of $f(x) = \dfrac{3x}{x^2-4}$.

Solution Vertical asymptotes occur where the function grows without bound; this can occur at values of c where the denominator is 0. When x is near c, the denominator is small, which in turn can make the function take on large values. In the case of the given function, the denominator is 0 at $x = \pm 2$. We will consider the limits as x approaches ± 2 from the left and right to determine the vertical asymptotes.

$$\lim_{x\to 2^+} \frac{3x}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \infty$$
$$\lim_{x\to 2^-} \frac{3x}{(x-2)(x+2)} = -\infty$$
$$\lim_{x\to -2^+} \frac{3x}{(x-2)(x+2)} = \infty$$
$$\lim_{x\to -2^-} \frac{3x}{(x-2)(x+2)} = -\infty$$

We can graphically confirm the limits above by looking at Figure 1.25. Thus the vertical asymptotes are at $x = \pm 2$.

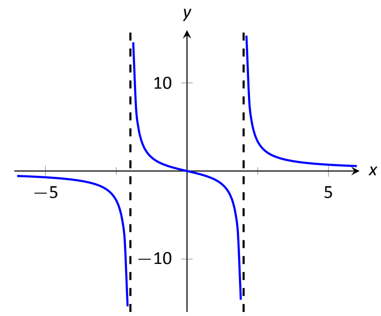


Figure 1.25: Graphing $f(x) = \dfrac{3x}{x^2-4}$.

When a rational function has a vertical asymptote at $x = c$, we can conclude that the denominator is 0 at $x = c$. However, just because the denominator is 0 at a certain point does not mean there is a vertical asymptote there. For instance, $f(x) = (x^2-1)/(x-1)$ does not have a vertical asymptote at $x = 1$, as shown in Figure 1.26.

While the denominator does get small near $x = 1$, the numerator gets small too, matching the denominator step for step. In fact, factoring the numerator, we get

$$f(x) = \frac{(x-1)(x+1)}{x-1}.$$

Dividing out common term, we get that $f(x) = x+1$ for $x \neq 1$. So there is clearly no asymptote, rather a hole exists in the graph at $x = 1$.

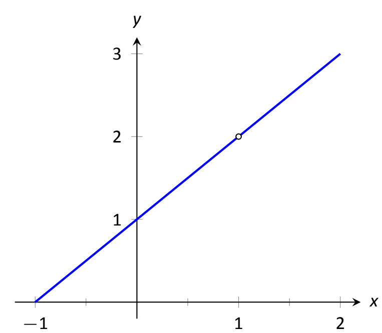


Figure 1.26: Graphically showing that $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-1}{x-1}$ does not have an asymptote at $x = 1$.

The above example may seem a little contrived. Another example demonstrating this important concept is $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$. We have considered this function several times in the previous sections. We found that $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$; i.e., there is no vertical asymptote. No simple algebraic manipulation makes this fact obvious; we used the Squeeze Theorem in Section 1.3 to prove this.

Notes:

If the denominator is 0 at a certain point but the numerator is not, then there will usually be a vertical asymptote at that point. On the other hand, if the numerator and denominator are both zero at that point, then there may or may not be a vertical asymptote at that point. This case where the numerator and denominator are both zero returns us to an important topic.

Indeterminate Forms

We have seen how the limits

$$\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{x} \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to 1}\frac{x^2-1}{x-1}$$

each return the indeterminate form "$0/0$" when we blindly plug in $x = 0$ and $x = 1$, respectively. However, $0/0$ is not a valid arithmetical expression. It gives no indication that the respective limits are 1 and 2.

With a little cleverness, one can come up $0/0$ expressions which have a limit of ∞, 0, or any other real number. That is why this expression is called *indeterminate*.

A key concept to understand is that such limits do not really return $0/0$. Rather, keep in mind that we are taking *limits*. What is really happening is that the numerator is shrinking to 0 while the denominator is also shrinking to 0. The respective rates at which they do this are very important and determine the actual value of the limit.

An indeterminate form indicates that one needs to do more work in order to compute the limit. That work may be algebraic (such as factoring and dividing) or it may require a tool such as the Squeeze Theorem. In a later section we will learn a technique called l'Hospital's Rule that provides another way to handle indeterminate forms.

Some other common indeterminate forms are $\infty-\infty$, $\infty\cdot 0$, ∞/∞, 0^0, ∞^0 and 1^∞. Again, keep in mind that these are the "blind" results of evaluating a limit, and each, in and of itself, has no meaning. The expression $\infty-\infty$ does not really mean "subtract infinity from infinity." Rather, it means "One quantity is subtracted from the other, but both are growing without bound." What is the result? It is possible to get every value between $-\infty$ and ∞

Note that $1/0$ and $\infty/0$ are not indeterminate forms, though they are not exactly valid mathematical expressions, either. In each, the function is growing without bound, indicating that the limit will be ∞, $-\infty$, or simply not exist if the left- and right-hand limits do not match.

Notes:

Limits at Infinity and Horizontal Asymptotes

At the beginning of this section we briefly considered what happens to $f(x) = 1/x^2$ as x grew very large. Graphically, it concerns the behavior of the function to the "far right" of the graph. We make this notion more explicit in the following definition.

Definition 5 Limits at Infinity

1. We say $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L$ if for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists $M > 0$ such that if $x \geq M$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$.
2. We say $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = L$ if for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists $M < 0$ such that if $x \leq M$, then $|f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$.

Definition 6 Horizontal Asymptote

The function $f(x)$ has a **horizontal asymptote at y $=$ L** if either

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = L \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = L$$

We can also define limits such as $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x) = \infty$ by combining this definition with Definition 3.

Example 1.5.4 Approximating horizontal asymptotes

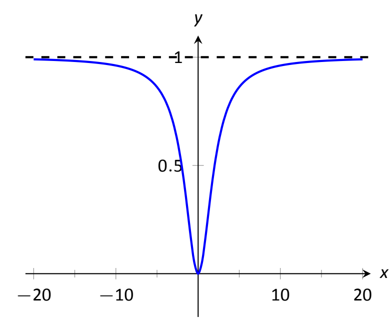
Approximate the horizontal asymptote(s) of $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2+4}$.

Solution We will approximate the horizontal asymptotes by approximating the limits

$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{x^2}{x^2+4} \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^2}{x^2+4}.$$

Figure 1.27(a) shows a sketch of f, and part (b) gives values of $f(x)$ for large magnitude values of x. It seems reasonable to conclude from both of these sources that f has a horizontal asymptote at $y = 1$.

Later, we will show how to determine this analytically.



(a)

x	$f(x)$
10	0.9615
100	0.9996
10000	0.999996
−10	0.9615
−100	0.9996
−10000	0.999996

(b)

Figure 1.27: Using a graph and a table to approximate a horizontal asymptote in Example 1.5.4.

Notes:

Horizontal asymptotes can take on a variety of forms. Figure 1.28(a) shows that $f(x) = x/(x^2+1)$ has a horizontal asymptote of $y = 0$, where 0 is approached from both above and below.

Figure 1.28(b) shows that $f(x) = x/\sqrt{x^2+1}$ has two horizontal asymptotes; one at $y = 1$ and the other at $y = -1$.

Figure 1.28(c) shows that $f(x) = (\sin x)/x$ has even more interesting behavior than at just $x = 0$; as x approaches $\pm\infty$, $f(x)$ approaches 0, but oscillates as it does this.

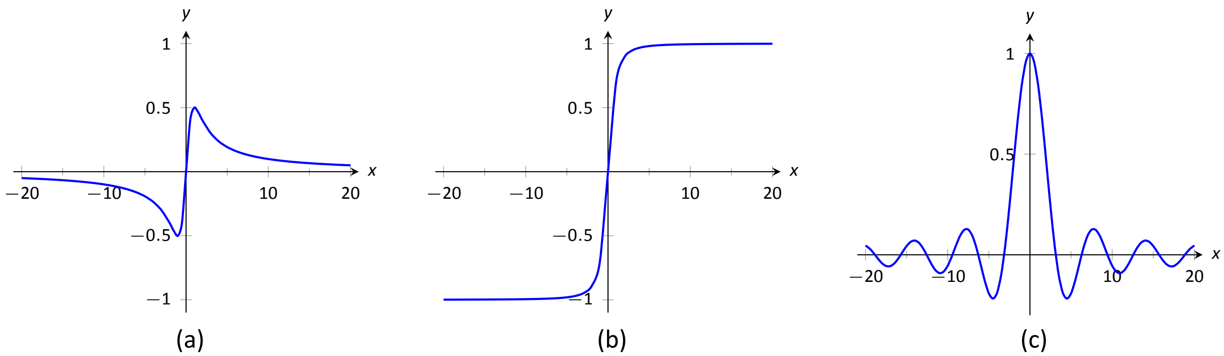


Figure 1.28: Considering different types of horizontal asymptotes.

We can analytically evaluate limits at infinity for rational functions once we understand $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} 1/x$. As x gets larger and larger, the $1/x$ gets smaller and smaller, approaching 0. We can, in fact, make $1/x$ as small as we want by choosing a large enough value of x. Given ε, we can make $1/x < \varepsilon$ by choosing $x > 1/\varepsilon$. Thus we have $\lim_{x\to\infty} 1/x = 0$. It is now not much of a jump to conclude the following:

Theorem 9 **Limits of $\dfrac{1}{x^n}$**

For any $n > 0$,

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1}{x^n} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to-\infty} \frac{1}{x^n} = 0$$

Now suppose we need to compute the following limit:

$$\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^3+2x+1}{4x^3-2x^2+9}.$$

Notes:

A good way of approaching this is to divide through the numerator and denominator by x^3 (hence dividing by 1), which is the largest power of x to appear in the function. Doing this, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
\lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^3+2x+1}{4x^3-2x^2+9} &= \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1/x^3}{1/x^3} \cdot \frac{x^3+2x+1}{4x^3-2x^2+9} \\
&= \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{x^3/x^3+2x/x^3+1/x^3}{4x^3/x^3-2x^2/x^3+9/x^3} \\
&= \lim_{x\to\infty} \frac{1+2/x^2+1/x^3}{4-2/x+9/x^3} \\
&= \frac{1+0+0}{4-0+0} = \frac{1}{4}.
\end{aligned}$$

We used the rules for limits (which also hold for limits at infinity), as well as the fact about limits of $1/x^n$. This procedure works for any rational function and is highlighted in the following Key Idea.

Key Idea 1 Finding Limits of Rational Functions at Infinity

Let $f(x)$ be a rational function of the following form:

$$f(x) = \frac{a_nx^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0}{b_mx^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_1x + b_0},$$

where any of the coefficients may be 0 except for a_n and b_m.

To determine $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ or $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$:

1. Divide the numerator and denominator by x^m.
2. Simplify as much as possible.
3. Use Theorem 9 to find the limit.

If the highest power of x is the same in both the numerator and denominator (i.e. $n = m$), we will be in a situation like the example above, where we will divide by x^n and in the limit all the terms will approach 0 except for a_nx^n/x^n and b_mx^m/x^n. Since $n = m$, this will leave us with the limit a_n/b_m. If $n < m$, then after dividing through by x^m, all the terms in the numerator will approach 0 in the limit, leaving us with $0/b_m$ or 0. If $n > m$, and we try dividing through by x^n, we end up with all the terms in the denominator tending toward 0, while the x^n term in the numerator does not approach 0. This is indicative of some sort of infinite limit.

Notes:

Intuitively, as x gets very large, all the terms in the numerator are small in comparison to $a_n x^n$, and likewise all the terms in the denominator are small compared to $b_n x^m$. If $n = m$, looking only at these two important terms, we have $(a_n x^n)/(b_n x^m)$. This reduces to a_n/b_m. If $n < m$, the function behaves like $a_n/(b_m x^{m-n})$, which tends toward 0. If $n > m$, the function behaves like $a_n x^{n-m}/b_m$, which will tend to either ∞ or $-\infty$ depending on the values of n, m, a_n, b_m and whether you are looking for $\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ or $\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$.

This procedure works for any rational function. In fact, it gives us the following key idea.

Key Idea 2 Limits of Rational Functions at Infinity

Let $f(x)$ be a rational function of the following form:

$$f(x) = \frac{a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0}{b_m x^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \cdots + b_1 x + b_0},$$

where any of the coefficients may be 0 except for a_n and b_m.

1. If $n = m$, then $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = \lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = \frac{a_n}{b_m}$.
2. If $n < m$, then $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = \lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = 0$.
3. If $n > m$, then $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ and $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$ are both infinite.

With care, we can quickly evaluate limits at infinity for a large number of functions by considering the largest powers of x. For instance, consider again $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\pm\infty} \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$, graphed in Figure 1.28(b). When x is very large, $x^2 + 1 \approx x^2$. Thus

$$\sqrt{x^2+1} \approx \sqrt{x^2} = |x|, \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}} \approx \frac{x}{|x|}.$$

This expression is 1 when x is positive and -1 when x is negative. Hence we get asymptotes of $y = 1$ and $y = -1$, respectively.

Example 1.5.5 Finding a limit of a rational function

Confirm analytically that $y = 1$ is the horizontal asymptote of $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2+4}$, as approximated in Example 1.5.4.

Solution Before using Key Idea 2, let's use the technique of evaluating limits at infinity of rational functions that led to that theorem. The largest power

Notes:

of x in f is 2, so divide the numerator and denominator of f by x^2, then take limits.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2}{x^2+4} &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2/x^2}{x^2/x^2+4/x^2}\\ &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{1}{1+4/x^2}\\ &= \frac{1}{1+0}\\ &= 1.\end{aligned}$$

We can also use Key Idea 2 directly; in this case $n=m$ so the limit is the ratio of the leading coefficients of the numerator and denominator, i.e., $1/1=1$.

Example 1.5.6 Finding limits of rational functions

(a) Analytically evaluate the following limits, and (b) Use Key Idea 2 to evaluate each limit.

1. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{x^2+2x-1}{x^3+1}$
2. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2+2x-1}{1-x-3x^2}$
3. $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2-1}{3-x}$

Solution

1. (a) Divide numerator and denominator by x^3.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{x^2+2x-1}{x^3+1} &= \lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{x^2/x^3+2x/x^3-1/x^3}{x^3/x^3+1/x^3}\\ &= \lim_{x\to-\infty}\frac{1/x+2/x^2-1/x^3}{1+1/x^3}\\ &= \frac{0+0+0}{1+0}=0\end{aligned}$$

   (b) The highest power of x is in the denominator. Therefore, the limit is 0; see Figure 1.29(a).

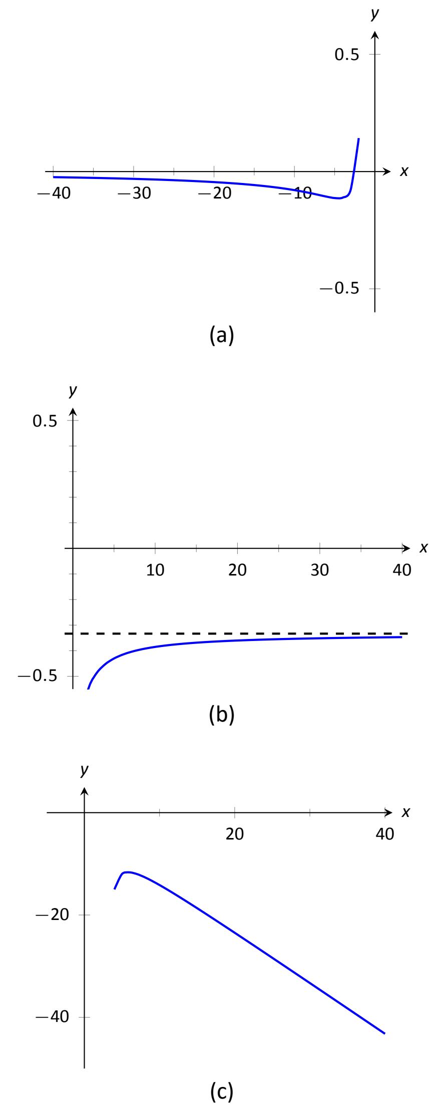


Figure 1.29: Visualizing the functions in Example 1.5.6.

Notes:

2. (a) Divide numerator and denominator by x^2.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2+2x-1}{1-x-3x^2} &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2/x^2+2x/x^2-1/x^2}{1/x^2-x/x^2-3x^2/x^2}\\ &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{1+2/x-1/x^2}{1/x^2-1/x-3}\\ &= \frac{1+0-0}{0-0-3} = -\frac{1}{3}\end{aligned}$$

(b) The highest power of x is x^2, which occurs in both the numerator and denominator. The limit is therefore the ratio of the coefficients of x^2, which is $-1/3$. See Figure 1.29(b).

3. (a) Divide numerator and denominator by x.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2-1}{3-x} &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x^2/x-1/x}{3/x-x/x}\\ &= \lim_{x\to\infty}\frac{x-1/x}{3/x-1}\\ &= \infty\end{aligned}$$

(b) The highest power of x is in the numerator so the limit will be ∞ or $-\infty$. To see which, consider only the dominant terms from the numerator and denominator, which are x^2 and $-x$. The expression in the limit will behave like $x^2/(-x) = -x$ for large values of x. Therefore, the limit is $-\infty$. See Figure 1.29(c).

Notes:

Exercises 1.5 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: If $\lim_{x\to 5} f(x) = \infty$, then we are implicitly stating that the limit exists.

2. T/F: If $\lim_{x\to \infty} f(x) = 5$, then we are implicitly stating that the limit exists.

3. T/F: If $\lim_{x\to 1^-} f(x) = -\infty$, then $\lim_{x\to 1^+} f(x) = \infty$

4. T/F: If $\lim_{x\to 5} f(x) = \infty$, then f has a vertical asymptote at $x = 5$.

5. T/F: $\infty/0$ is not an indeterminate form.

6. List 5 indeterminate forms.

7. Construct a function with a vertical asymptote at $x = 5$ and a horizontal asymptote at $y = 5$.

8. Let $\lim_{x\to 7} f(x) = \infty$. Explain how we know that f is/is not continuous at $x = 7$.

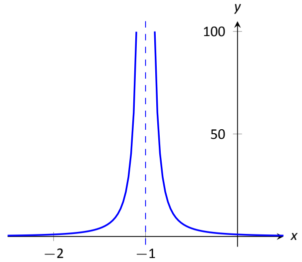
Problems

In Exercises 9 – 14, evaluate the given limits using the graph of the function.

9. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x+1)^2}$

   (a) $\lim_{x\to -1^-} f(x)$

   (b) $\lim_{x\to -1^+} f(x)$



10. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{(x-3)(x-5)^2}$.

    (a) $\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x)$

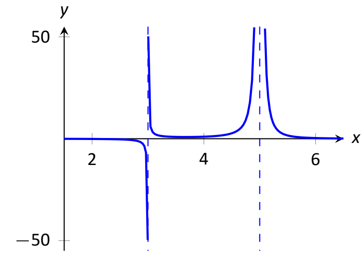
    (b) $\lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x)$

    (c) $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x)$

    (d) $\lim_{x\to 5^-} f(x)$

    (e) $\lim_{x\to 5^+} f(x)$

    (f) $\lim_{x\to 5} f(x)$



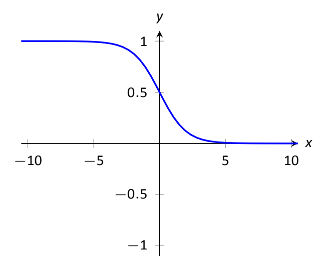
11. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{e^x + 1}$

    (a) $\lim_{x\to -\infty} f(x)$

    (b) $\lim_{x\to \infty} f(x)$

    (c) $\lim_{x\to 0^-} f(x)$

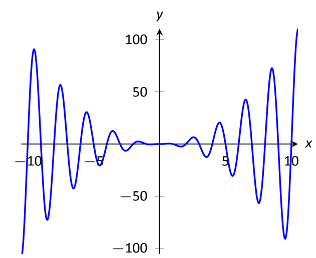
    (d) $\lim_{x\to 0^+} f(x)$



12. $f(x) = x^2 \sin(\pi x)$

    (a) $\lim_{x\to -\infty} f(x)$

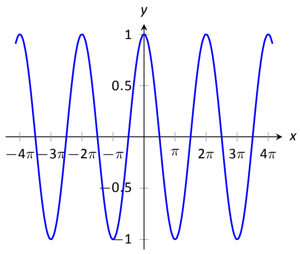
    (b) $\lim_{x\to \infty} f(x)$



13. $f(x) = \cos(x)$

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$

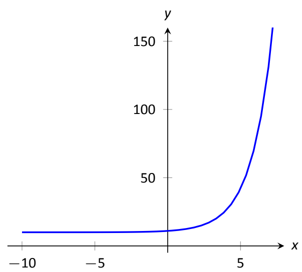
(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x)$



14. $f(x) = 2^x + 10$

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$

(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x)$



In Exercises 15 – 18, numerically approximate the following limits:

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to3^-} f(x)$

(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to3^+} f(x)$

(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to3} f(x)$

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-1}{x^2-x-6}$

16. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2+5x-36}{x^3-5x^2+3x+9}$

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-11x+30}{x^3-4x^2-3x+18}$

18. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-9x+18}{x^2-x-6}$

In Exercises 19 – 24, identify the horizontal and vertical asymptotes, if any, of the given function.

19. $f(x) = \dfrac{2x^2-2x-4}{x^2+x-20}$

20. $f(x) = \dfrac{-3x^2-9x-6}{5x^2-10x-15}$

21. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2+x-12}{7x^3-14x^2-21x}$

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-9}{9x-9}$

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-9}{9x+27}$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2-1}{-x^2-1}$

In Exercises 25 – 28, evaluate the given limit.

25. $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{x^3+2x^2+1}{x-5}$

26. $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} \dfrac{x^3+2x^2+1}{5-x}$

27. $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} \dfrac{x^3+2x^2+1}{x^2-5}$

28. $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} \dfrac{x^3+2x^2+1}{5-x^2}$

Review

29. Use an $\varepsilon - \delta$ proof to show that
$\lim\limits_{x\to1} 5x-2 = 3.$

30. Let $\lim\limits_{x\to2} f(x) = 3$ and $\lim\limits_{x\to2} g(x) = -1$. Evaluate the following limits.

(a) $\lim\limits_{x\to2} (f+g)(x)$

(b) $\lim\limits_{x\to2} (fg)(x)$

(c) $\lim\limits_{x\to2} (f/g)(x)$

(d) $\lim\limits_{x\to2} f(x)^{g(x)}$

31. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2-1 & x<3 \\ x+5 & x\geq3 \end{cases}$.
Is f continuous everywhere?

32. Evaluate the limit: $\lim\limits_{x\to e} \ln x$.

1.6 Continuity

As we have studied limits, we have gained the intuition that limits measure "where a function is heading." That is, if $\lim_{x\to 1} f(x) = 3$, then as x is close to 1, $f(x)$ is close to 3. We have seen, though, that this is not necessarily a good indicator of what $f(1)$ actually is. This can be problematic; functions can tend to one value but attain another. This section focuses on functions that *do not* exhibit such behavior.

Definition 7 Continuous Function
Let f be a function defined on an open interval I containing c.

1. f is **continuous at** c if $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c)$.
2. f is **continuous on** I if f is continuous at c for all values of c in I. If f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$, we say f is **continuous everywhere**.

A useful way to establish whether or not a function f is continuous at c is to verify the following three things:

1. $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists,
2. $f(c)$ is defined, and
3. $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c)$.

If f is defined near c but is not continuous at c, then we say that f is **discontinuous at c** or f has a **discontinuity at c**. We will discuss three types of discontinuities, as seen in Figure 1.30.

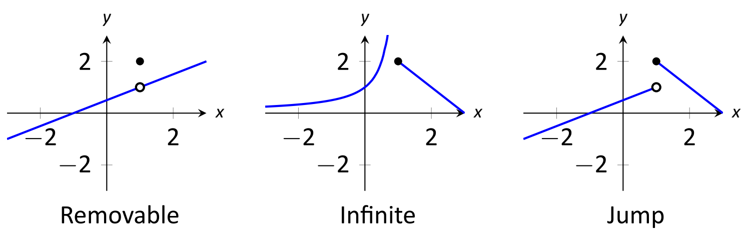


Figure 1.30: Three types of discontinuities

Notes:

Removable discontinuity This type of discontinuity is called removable because we could remove the discontinuity by redefining the function at a single point.

Infinite discontinuity The function is approaching $\pm\infty$ at some x value.

Jump discontinuity The function "jumps" from one value to another.

Watch the video:
Continuity and Limits Made Easy — Part 1 of 2 at
`https://youtu.be/hlorAjSOxWE`

Example 1.6.1 Finding intervals of continuity

Let f be defined as shown in Figure 1.31. Give the interval(s) on which f is continuous.

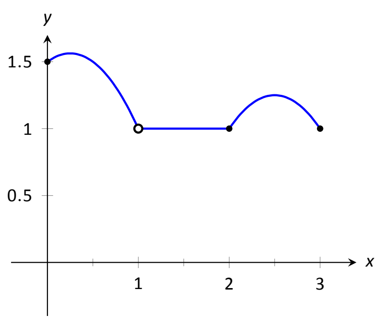


Figure 1.31: A graph of f in Example 1.6.1.

Solution We proceed by examining the three criteria for continuity.

1. The limits $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists for all c between 0 and 3.
2. $f(c)$ is defined for all c between 0 and 3, *except for* $c = 1$. We know immediately that f cannot be continuous at $x = 1$.
3. The limit $\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c)$ for all c between 0 and 3, except, of course, for $c = 1$.

We conclude that f is continuous at every point of $(0, 3)$ except at $x = 1$. Therefore f is continuous on $(0, 1) \cup (1, 3)$.

Example 1.6.2 Finding intervals of continuity

The *floor function*, $f(x) = \lfloor x \rfloor$, returns the largest integer smaller than the input x. (For example, $f(\pi) = \lfloor \pi \rfloor = 3$.) The graph of f in Figure 1.32 demonstrates why this is often called a "step function."

Give the intervals on which f is continuous.

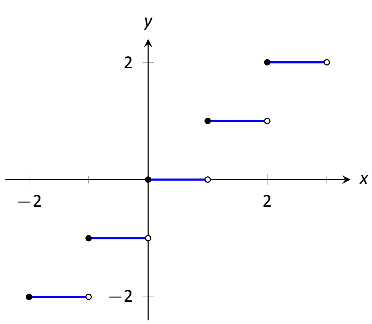


Figure 1.32: A graph of the step function in Example 1.6.2.

Solution We examine the three criteria for continuity.

Notes:

1. The limits $\lim_{x\to c} f(x)$ do not exist at the jumps from one "step" to the next, which occur at all integer values of c. Therefore the limits exist for all c except when c is an integer.
2. The function is defined for all values of c.
3. The limit $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c)$ for all values of c where the limit exist, since each step consists of just a line.

We conclude that f is continuous everywhere except at integer values of c. So the intervals on which f is continuous are

$$\ldots,(-2,-1),(-1,0),(0,1),(1,2),\ldots.$$

Our definition of continuity on an interval specifies the interval is an open interval. At endpoints or points of discontinuity we may consider continuity from the right or left. We say that f is continuous from the right at a if $\lim\limits_{x\to a^+} f(x) = f(a)$ and that f is continuous from the left at a if $\lim\limits_{x\to a^-} f(x) = f(a)$. We can extend the definition of continuity to closed intervals by considering the appropriate one-sided limits at the endpoints.

Definition 8 Continuity on Closed Intervals
Let f be defined on the closed interval $[a,b]$ for some real numbers a,b. Then f is **continuous on** $[a,b]$ if:

1. f is continuous on (a,b),
2. $\lim\limits_{x\to a^+} f(x) = f(a)$ and
3. $\lim\limits_{x\to b^-} f(x) = f(b)$.

We can make the appropriate adjustments to talk about continuity on half–open intervals such as $[a,b)$ or $(a,b]$ if necessary.

Continuity is inherently tied to the properties of limits. Because of this, the properties of limits found in Theorems 1 and 3 apply to continuity as well. We will utilize these properties in the following example.

Example 1.6.3 Determining intervals on which a function is continuous
For each of the following functions, give the domain of the function and the interval(s) on which it is continuous.

Notes:

1. $f(x) = 1/x$
2. $f(x) = \sin x$
3. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$
4. $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$
5. $f(x) = |x|$

Solution We examine each in turn.

1. The domain of $f(x) = 1/x$ is $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$. As it is a rational function, we apply Theorem 3 to recognize that f is continuous on all of its domain.

2. The domain of $f(x) = \sin x$ is all real numbers, or $(-\infty, \infty)$. Applying Theorem 4 shows that $\sin x$ is continuous everywhere.

3. The domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ is $[0, \infty)$. Applying Theorem 4 shows that $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ is continuous on its domain of $[0, \infty)$.

4. The domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$ is $[-1, 1]$. Applying Theorems 1 and 4 shows that f is continuous on all of its domain, $[-1, 1]$.

5. The domain of $f(x) = |x|$ is $(-\infty, \infty)$. We can define the absolute value function as $f(x) = \begin{cases} -x & x < 0 \\ x & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$. Each "piece" of this piecewise defined function is continuous on all of its domain, giving that f is continuous on $(-\infty, 0)$ and $[0, \infty)$. We cannot assume this implies that f is continuous on $(-\infty, \infty)$; we need to check that $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x) = f(0)$, as $x = 0$ is the point where f transitions from one "piece" of its definition to the other. It is easy to verify that this is indeed true, hence we conclude that $f(x) = |x|$ is continuous everywhere.

The following theorem states how continuous functions can be combined to form other continuous functions.

Notes:

Theorem 10 Properties of Continuous Functions
Let f and g be continuous functions on an interval I, let c be a real number and let n be a positive integer. The following functions are continuous on I.

1. Sums/Differences: $f \pm g$
2. Constant Multiples: $c \cdot f$
3. Products: $f \cdot g$
4. Quotients: f/g (as long as $g \neq 0$ on I)
5. Powers: f^n
6. Roots: $\sqrt[n]{f}$ (if $f \geq 0$ on I or n is odd)

The proofs of each of the parts of Theorem 10 follow from the Basic Limit Properties given in Theorem 1. We will prove the product of two continuous functions is continuous now.

Proof
We know that f and g are continuous at c so by definition we have

$$\lim_{x\to c} f(x) = f(c) \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{x\to c} g(x) = g(c).$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{x\to c}(f\cdot g)(x) &= \lim_{x\to c} f(x)\cdot g(x)\\ &= \lim_{x\to c} f(x)\cdot \lim_{x\to c} g(x)\\ &= f(c)\cdot g(c)\\ &= (f\cdot g)(c).\end{aligned}$$ $\square$

Theorem 11 Continuity of Compositions
Let f be continuous on I, where the range of f on I is J, and let g be continuous on J. Then

$$(g\circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$$

is continuous on I.

Notes:

Now knowing the definition of continuity we can re–read Theorem 4 as giving a list of functions that are continuous on their domains.

Theorem 12 Continuous Functions
The following functions are continuous on their domains.

1. $f(x) = \sin x$
2. $f(x) = \cos x$
3. $f(x) = \tan x$
4. $f(x) = \cot x$
5. $f(x) = \sec x$
6. $f(x) = \csc x$
7. $f(x) = \ln x$
8. $f(x) = a^x$ $(a > 0)$

In the following example, we will show how we apply the previous theorems.

Example 1.6.4 Determining intervals on which a function is continuous
State the interval(s) on which each of the following functions is continuous.

1. $f(x) = \sqrt{x-1} + \sqrt{5-x}$
2. $f(x) = x \sin x$
3. $f(x) = \tan x$
4. $f(x) = \sqrt{\ln x}$

Solution We examine each in turn, applying Theorems 10 and 12 as appropriate.

1. The square–root terms are continuous on the intervals $[1, \infty)$ and $(-\infty, 5]$, respectively. As f is continuous only where each term is continuous, f is continuous on $[1, 5]$, the intersection of these two intervals. A graph of f is given in Figure 1.33.

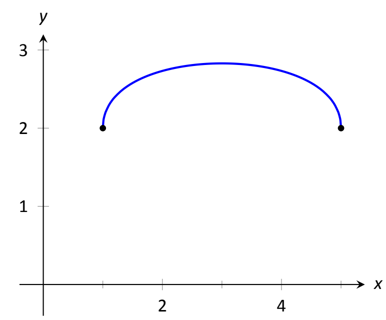


Figure 1.33: A graph of f in Example 1.6.4(1).

2. The functions $y = x$ and $y = \sin x$ are each continuous everywhere, hence their product is, too.

3. Theorem 12 states that $f(x) = \tan x$ is continuous "on its domain." Its domain includes all real numbers except odd multiples of $\pi/2$. Thus $f(x) = \tan x$ is continuous on

$$\ldots \left(-\frac{3\pi}{2}, -\frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right), \ldots,$$

or, equivalently, on $D = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x \neq \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2},\ n \in \mathbb{Z}\}$.

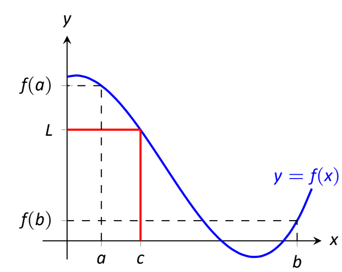
Notes:

4. The domain of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is $[0, \infty)$. The range of $y = \ln x$ is $(-\infty, \infty)$, but if we restrict its domain to $[1, \infty)$ its range is $[0, \infty)$. So restricting $y = \ln x$ to the domain of $[1, \infty)$ restricts its output is $[0, \infty)$, on which $y = \sqrt{x}$ is defined. Thus the domain of $f(x) = \sqrt{\ln x}$ is $[1, \infty)$.

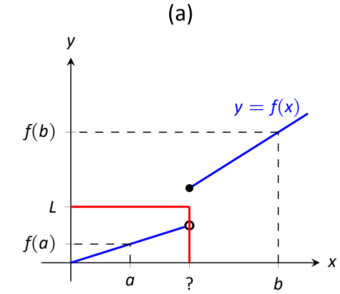
A common way of thinking of a continuous function is that "its graph can be sketched without lifting your pencil." That is, its graph forms a "continuous" curve, without holes, breaks or jumps. While beyond the scope of this text, this pseudo–definition glosses over some of the finer points of continuity. Very strange functions are continuous that one would be hard pressed to actually sketch by hand.

This intuitive notion of continuity does help us understand another important concept as follows. Suppose f is defined on $[1, 2]$ and $f(1) = -10$ and $f(2) = 5$. If f is continuous on $[1, 2]$ (i.e., its graph can be sketched as a continuous curve from $(1, -10)$ to $(2, 5)$) then we know intuitively that somewhere on $[1, 2]$ f must be equal to -9, and -8, and -7, -6, $\ldots$, 0, $1/2$, etc. In short, f takes on all *intermediate* values between -10 and 5. It may take on more values; f may actually equal 6 at some time, for instance, but we are guaranteed all values between -10 and 5.

While this notion seems intuitive, it is not trivial to prove and its importance is profound. Therefore the concept is stated in the form of a theorem and illustrated in Figure 1.34.



(a)



(b)

Figure 1.34: A situation where the Intermediate Value Theorem applies (top) and does not (bottom).

Theorem 13 Intermediate Value Theorem

Let f be a continuous function on $[a, b]$ and, without loss of generality, let $f(a) < f(b)$. Then for every value y, where $f(a) < y < f(b)$, there is a value c in $[a, b]$ such that $f(c) = y$

One important application of the Intermediate Value Theorem is root finding. Given a function f, we are often interested in finding values of x where $f(x) = 0$. These roots may be very difficult to find exactly. Good approximations can be found through successive applications of this theorem. Suppose through direct computation we find that $f(a) < 0$ and $f(b) > 0$, where $a < b$. The Intermediate Value Theorem states that there is a c in $[a, b]$ such that $f(c) = 0$. The theorem does not give us any clue as to where that value is in the interval $[a, b]$, just that it exists.

Example 1.6.5 Finding roots

Show that $f(x) = x^3 + x + 3$ has at least one real root.

Notes:

Solution We must determine an interval on which the function changes from positive to negative values. We start by evaluating f at different values. We see that $f(0) = 3 > 0$ and $f(1) = 5 > 0$. As we choose larger positive values of x, we can see that $f(x)$ values will continue to grow. Looking at negative x-values, $f(-1) = 1 > 0$ and $f(-2) = -7 < 0$ so we know $f(x)$ must change sign in $[-2, -1]$. Because $f(x)$ is a polynomial, it is continuous on all real numbers so is continuous on $[-2, -1]$. By the Intermediate Value Theorem there is a c in $[-2, -1]$ where $f(x) = 0$. Thus $f(x)$ must have at least one real root on $[-2, -1]$.

Note that in the above example you were not asked to find the root, just to show that the function *had* a root.

There is a technique that produces a good approximation of c. Let d be the midpoint of the interval $[a, b]$ and consider $f(d)$. There are three possibilities:

1. $f(d) = 0$ – we got lucky and stumbled on the actual value. We stop as we found a root.

2. $f(d) < 0$ Then we know there is a root of f on the interval $[d, b]$ – we have halved the size of our interval, hence are closer to a good approximation of the root.

3. $f(d) > 0$ Then we know there is a root of f on the interval $[a, d]$ – again,we have halved the size of our interval, hence are closer to a good approximation of the root.

Successively applying this technique is called the **Bisection Method** of root finding. We continue until the interval is sufficiently small. We demonstrate this in the following example.

Example 1.6.6 Using the Bisection Method

Approximate the root of $f(x) = x - \cos x$, accurate to three places after the decimal.

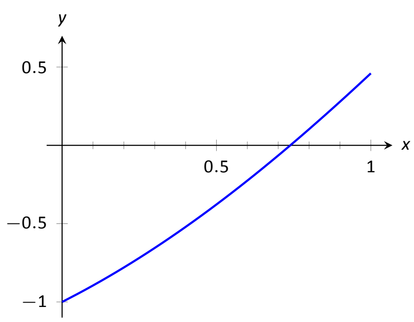


Figure 1.35: Graphing a root of $f(x) = x - \cos x$.

Solution Consider the graph of $f(x) = x - \cos x$, shown in Figure 1.35. It is clear that the graph crosses the x-axis somewhere near $x = 0.8$. To start the Bisection Method, pick an interval that contains 0.8. We choose $[0.7, 0.9]$. Note that all we care about are signs of $f(x)$, not their actual value, so this is all we display.

Iteration 1: $f(0.7) < 0$, $f(0.9) > 0$, and $f(0.8) > 0$. So replace 0.9 with 0.8 and repeat.

Notes:

Iteration 2: $f(0.7) < 0, f(0.8) > 0$, and at the midpoint, 0.75, we have $f(0.75) > 0$. So replace 0.8 with 0.75 and repeat. Note that we don't need to continue to check the endpoints, just the midpoint. Thus we put the rest of the iterations in Figure 1.36.

Notice that in the 12$^{\text{th}}$ iteration we have the endpoints of the interval each starting with 0.739. Thus we have narrowed the zero down to an accuracy of the first three places after the decimal. Using a computer, we have

$$f(0.7390) = -0.00014, \quad f(0.7391) = 0.000024.$$

Either endpoint of the interval gives a good approximation of where f is 0. The Intermediate Value Theorem states that the actual zero is still within this interval. While we do not know its exact value, we know it starts with 0.739.

This type of exercise is rarely done by hand. Rather, it is simple to program a computer to run such an algorithm and stop when the endpoints differ by a preset small amount. One of the authors did write such a program and found the zero of f, accurate to 10 places after the decimal, to be 0.7390851332. While it took a few minutes to write the program, it took less than a thousandth of a second for the program to run the necessary 35 iterations. In less than 8 hundredths of a second, the zero was calculated to 100 decimal places (with less than 200 iterations).

Iteration #	Interval	Midpoint Sign
1	$[0.7, 0.9]$	$f(0.8) > 0$
2	$[0.7, 0.8]$	$f(0.75) > 0$
3	$[0.7, 0.75]$	$f(0.725) < 0$
4	$[0.725, 0.75]$	$f(0.7375) < 0$
5	$[0.7375, 0.75]$	$f(0.7438) > 0$
6	$[0.7375, 0.7438]$	$f(0.7407) > 0$
7	$[0.7375, 0.7407]$	$f(0.7391) > 0$
8	$[0.7375, 0.7391]$	$f(0.7383) < 0$
9	$[0.7383, 0.7391]$	$f(0.7387) < 0$
10	$[0.7387, 0.7391]$	$f(0.7389) < 0$
11	$[0.7389, 0.7391]$	$f(0.7390) < 0$
12	$[0.7390, 0.7391]$	

Figure 1.36: Iterations of the Bisection Method of Root Finding

It is a simple matter to extend the Bisection Method to solve problems similar to "Find x, where $f(x) = 0$." For instance, we can find x, where $f(x) = 1$. It actually works very well to define a new function g where $g(x) = f(x) - 1$. Then use the Bisection Method to solve $g(x) = 0$.

Similarly, given two functions f and g, we can use the Bisection Method to solve $f(x) = g(x)$. Once again, create a new function h where $h(x) = f(x) - g(x)$ and solve $h(x) = 0$.

In Section 4.4 another equation solving method will be introduced, called Newton's Method. In many cases, Newton's Method is much faster. It relies on more advanced mathematics, though, so we will wait before introducing it.

This section formally defined what it means to be a continuous function. "Most" functions that we deal with are continuous, so often it feels odd to have to formally define this concept. Regardless, it is important, and forms the basis of the next chapter.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter we:

- defined the limit,

Notes:

- found accessible ways to approximate their values numerically and graphically,
- developed a method of proving the value of a limit (ε-δ proofs),
- explored when limits do not exist,
- considered limits that involved infinity, and
- defined continuity and explored properties of continuous functions.

Why? Mathematics is famous for building on itself and calculus proves to be no exception. In the next chapter we will be interested in "dividing by 0." That is, we will want to divide a quantity by a smaller and smaller number and see what value the quotient approaches. In other words, we will want to find a limit. These limits will enable us to, among other things, determine *exactly* how fast something is moving when we are only given position information.

Later, we will want to add up an infinite list of numbers. We will do so by first adding up a finite list of numbers, then take a limit as the number of things we are adding approaches infinity. Surprisingly, this sum often is finite; that is, we can add up an infinite list of numbers and get, for instance, 42.

These are just two quick examples of why we are interested in limits. Many students dislike this topic when they are first introduced to it, but over time an appreciation is often formed based on the scope of its applicability.

Notes:

Exercises 1.6 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. In your own words, describe what it means for a function to be continuous.

2. In your own words, describe what the Intermediate Value Theorem states.

3. What is a "root" of a function?

4. Given functions f and g on an interval I, how can the Bisection Method be used to find a value c where $f(c) = g(c)$?

5. T/F: If f is defined on an open interval containing c, and $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists, then f is continuous at c.

6. T/F: If f is continuous at c, then $\lim\limits_{x\to c} f(x)$ exists.

7. T/F: If f is continuous at c, then $\lim\limits_{x\to c^+} f(x) = f(c)$.

8. T/F: If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then $\lim\limits_{x\to a^-} f(x) = f(a)$.

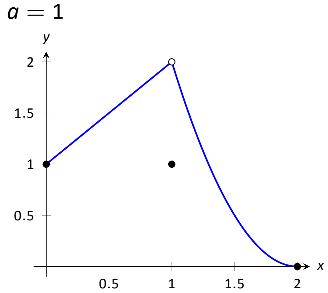
9. T/F: If f is continuous on $[0, 1)$ and $[1, 2)$, then f is continuous on $[0, 2)$.

10. T/F: The sum of continuous functions is also continuous.

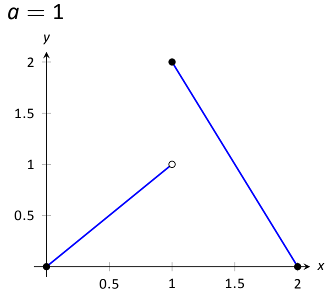
Problems

In Exercises 11 – 17, a graph of a function f is given along with a value a. Determine if f is continuous at a; if it is not, state why it is not.

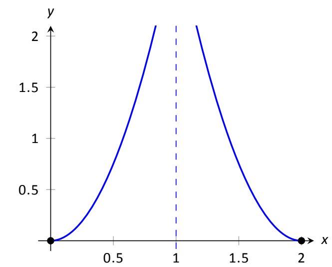
11. $a = 1$



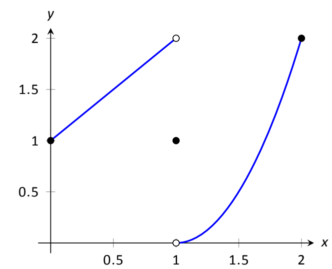
12. $a = 1$



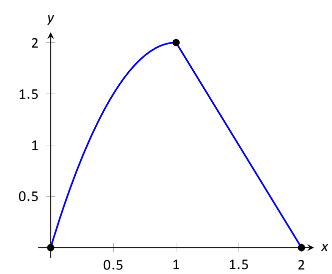
13. $a = 1$



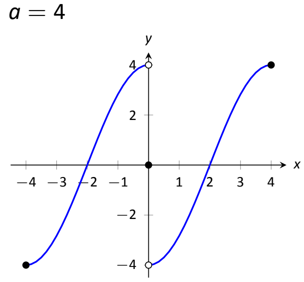
14. $a = 0$



15. $a = 1$



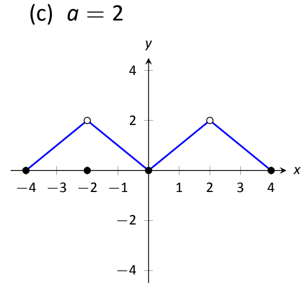
16. $a = 4$



17. (a) $a = -2$

    (b) $a = 0$

    (c) $a = 2$



In Exercises 18 – 21, determine if f is continuous at the indicated values. If not, explain why.

18. $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & x = 0 \\ \frac{\sin x}{x} & x > 0 \end{cases}$

    (a) $x = 0$

    (b) $x = \pi$

19. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3 - x & x < 1 \\ x - 2 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$

    (a) $x = 0$

    (b) $x = 1$

20. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^2+5x+4}{x^2+3x+2} & x \neq -1 \\ 3 & x = -1 \end{cases}$

    (a) $x = -1$

    (b) $x = 10$

21. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^2-64}{x^2-11x+24} & x \neq 8 \\ 5 & x = 8 \end{cases}$

    (a) $x = 0$

    (b) $x = 8$

In Exercises 22 – 34, give the intervals on which the given function is continuous.

22. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 9$

23. $g(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 4}$

24. $h(k) = \sqrt{1-k} + \sqrt{k+1}$

25. $f(t) = \sqrt{5t^2 - 30}$

26. $g(t) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-t^2}}$

27. $g(x) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$

28. $f(x) = e^x$

29. $g(s) = \ln s$

30. $h(t) = \cos t$

31. $f(k) = \sqrt{1 - e^k}$

32. $f(x) = \sin(e^x + x^2)$

33. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x+1}{x+4} & x < 2 \\ x^2 - 3 & 2 \leq x \leq 5 \\ 6 - 2x & x > 5 \end{cases}$

34. $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{x-1} & x < 0 \\ 2x^2 - 3x - 1 & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 5x^2 - 4x & x > 2 \end{cases}$

35. Let f be continuous on $[1, 5]$ where $f(1) = -2$ and $f(5) = -10$. Does a value $1 < c < 5$ exist such that $f(c) = -9$? Why/why not?

36. Let g be continuous on $[-3, 7]$ where $g(0) = 0$ and $g(2) = 25$. Does a value $-3 < c < 7$ exist such that $g(c) = 15$? Why/why not?

37. Let f be continuous on $[-1, 1]$ where $f(-1) = -10$ and $f(1) = 10$. Does a value $-1 < c < 1$ exist such that $f(c) = 11$? Why/why not?

38. Let h be a function on $[-1, 1]$ where $h(-1) = -10$ and $h(1) = 10$. Does a value $-1 < c < 1$ exist such that $h(c) = 0$? Why/why not?

In Exercises 39 – 42, find the value(s) of a and b so that the function is continuous on $\mathbb{R}$.

39. $g(x) = \begin{cases} ax^2 + 3x & x < 2 \\ x^3 - ax & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$

40. $f(x) = \begin{cases} a^2x - ax & x > 3 \\ 4 & x \leq 3 \end{cases}$

41. $f(x) = \begin{cases} ax - b & x < -1 \\ 2x^2 + 3ax + b & -1 \leq x < 1 \\ 4 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$

42. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 2x & x \leq a \\ -1 & x > a \end{cases}$

In Exercises 43 – 46, sketch the graph of a function that has the following properties.

43. f is discontinuous at 3, but continuous from the left at 3, and continuous elsewhere.

44. f is discontinuous at -1 and 2, but continuous from the right at -1 and continuous from the left at 2, and continuous elsewhere.

45. f has a jump discontinuity at -2 and an infinite discontinuity at 4 and is continuous elsewhere.

46. f has a removable discontinuity at 2, is continuous only from the left at 5, and is continuous elsewhere.

In Exercises 47 – 50, show that the functions have at least one real root.

47. $f(x) = x^2 + 2x - 4$

48. $f(x) = \sin x - 1/2$

49. $f(x) = e^x - 2$

50. $f(x) = \cos x - \sin x$

Review

51. Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 5 & x < 5 \\ 5x & x \geq 5 \end{cases}$.

(a) $\lim_{x\to 5^-} f(x)$

(b) $\lim_{x\to 5^+} f(x)$

(c) $\lim_{x\to 5} f(x)$

(d) $f(5)$

52. Numerically approximate the following limits:

(a) $\lim_{x\to -4/5^+} \dfrac{x^2 - 8.2x - 7.2}{x^2 + 5.8x + 4}$

(b) $\lim_{x\to -4/5^-} \dfrac{x^2 - 8.2x - 7.2}{x^2 + 5.8x + 4}$

53. Give an example of function $f(x)$ for which $\lim_{x\to 0} f(x)$ does not exist.

2: DERIVATIVES

The previous chapter introduced the most fundamental of calculus topics: the limit. This chapter introduces the second most fundamental of calculus topics: the derivative. Limits describe *where* a function is going; derivatives describe *how fast* the function is going.

2.0 Chapter Prerequisites

The material in this section provides a basic review of and practice problems for pre-calculus skills essential to your success in Calculus. You should take time to review this section and work the suggested problems (checking your answers against those in the back of the book). Since this content is a pre-requisite for Calculus, reviewing and mastering these skills are considered your responsibility. This means that minimal, and in some cases no, class time will be devoted to this section. When you identify areas that you need help with we strongly urge you to seek assistance outside of class from your instructor or other student tutoring service.

Rules of Exponents

We will briefly summarize the laws of exponents and equivalent forms of exponent expressions commonly used in this chapter. The laws of exponents are only valid for the values of x and y for which the expression is defined (i.e., nonzero real numbers in the denominator and nonnegative real numbers when roots are even.) Our first is the product of exponents. If *m* and *n* are real numbers, then

$$x^m \cdot x^n = x^{m+n}.$$

Example 2.0.1 Product Law of Exponents

$$x^5 \cdot x^7 = x^{5+7} = x^{12}$$

$$x^{-3} \cdot x^{-4} = x^{-3+(-4)} = x^{-7} = \frac{1}{x^7}$$

$$x^{-1/2} \cdot x^{2/3} = x^{-1/2+2/3} = x^{1/6} = \sqrt[6]{x}.$$

Our next is the quotient of exponents. If *m* and *n* are real numbers, then

$$\frac{x^m}{x^n} = x^{m-n}.$$

Example 2.0.2 Quotient Law of Exponents

$$\frac{x^5}{x^7} = x^{5-7} = x^{-2} = \frac{1}{x^2}$$
$$\frac{x^{-3}}{x^{-4}} = x^{-3-(-4)} = x^1 = x$$
$$\frac{x^{2/3}}{x^{-1/2}} = x^{2/3-(-1/2)} = x^{7/6} = \sqrt[6]{x^7} = x\sqrt[6]{x}.$$

Our third is when a power is raised to a power. Once again, we assume m and n are real numbers. In that case,

$$(x^m)^n = x^{m \cdot n}.$$

Example 2.0.3 Power Law of Exponents

$$(x^5)^7 = x^{5 \cdot 7} = x^{35}$$
$$x^{-3} \cdot x^4 = x^{-3 \cdot 4} = x^{-12} = \frac{1}{x^{12}}$$
$$x^{-1/2} \cdot x^{2/3} = x^{-1/2 \cdot 2/3} = x^{-1/3} = \frac{1}{\sqrt[3]{x}}.$$

Our final law tells us how to distribute a power over a product and a quotient. If m is a real number, then

$$(xy)^m = x^m y^m \qquad \text{and} \qquad \left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^m = \frac{x^m}{y^m}.$$

Example 2.0.4 Product and Quotient Raised to a Power

$$(xyz)^7 = x^7 y^7 z^7$$
$$\left(\frac{x}{y}\right)^{-4} = \frac{x^{-4}}{y^{-4}} = \frac{y^4}{x^4}.$$

Factoring and Simplifying Complex Fractions

The following examples demonstrate an efficient factoring technique that can be used to create the various equivalent expressions often needed to complete problems that arise in Calculus. The ability to move flexibly and efficiently among different representations of an expression is an important skill to have.

Notes:

Example 2.0.5 Factoring out the common factor

Factor completely to write an equivalent expression:

1. $x^{7/3} - 5x^{2/3}$ 2. $\frac{1}{2}x(x-3)^{-2/5} + (x-3)^{3/5}$

Solution

1. $$x^{7/3} - 4x^{2/3} = x^{2/3}(x^{5/3} - 4) = \sqrt[3]{x^2}(\sqrt[3]{x^5} - 4).$$

2. $$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}x(x-3)^{-2/5} + (x-3)^{3/5} &= \frac{1}{2}(x-3)^{-2/5}\big(1 + 2(x-3)\big) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(x-3)^{-2/5}(1+2x-6) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(x-3)^{-2/5}(2x-5) \\ &= \frac{2x-5}{2(x-3)^{2/5}} \qquad \text{or} \\ &= \frac{2x-5}{2\sqrt[5]{(x-3)^2}} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2.0.6 Simplifying complex fractions

Factor out the lowest power of the common factor to simplify the complex fraction

$$\frac{\frac{2}{3}x(x-2)^{-\frac{1}{3}} + (x-2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}{x^2}.$$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\frac{2}{3}x(x-2)^{-1/3} + (x-2)^{2/3}}{x^2} &= \frac{\frac{1}{3}(x-2)^{-1/3}\big(2x + 3(x-2)\big)}{x^2} \\ &= \frac{2x+3x-6}{3x^2(x-2)^{1/3}} \\ &= \frac{5x-6}{3x^2\sqrt[3]{x-2}} \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Function Composition

Function composition refers to combining functions in a way that the output from one function becomes the input for the next function. In other words, the range (y-values) of one function become the domain (x-values) of the next function. We denote this as $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$, where the output of $g(x)$ becomes the input of $f(x)$.

Example 2.0.7 Composition of two functions

Given $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2}$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{x+4}$, find $(f \circ g)(x)$ and $(g \circ f)(x)$.

Solution To find $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x))$, we substitute the function $g(x)$ into the function $f(x)$. Thus,

$$f(g(x)) = f\left(\sqrt{x+4}\right) = \frac{1}{(\sqrt{x+4})^2} = \frac{1}{x+4}.$$

For $(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$, we substitute the function $f(x)$ into the function $g(x)$. Thus,

$$g(f(x)) = g\left(\frac{1}{x^2}\right) = \sqrt{\frac{1}{x^2} + 4} = \sqrt{\frac{1+4x^2}{x^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}{x}.$$

Example 2.0.8 Composition of three functions

Given $f(x) = x^2$, $g(x) = \sqrt{4-x}$ and $h(x) = 3x - 5$, find $(f \circ g \circ h)(x)$ and $(g \circ f \circ h)(x)$.

Solution To find $(f \circ g \circ h)(x)$ we must start with the inside and work our way out.

$$\begin{aligned}(f \circ g \circ h)(x) &= f(g(h(x))) \\ &= f(g(3x-5)) \\ &= f\left(\sqrt{4-(3x-5)}\right) = f\left(\sqrt{9-3x}\right) \\ &= \left(\sqrt{9-3x}\right)^2 = 9 - 3x\end{aligned}$$

For $(g \circ f \circ h)(x)$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(g \circ f \circ h)(x) &= g(f(h(x))) \\ &= g(f(3x-5)) \\ &= g((3x-5)^2) = g(9x^2 - 30x + 25) \\ &= \sqrt{4 - (9x^2 - 30x + 25)} = \sqrt{30x - 9x^2 - 21}\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

In this chapter we will also need to decompose a given function into two or more, less complex functions. For any one function there is often more than one way to write the decomposition. The following examples demonstrate this.

Example 2.0.9 Decomposing a function

Given $F(x) = \sin(3x^2 + 5)$, find $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ so that $F(x) = f(g(x))$.

Solution One solution is $f(x) = \sin x$ and $g(x) = 3x^2 + 5$. Another possible solution is $f(x) = \sin(x + 5)$ and $g(x) = 3x^2$.

Notes:

Exercises 2.0 (solutions)

Problems

In Exercises 1 – 4, simplify each expression. Write your answer so that all exponents are positive.

1. $(5x^4y^5)(2x^2y^3)^4$

2. $\left(\dfrac{4a^{3/2}b^3}{a^2b^{-1/2}}\right)^{-2}$

3. $\dfrac{\left(-2x^{-3}y^7z^5\right)^{-4}}{\left(x^3y^{-2}z^5\right)^3}$

4. $\sqrt[4]{x^8y^{16}z^{21}}$

In Exercises 5 – 7, factor to write equivalent expressions.

5. $\dfrac{5}{3}x^{\frac{2}{3}} - \frac{5}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}$

6. $\dfrac{\frac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}}(x+4) - 3x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{(x+4)^2}$

7. $6x(3x^2+2)^4(x^2-5)^2 + 24x(3x^2+2)^3(x^2-5)^3$

8. If $f(x) = x^2 + 2x$ and $g(x) = x - 4$ find
   (a) $(f \circ g)(6)$ (b) $(g \circ f)(6)$
   (c) $(f \circ g)(x)$ (d) $(g \circ f)(x)$

9. If $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x-5}$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{x-2}$ find
   (a) $(f \circ g)(6)$ (b) $(g \circ f)(6)$
   (c) $(f \circ g)(x)$ (d) $(g \circ f)(x)$

10. If $F(x) = f(g(x))$ identify $f(x)$ and $g(x)$. (a) $F(x) = \frac{5}{x+4}$ (b) $F(x) = \left|4 - x^2\right|$ (c) $F(x) = \sqrt{(x+2)^2 - 5}$

11. If $F(x) = f(g(h(x)))$ identify $f(x)$, $g(x)$ and $h(x)$. (a) $F(x) = \sqrt[3]{(2x+1)^2}$ (b) $F(x) = 2\sqrt[3]{x^2} + 1$

2.1 Instantaneous Rates of Change: The Derivative

A common amusement park ride lifts riders to a height then allows them to freefall a certain distance before safely stopping them. Suppose such a ride drops riders from a height of 150 feet. Students of physics may recall that the height (in feet) of the riders, t seconds after freefall (and ignoring air resistance, etc.) can be accurately modeled by $f(t) = -16t^2 + 150$.

Using this formula, it is easy to verify that, without intervention, the riders will hit the ground at $t = 2.5\sqrt{1.5} \approx 3.06$ seconds. Suppose the designers of the ride decide to begin slowing the riders' fall after 2 seconds (corresponding to a height of 86 ft.). How fast will the riders be traveling at that time?

We have been given a *position* function, but what we want to compute is a velocity at a specific point in time, i.e., we want an *instantaneous velocity*. We do not currently know how to calculate this.

However, we do know from common experience how to calculate an *average velocity*. (If we travel 60 miles in 2 hours, we know we had an average velocity of 30 mph.) We looked at this concept in Section 1.1 when we introduced the difference quotient. We have

$$\frac{\text{change in distance}}{\text{change in time}} = \frac{\text{“ rise ”}}{\text{run}} = \text{average velocity.}$$

We can approximate the instantaneous velocity at $t = 2$ by considering the average velocity over some time period containing $t = 2$. If we make the time interval small, we will get a good approximation. (This fact is commonly used. For instance, high speed cameras are used to track fast moving objects. Distances are measured over a fixed number of frames to generate an accurate approximation of the velocity.)

Consider the interval from $t = 2$ to $t = 3$ (just before the riders hit the ground). On that interval, the average velocity is

$$\frac{f(3) - f(2)}{3 - 2} = \frac{f(3) - f(2)}{1} = -80 \text{ ft/s},$$

where the minus sign indicates that the riders are moving *down*. By narrowing the interval we consider, we will likely get a better approximation of the instantaneous velocity. On $[2, 2.5]$ we have

$$\frac{f(2.5) - f(2)}{2.5 - 2} = \frac{f(2.5) - f(2)}{0.5} = -72 \text{ ft/s}.$$

We can do this for smaller and smaller intervals of time. For instance, over a time span of 1/10$^{\text{th}}$ of a second, i.e., on $[2, 2.1]$, we have

$$\frac{f(2.1) - f(2)}{2.1 - 2} = \frac{f(2.1) - f(2)}{0.1} = -65.6 \text{ ft/s}.$$

Notes:

Over a time span of 1/100th of a second, on $[2, 2.01]$, the average velocity is

$$\frac{f(2.01)-f(2)}{2.01-2}=\frac{f(2.01)-f(2)}{0.01}=-64.16 \text{ ft/s}.$$

What we are really computing is the average velocity on the interval $[2, 2+h]$ for small values of h. That is, we are computing

$$\frac{f(2+h)-f(2)}{h}$$

where h is the change in time after 2 seconds.

What we really want is for $h = 0$, but this, of course, returns the familiar "0/0" indeterminate form. So we employ a limit, as we did in Section 1.1.

We can approximate the value of this limit numerically with small values of h as seen in Figure 2.1. It looks as though the velocity is approaching -64 ft/s. Computing the limit directly gives

h	Average Velocity ft/s
1	-80
0.5	-72
0.1	-65.6
0.01	-64.16
0.001	-64.016

Figure 2.1: Approximating the instantaneous velocity with average velocities over a small time period h.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(2+h)-f(2)}{h} &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-16(2+h)^2+150-(-16(2)^2+150)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-64h-16h^2}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} -64-16h\\ &= -64.\end{aligned}$$

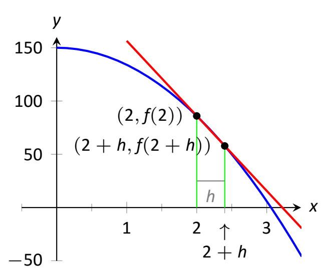


Figure 2.2: Computing the difference quotient.

Graphically, we can view the average velocities we computed numerically as the slopes of secant lines on the graph of f going through the points $(2, f(2))$ and $(2+h, f(2+h))$, as in Figure 2.2. In Figure 2.3, the secant line corresponding to $h = 1$ is shown in three contexts. Figure 2.3(a) shows a "zoomed out" version of f with its secant line. In (b), we zoom in around the points of intersection between f and the secant line. Notice how well this secant line approximates f between those two points – it is a common practice to approximate functions with straight lines.

As $h \to 0$, these secant lines approach the *tangent line*, a line that goes through the point $(2, f(2))$ with the special slope of -64. In parts (c) and (d) of Figure 2.3, we zoom in around the point $(2, 86)$. In (c) we see the secant line, which approximates f well, but not as well the tangent line shown in (d).

We have just introduced a number of important concepts that we will flesh out more within this section. First, we formally define two of them.

Notes:

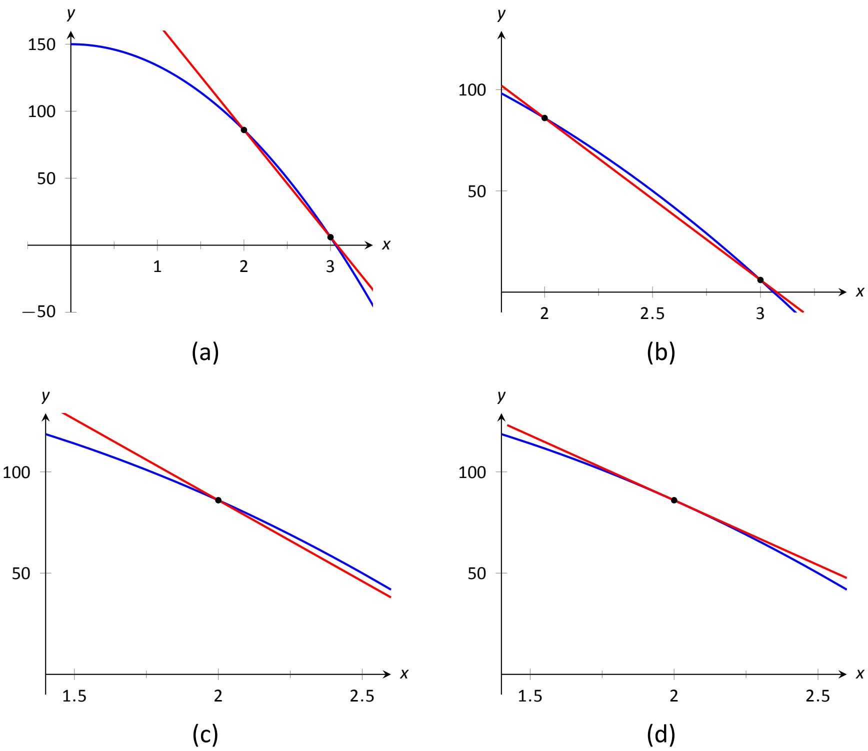


Figure 2.3: Parts (a), (b) and (c) show the secant line to $f(x)$ with $h = 1$, zoomed in different amounts. Part (d) shows the tangent line to f at $x = 2$.

Definition 9 Derivative at a Point

Let f be a continuous function on an open interval I and let c be in I. The **derivative of f at c**, denoted $f'(c)$, is

$$\lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(c+h) - f(c)}{h},$$

provided the limit exists.

If the limit exists, we say that f **is differentiable at** c; if the limit does not exist, then f **is not differentiable at** c. If f is differentiable at every point in I, then f **is differentiable on** I.

Notes:

Definition 10 Tangent Line
Let f be continuous on an open interval I and differentiable at c, for some c in I. The line with equation $\ell(x) = f'(c)(x - c) + f(c)$ is the **tangent line** to the graph of f at c; that is, it is the line through $(c, f(c))$ whose slope is the derivative of f at c.

Watch the video:
The Difference Quotient — Example 1 at
`http://patrickjmt.com/the-difference-quotient-example-1/`

Some examples will help us understand these definitions.

Example 2.1.1 Finding derivatives and tangent lines
Let $f(x) = 3x^2 + 5x - 7$. Find:

1. $f'(1)$
2. The equation of the tangent line to the graph of f at $x = 1$.
3. $f'(3)$
4. The equation of the tangent line to the graph f at $x = 3$.

Solution

1. We compute this directly using Definition 9.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(1) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3(1+h)^2 + 5(1+h) - 7 - (3(1)^2 + 5(1) - 7)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3h^2 + 11h}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} 3h + 11 = 11. \end{aligned}$$

2. The tangent line at $x = 1$ has slope $f'(1)$ and goes through the point $(1, f(1)) = (1, 1)$. Thus the tangent line has equation, in point-slope form, $y = 11(x - 1) + 1$. In slope-intercept form we have $y = 11x - 10$.

Notes:

3. Again, using the definition,

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(3) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(3+h)-f(3)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3(3+h)^2+5(3+h)-7-(3(3)^2+5(3)-7)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3h^2+23h}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} 3h+23\\
&= 23.
\end{aligned}$$

4. The tangent line at $x = 3$ has slope 23 and goes through the point $(3, f(3)) = (3, 35)$. Thus the tangent line has equation $y = 23(x-3)+35 = 23x-34$.

A graph of f is given in Figure 2.4 along with the tangent lines at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$.

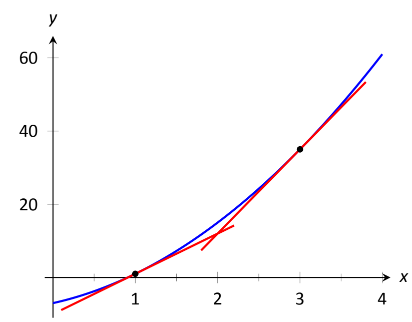


Figure 2.4: A graph of $f(x) = 3x^2 + 5x - 7$ and its tangent lines at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$.

Linear functions are easy to work with; many functions that arise in the course of solving real problems are not easy to work with. A common practice in mathematical problem solving is to approximate difficult functions with not–so–difficult functions. Lines are a common choice. It turns out that at any given point on the graph of a differentiable function f, the best linear approximation to f is its tangent line. That is one reason we'll spend considerable time finding tangent lines to functions.

One type of function that does not benefit from a tangent–line approximation is a line; it is rather simple to recognize that the tangent line to a line is the line itself. We look at this in the following example.

Example 2.1.2 Finding the Derivative of a Line

Consider $f(x) = 3x + 5$. Find the equation of the tangent line to f at $x = 1$ and $x = 7$.

SOLUTION We find the slope of the tangent line by using Definition 9.

Notes:

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(1) &= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(1+h) - f(1)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{3(1+h) + 5 - (3+5)}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{3h}{h} \\
&= \lim_{h \to 0} 3 \\
&= 3.
\end{aligned}$$

We just found that $f'(1) = 3$. That is, we found the *instantaneous rate of change* of $f(x) = 3x + 5$ is 3. This is not surprising; lines are characterized by being the *only* functions with a *constant rate of change.* That rate of change is called the *slope* of the line. Since their rates of change are constant, their *instantaneous* rates of change are always the same; they are all the slope.

So given a line $f(x) = ax + b$, the derivative at any point x will be a; that is, $f'(x) = a$.

It is now easy to see that the tangent line to the graph of f at $x = 1$ is just f, with the same being true for $x = 7$.

We often desire to find the tangent line to the graph of a function without knowing the actual derivative of the function. In these cases, the best we may be able to do is approximate the tangent line. We demonstrate this in the next example.

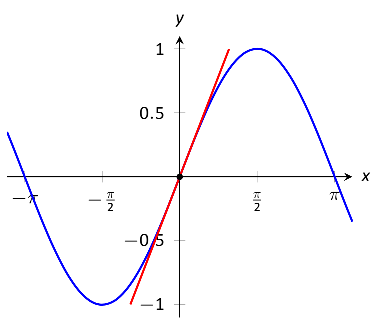


Figure 2.5: $f(x) = \sin x$ graphed with an approximation to its tangent line at $x = 0$.

Example 2.1.3 Numerical Approximation of the Tangent Line

Approximate the equation of the tangent line to the graph of $f(x) = \sin x$ at $x = 0$.

Solution In order to find the equation of the tangent line, we need a slope and a point. The point is given to us: $(0, \sin 0) = (0, 0)$. To compute the slope, we need the derivative. This is where we will make an approximation. Recall that

$$f'(0) \approx \frac{\sin(0 + h) - \sin 0}{h}$$

for a small value of h. We choose (somewhat arbitrarily) to let $h = 0.1$. Thus

$$f'(0) \approx \frac{\sin(0.1) - \sin 0}{0.1} \approx 0.9983.$$

Notes:

Thus our approximation of the equation of the tangent line is $y = 0.9983(x - 0) + 0 = 0.9983x$; it is graphed in Figure 2.5. The graph seems to imply the approximation is rather good.

Recall from Section 1.3 that $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 0}\frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$, meaning for values of x near 0, $\sin x \approx x$. Since the slope of the line $y = x$ is 1 at $x = 0$, it should seem reasonable that "the slope of $f(x) = \sin x$" is near 1 at $x = 0$. In fact, since we *approximated* the value of the slope to be 0.9983, we might guess the *actual value* is 1. We'll come back to this later.

Consider again Example 2.1.1. To find the derivative of f at $x = 1$, we needed to evaluate a limit. To find the derivative of f at $x = 3$, we needed to again evaluate a limit. We have this process:

$$\begin{array}{c}\text{input specific}\\ \text{number } c\end{array} \longrightarrow \boxed{\begin{array}{c}\text{do something}\\ \text{to } f \text{ and } c\end{array}} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}\text{return}\\ \text{number } f'(c)\end{array}$$

This process describes a *function*; given one input (the value of c), we return exactly one output (the value of $f'(c)$). The "do something" box is where the tedious work (taking limits) of this function occurs.

Instead of applying this function repeatedly for different values of c, let us apply it just once to the variable x. We then take a limit just once. The process now looks like:

$$\text{input variable x} \longrightarrow \boxed{\begin{array}{c}\text{do something}\\ \text{to } f \text{ and } x\end{array}} \longrightarrow \begin{array}{c}\text{return}\\ \text{function } f'(x)\end{array}$$

The output is the "derivative function," $f'(x)$. The $f'(x)$ function will take a number c as input and return the derivative of f at c. This calls for a definition.

Definition 11 Derivative Function

Let f be a differentiable function on an open interval I. The function

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

is **the derivative of** f.

Notation:

Let $y = f(x)$. The following notations all represent the derivative:

$$f'(x) = y' = \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{df}{dx} = \frac{d}{dx}(f) = \frac{d}{dx}(y).$$

Notes:

Important: The notation $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is one symbol; it is **not** the fraction "dy/dx". The notation, while somewhat confusing at first, was chosen with care. A fraction–looking symbol was chosen because the derivative has many fraction–like properties. Among other places, we see these properties at work when we talk about the units of the derivative, when we discuss the Chain Rule, and when we learn about integration (topics that appear in later sections and chapters).

Examples will help us understand this definition.

Example 2.1.4 **Finding the derivative of a function**

Let $f(x) = 3x^2 + 5x - 7$ as in Example 2.1.1. Find $f'(x)$.

Solution We apply Definition 11.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3(x+h)^2 + 5(x+h) - 7 - (3x^2 + 5x - 7)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{3h^2 + 6xh + 5h}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} 3h + 6x + 5 \\ &= 6x + 5 \end{aligned}$$

So $f'(x) = 6x + 5$. Recall earlier we found that $f'(1) = 11$ and $f'(3) = 23$. Note our new computation of $f'(x)$ affirm these facts.

Example 2.1.5 **Finding the derivative of a function**

Let $f(x) = \frac{1}{x+1}$. Find $f'(x)$.

Solution We apply Definition 11.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\frac{1}{x+h+1} - \frac{1}{x+1}}{h} \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Now find a common denominator and subtract; factor $1/h$ out front to facilitate reading.

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h} \cdot \left(\frac{x+1}{(x+1)(x+h+1)} - \frac{x+h+1}{(x+1)(x+h+1)} \right) \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h} \cdot \left(\frac{x+1-(x+h+1)}{(x+1)(x+h+1)} \right) \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1}{h} \cdot \left(\frac{-h}{(x+1)(x+h+1)} \right) \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{-1}{(x+1)(x+h+1)} \\
&= \frac{-1}{(x+1)(x+1)} \\
&= \frac{-1}{(x+1)^2}
\end{aligned}$$

So $f'(x) = \dfrac{-1}{(x+1)^2}$. To practice using our notation, we could also state

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x+1}\right) = \frac{-1}{(x+1)^2}.$$

Example 2.1.6 Finding the derivative of a function

Find the derivative of $f(x) = \sin x$.

Solution Before applying Definition 11, note that once this is found, we can find the actual tangent line to $f(x) = \sin x$ at $x = 0$, whereas we settled for an approximation in Example 2.1.3.

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin(x+h) - \sin x}{h} && \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{Use trig identity}\\ \sin(x+h) = \sin x \cos h + \cos x \sin h\end{array}\right) \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin x \cos h + \cos x \sin h - \sin x}{h} && \text{(regroup)} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin x(\cos h - 1) + \cos x \sin h}{h} && \text{(split into two fractions)} \\
&= \lim_{h\to 0} \left(\frac{\sin x(\cos h - 1)}{h} + \frac{\cos x \sin h}{h} \right) && \left(\text{use } \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\cos h - 1}{h} = 0 \text{ and } \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sin h}{h} = 1\right) \\
&= \sin x \cdot 0 + \cos x \cdot 1 \\
&= \cos x\,.
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

We have found that when $f(x) = \sin x$, $f'(x) = \cos x$ (see Figure 2.6).

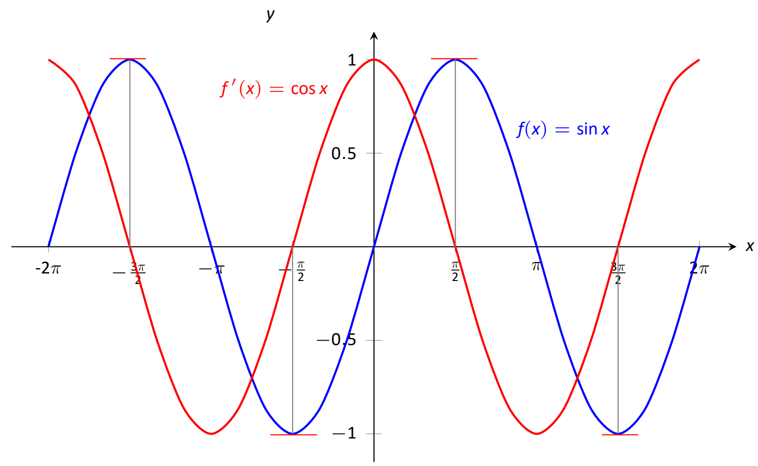


Figure 2.6: The function $f(x) = \sin x$ and its derivative $f'(x) = \cos x$.

Initially, this might be somewhat surprising; the result of a tedious limit process and the sine function is a nice function. Then again, perhaps this is not entirely surprising. The sine function is periodic — it repeats itself on regular intervals. Therefore its rate of change also repeats itself on the same regular intervals. In fact, if we think about $f'(x)$ as the slope of the tangent to the sine curve we notice the following

- when the slope of tangent lines is 0 then $f'(x) = \cos x$ crosses the $x-$axis;
- when the slopes of the tangent lines are positive then f' lies above the $x-$axis; and
- when the slopes of the tangent lines are negative then f' lies below the $x-$axis.

We should have known the derivative would be periodic; we now know exactly which periodic function it is.

Thinking back to Example 2.1.3, we can find the slope of the tangent line to $f(x) = \sin x$ at $x = 0$ using our derivative. We approximated the slope as 0.9983; we now know the slope is *exactly* $\cos 0 = 1$.

Notes:

Example 2.1.7 Finding the derivative of a piecewise defined function

Find the derivative of the absolute value function,

$$f(x) = |x| = \begin{cases} -x & x < 0 \\ x & x \geq 0 \end{cases}.$$

See Figure 2.7.

Solution We need to evaluate $\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}$. As f is piecewise-defined, we need to consider separately the limits when $x < 0$ and when $x > 0$.

When $x < 0$:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}\big(-x\big) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-(x+h)-(-x)}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{-h}{h}\\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} -1\\ &= -1.\end{aligned}$$

When $x > 0$, a similar computation shows that $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x\big) = 1$.

We need to also find the derivative at $x = 0$. By the definition of the derivative at a point, we have

$$f'(0) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(0+h)-f(0)}{h}.$$

Since $x = 0$ is the point where our function's definition switches from one piece to the other, we need to consider left and right-hand limits. Consider the following, where we compute the left and right hand limits side by side.

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0^-}\frac{f(0+h)-f(0)}{h} &=\\ \lim_{h\to 0^-}\frac{-h-0}{h} &=\\ \lim_{h\to 0^-} -1 &= -1\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{h\to 0^+}\frac{f(0+h)-f(0)}{h} &=\\ \lim_{h\to 0^+}\frac{h-0}{h} &=\\ \lim_{h\to 0^+} 1 &= 1\end{aligned}$$

The last lines of each column tell the story: the left and right hand limits are not equal. Therefore the limit does not exist at 0, and f is not differentiable at 0; see Figure 2.8. So we have

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} -1 & x < 0 \\ 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

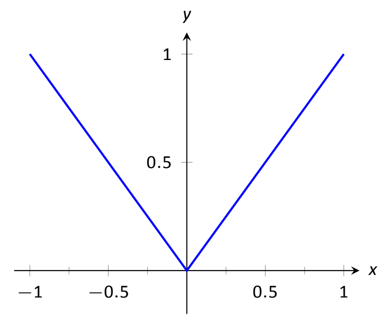


Figure 2.7: The absolute value function, $f(x) = |x|$. Notice how the slope of the lines (and hence the tangent lines) abruptly changes at $x = 0$.

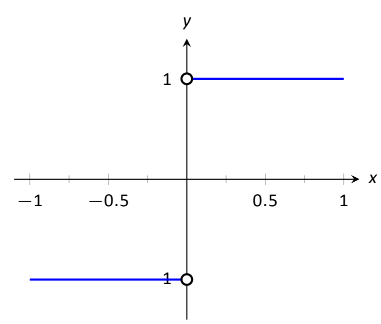


Figure 2.8: A graph of the derivative of $f(x) = |x|$.

Notes:

At $x = 0$, $f'(x)$ does not exist; there is a jump discontinuity at 0. So $f(x) = |x|$ is differentiable everywhere except at 0.

The point of non-differentiability came where the piecewise defined function switched from one piece to the other. Our next example shows that this does not always cause trouble.

Example 2.1.8 Finding the derivative of a piecewise defined function

Find the derivative of $f(x)$, where $f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin x & x \leq \pi/2 \\ 1 & x > \pi/2 \end{cases}$. See Figure 2.9.

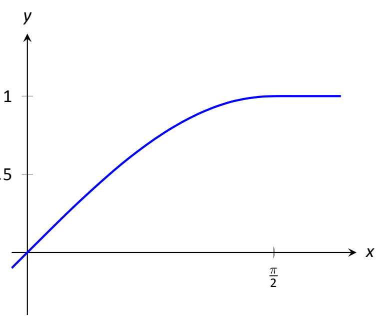


Figure 2.9: A graph of $f(x)$ as defined in Example 2.1.8.

Solution Using Example 2.1.6, we know that when $x < \pi/2$, $f'(x) = \cos x$. It is easy to verify that when $x > \pi/2$, $f'(x) = 0$; consider:

$$\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{1-1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0} 0 = 0.$$

So far we have

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & x < \pi/2 \\ 0 & x > \pi/2 \end{cases}.$$

We still need to find $f'(\pi/2)$. Notice at $x = \pi/2$ that both pieces of f' are 0, meaning we can state that $f'(\pi/2) = 0$.

Being more rigorous, we can again evaluate the difference quotient limit at $x = \pi/2$, utilizing again left and right–hand limits:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{f(\pi/2+h)-f(\pi/2)}{h} &= \\ \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{\sin(\pi/2+h)-\sin(\pi/2)}{h} &= \\ \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{\sin(\frac{\pi}{2})\cos(h)+\sin(h)\cos(\frac{\pi}{2})-\sin(\frac{\pi}{2})}{h} &= \\ \lim_{h\to 0^-} \frac{1\cdot\cos(h)+\sin(h)\cdot 0-1}{h} &= \\ 0 & \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{f(\pi/2+h)-f(\pi/2)}{h} &= \\ \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{1-1}{h} &= \\ \lim_{h\to 0^+} \frac{0}{h} &= \\ 0 & \end{aligned}$$

Since both the left and right hand limits are 0 at $x = \pi/2$, the limit exists and $f'(\pi/2)$ exists (and is 0). Therefore we can fully write f' as

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} \cos x & x \leq \pi/2 \\ 0 & x > \pi/2 \end{cases}.$$

See Figure 2.10 for a graph of this function.

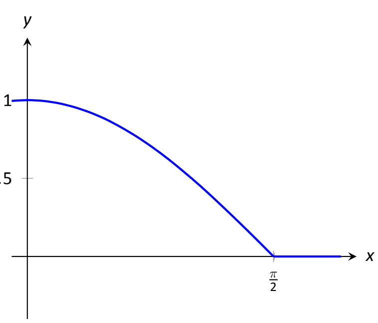


Figure 2.10: A graph of $f'(x)$ in Example 2.1.8.

Notes:

Recall we pseudo-defined a continuous function as one in which we could sketch its graph without lifting our pencil. We can give a pseudo–definition for differentiability as well: it is a continuous function that does not have any "sharp corners." One such sharp corner is shown in Figure 2.7. Even though the function f in Example 2.1.8 is piecewise–defined, the transition is "smooth" hence it is differentiable. Note how in the graph of f in Figure 2.9 it is difficult to tell when f switches from one piece to the other; there is no "corner."

To better understand the definition of a derivative, experiment with the Geogebra app at `http://mathinsight.org/applet/secant_line_slope`.

This section defined the derivative; in some sense, it answers the question of "What *is* the derivative?" The next section addresses the question "What does the derivative *mean*?"

Notes:

Exercises 2.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: Let f be a position function. The average rate of change on $[a,b]$ is the slope of the line through the points $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$.

2. T/F: The definition of the derivative of a function at a point involves taking a limit.

3. In your own words, explain the difference between the average rate of change and instantaneous rate of change.

4. In your own words, explain the difference between Definitions 9 and 11.

5. Let $y = f(x)$. Give three different notations equivalent to "$f'(x)$."

Problems

In Exercises 6 – 15,

(a) use the definition of the derivative to compute the derivative of the given function.

(b) Find the tangent line to the graph of the given function at $x = c$.

6. $f(x) = 6$ at $x = -2$

7. $f(x) = 2x$ at $x = 3$

8. $f(x) = 4 - 3x$ at $x = 7$

9. $g(x) = x^2$ at $x = -2$

10. $h(x) = 2x - x^2$ at $x = 1$

11. $f(x) = 3x^2 - x + 4$ at $x = -1$

12. $g(x) = \sqrt{x+3}$ at $x = 1$

13. $r(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$ at $x = -2$

14. $h(x) = \dfrac{3}{\sqrt{x}}$ at $x = 4$

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x-2}$ at $x = 3$

In Exercises 16 – 19, each limit represents the derivative of some function, f, at some number c. State an appropriate f and c for each.

16. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\sqrt{16+h}-4}{h}$

17. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{(3+h)^4-81}{h}$

18. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\frac{1}{2+h}-\frac{1}{2}}{h}$

19. $\displaystyle\lim_{h\to 0} \frac{\cos(-\pi+h)+1}{h}$

In Exercises 20 – 24, a function f and an x–value a are given. Approximate the equation of the tangent line to the graph of f at $x = a$ by numerically approximating $f'(a)$, using $h = 0.1$.

20. $f(x) = x^2 + 2x + 1$, $x = 3$

21. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, $x = 4$

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{10}{x+1}$, $x = 9$

23. $f(x) = e^x$, $x = 2$

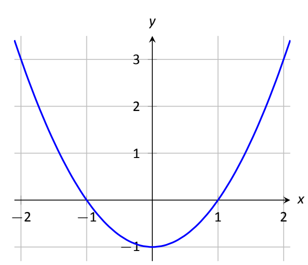
24. $f(x) = \cos x$, $x = 0$

25. The graph of $f(x) = x^2 - 1$ is shown.

    (a) Use the graph to approximate the slope of the tangent line to f at the following points: $(-1, 0)$, $(0, -1)$ and $(2, 3)$.

    (b) Using the definition, find $f'(x)$.

    (c) Find the slope of the tangent line at the points $(-1, 0)$, $(0, -1)$ and $(2, 3)$.

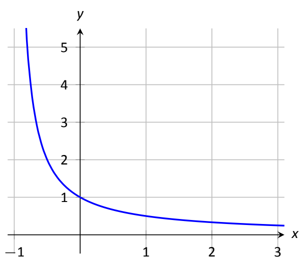


26. The graph of $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x+1}$ is shown.

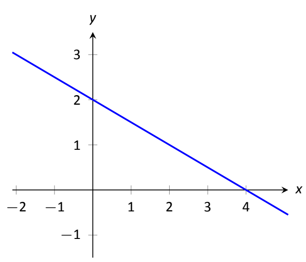
(a) Use the graph to approximate the slope of the tangent line to f at the following points: $(0, 1)$ and $(1, 0.5)$.

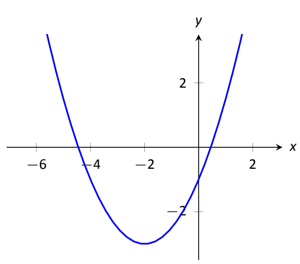
(b) Using the definition, find $f'(x)$.

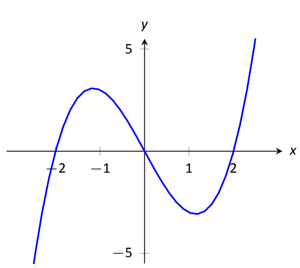
(c) Find the slope of the tangent line at the points $(0, 1)$ and $(1, 0.5)$.

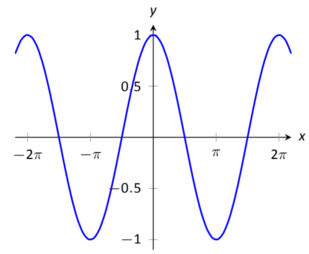


In Exercises 27 – 30, a graph of a function $f(x)$ is given. Using the graph, sketch $f'(x)$.

27. 

28. 

29. 

30. 

31. Using the graph of $g(x)$ below, answer the following questions.

(a) Where is $g(x) > 0$?

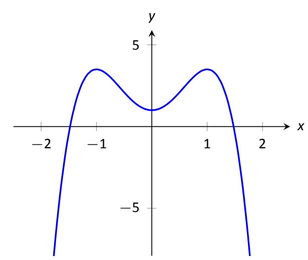
(b) Where is $g(x) < 0$?

(c) Where is $g(x) = 0$?

(d) Where is $g'(x) < 0$?

(e) Where is $g'(x) > 0$?

(f) Where is $g'(x) = 0$?



Review

32. Approximate $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to 5} \frac{x^2 + 2x - 35}{x^2 - 10.5x + 27.5}$.

33. Use the Bisection Method to approximate, accurate to two decimal places, the root of $g(x) = x^3 + x^2 + x - 1$ on $[0.5, 0.6]$.

34. Give intervals on which each of the following functions are continuous.

(a) $\dfrac{1}{e^x + 1}$

(b) $\dfrac{1}{x^2 - 1}$

(c) $\sqrt{5 - x}$

(d) $\sqrt{5 - x^2}$

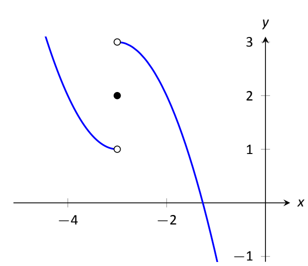
35. Use the graph of $f(x)$ provided to answer the following.

(a) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -3^-} f(x) = ?$

(b) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -3^+} f(x) = ?$

(c) $\displaystyle\lim_{x\to -3} f(x) = ?$

(d) Where is f continuous?



2.2 Interpretations of the Derivative

The previous section defined the derivative of a function and gave examples of how to compute it using its definition (i.e., using limits). The section also started with a brief motivation for this definition, that is, finding the instantaneous velocity of a falling object given its position function. The next section will give us more accessible tools for computing the derivative, tools that are easier to use than repeated use of limits.

This section falls in between the "What is the definition of the derivative?" and "How do I compute the derivative?" sections. Here we are concerned with "What does the derivative mean?", or perhaps, when read with the right emphasis, "What *is* the derivative?" We offer two interconnected interpretations of the derivative, hopefully explaining why we care about it and why it is worthy of study.

Interpretation of the Derivative #1: Instantaneous Rate of Change

The previous section started with an example of using the position of an object (in this case, a falling amusement–park rider) to find the object's velocity. This type of example is often used when introducing the derivative because we tend to readily recognize that velocity is the *instantaneous rate of change of position.* In general, if f is a function of x, then $f'(x)$ measures the instantaneous rate of change of f with respect to x. Put another way, the derivative answers "When x changes, at what rate does f change?" Thinking back to the amusement–park ride, we asked "When time changed, at what rate did the height change?" and found the answer to be "By -64 feet per second."

Now imagine driving a car and looking at the speedometer, which reads "60 mph." Five minutes later, you wonder how far you have traveled. Certainly, lots of things could have happened in those 5 minutes; you could have intentionally sped up significantly, you might have come to a complete stop, you might have slowed to 20 mph as you passed through construction. But suppose that you know, as the driver, none of these things happened. You know you maintained a fairly consistent speed over those 5 minutes. What is a good approximation of the distance traveled?

One could argue the *only* good approximation, given the information provided, would be based on "distance = rate $\times$ time." In this case, we assume a constant rate of 60 mph with a time of $5/60$ hours. Hence we would approximate the distance traveled as 5 miles.

Referring back to the falling amusement–park ride, knowing that at $t = 2$ the velocity was -64 ft/s, we could reasonably assume that 1 second later the riders' height would have dropped by about 64 feet. Knowing that the riders were

Notes:

accelerating as they fell would inform us that this is an *under–approximation*. If all we knew was that $f(2) = 86$ and $f'(2) = -64$, we'd know that we'd have to stop the riders quickly otherwise they would hit the ground!

Units of the Derivative

It is useful to recognize the *units* of the derivative function. If y is a function of x, i.e., $y = f(x)$ for some function f, and y is measured in feet and x in seconds, then the units of $y' = f'$ are "feet per second," commonly written as "ft/s." In general, if y is measured in units P and x is measured in units Q, then y' will be measured in units "P per Q", or "P/Q." Here we see the fraction–like behavior of the derivative in the notation:

$$\text{the units of} \quad \frac{dy}{dx} \quad \text{are} \quad \frac{\text{units of } y}{\text{units of } x}.$$

Example 2.2.1 The meaning of the derivative: World Population

Let $P(t)$ represent the world population t minutes after 12:00 a.m., January 1, 2012. It is fairly accurate to say that $P(0) = 7{,}028{,}734{,}178$ (`www.prb.org`). It is also fairly accurate to state that $P'(0) = 156$; that is, at midnight on January 1, 2012, the population of the world was growing by about 156 *people per minute* (note the units). Twenty days later (or, 28,800 minutes later) we could reasonably assume the population grew by about $(28{,}800)(156) = 4{,}492{,}800$ people.

Example 2.2.2 The meaning of the derivative: Manufacturing

The term *widget* is an economic term for a generic unit of manufacturing output. Suppose a company produces widgets and knows that the market supports a price of \$10 per widget. Let $P(n)$ give the profit, in dollars, earned by manufacturing and selling n widgets. The company likely cannot make a (positive) profit making just one widget; the start–up costs will likely exceed \$10. Mathematically, we would write this as $P(1) < 0$.

What do $P(1000) = 500$ and $P'(1000) = 0.25$ mean? Approximate $P(1100)$.

Solution The equation $P(1000) = 500$ means that selling 1,000 widgets returns a profit of \$500. We interpret $P'(1000) = 0.25$ as meaning that the profit is increasing at rate of \$0.25 per widget (the units are "dollars per widget.") Since we have no other information to use, our best approximation for $P(1100)$ is:

$$P(1100) \approx P(1000) + P'(1000) \times 100 = \$500 + 100 \cdot 0.25 = \$525.$$

We approximate that selling 1,100 widgets returns a profit of \$525.

Notes:

The previous examples made use of an important approximation tool that we first used in our previous "driving a car at 60 mph" example at the beginning of this section. Five minutes after looking at the speedometer, our best approximation for distance traveled assumed the rate of change was constant. In Examples 2.2.1 and 2.2.2 we made similar approximations. We were given rate of change information which we used to approximate total change. Notationally, we would say that

$$f(c+h) \approx f(c) + f'(c) \cdot h.$$

This approximation is best when h is "small." "Small" is a relative term; when dealing with the world population, $h = 22$ days = 28,800 minutes is small in comparison to years. When manufacturing widgets, 100 widgets is small when one plans to manufacture thousands.

The Derivative and Motion

One of the most fundamental applications of the derivative is the study of motion. Let $s(t)$ be a position function, where t is time and $s(t)$ is distance. For instance, s could measure the height of a projectile or the distance an object has traveled.

Let's let $s(t)$ measure the distance traveled, in feet, of an object after t seconds of travel. Then $s'(t)$ has units "feet per second," and $s'(t)$ measures the *instantaneous rate of distance change* – it measures **velocity**.

Now consider $v(t)$, a velocity function. That is, at time t, $v(t)$ gives the velocity of an object. The derivative of v, $v'(t)$, gives the *instantaneous rate of velocity change* – **acceleration**. (We often think of acceleration in terms of cars: a car may "go from 0 to 60 in 4.8 seconds." This is an *average* acceleration, a measurement of how quickly the velocity changed.) If velocity is measured in feet per second, and time is measured in seconds, then the units of acceleration (i.e., the units of $v'(t)$) are "feet per second per second," or (ft/s)/s. We often shorten this to "feet per second squared," or ft/s^2, but this tends to obscure the meaning of the units.

Perhaps the most well known acceleration is that of gravity. In this text, we use $g = 32\text{ft/s}^2$ or $g = 9.8\text{m/s}^2$. What do these numbers mean?

A constant acceleration of $32(\text{ft/s})$/s means that the velocity changes by 32ft/s each second. For instance, let $v(t)$ measures the velocity of a ball thrown straight up into the air, where v has units ft/s and t is measured in seconds. The ball will have a positive velocity while traveling upwards and a negative velocity while falling down. The acceleration is thus -32ft/s^2. If $v(1) = 20$ft/s, then when $t = 2$, the velocity will have decreased by 32ft/s; that is, $v(2) = -12$ft/s. We can continue: $v(3) = -44$ft/s, and we can also figure that $v(0) = 52$ft/s.

These ideas are so important we write them out as a Key Idea.

Notes:

Key Idea 3 The Derivative and Motion

1. Let $s(t)$ be the position function of an object. Then $s'(t)$ is the velocity function of the object.
2. Let $v(t)$ be the velocity function of an object. Then $v'(t)$ is the acceleration function of the object.

We now consider the second interpretation of the derivative given in this section. This interpretation is not independent from the first by any means; many of the same concepts will be stressed, just from a slightly different perspective.

Interpretation of the Derivative #2: The Slope of the Tangent Line

Given a function $y = f(x)$, the difference quotient $\dfrac{f(c+h) - f(c)}{h}$ gives a change in y values divided by a change in x values; i.e., it is a measure of the "rise over run," or "slope," of the line that goes through two points on the graph of f: $\big(c, f(c)\big)$ and $\big(c+h, f(c+h)\big)$. As h shrinks to 0, these two points come close together; in the limit we find $f'(c)$, the slope of a special line called the tangent line.

Lines have a constant rate of change, their slope. Nonlinear functions do not have a constant rate of change, but we can measure their *instantaneous rate of change* at a given x value c by computing $f'(c)$. We can get an idea of how f is behaving by looking at the slopes of its tangent lines. We explore this idea in the following example.

Watch the video:
Interpreting slope of a curve exercise at
`https://www.khanacademy.org/video/interpreting-slope-of-a-curve-exercise`

Notes:

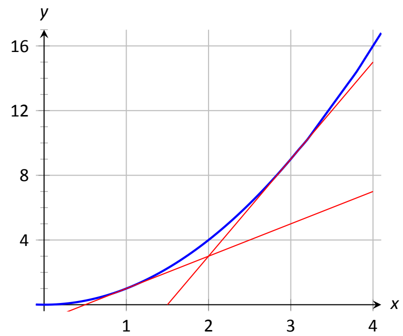


Figure 2.11: A graph of $f(x) = x^2$ and tangent lines.

Example 2.2.3 Understanding the derivative: the rate of change

Consider $f(x) = x^2$ as shown in Figure 2.11 with tangent lines at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$. It is clear that at $x = 3$ the function is growing faster than at $x = 1$, as it is steeper at $x = 3$. How much faster is it growing?

Solution We can answer this directly after the following section, where we learn to quickly compute derivatives. For now, we will answer graphically, by considering the slopes of the respective tangent lines.

With practice, one can fairly effectively sketch tangent lines to a curve at a particular point. In Figure 2.11, we have sketched the tangent lines to f at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$, along with a grid to help us measure the slopes of these lines. At $x = 1$, the slope is 2; at $x = 3$, the slope is 6. Thus we can say not only is f growing faster at $x = 3$ than at $x = 1$, it is growing *three times as fast*.

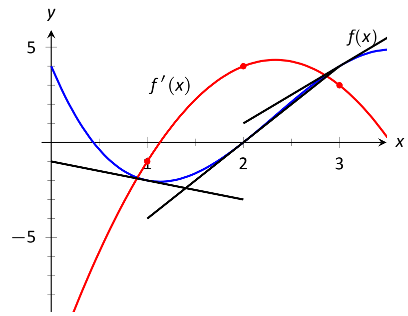


Figure 2.12: Graphs of f and f' in Example 2.2.4, along with tangent lines.

Example 2.2.4 Understanding the graph of the derivative

Consider the graph of $f(x)$ and its derivative, $f'(x)$, in Figure 2.12. Use these graphs to find the slopes of the tangent lines to the graph of f at $x = 1$, $x = 2$, and $x = 3$.

Solution To find the appropriate slopes of tangent lines to the graph of f, we need to look at the corresponding values of f'.

The slope of the tangent line to f at $x = 1$ is $f'(1)$; this looks to be about -1.

The slope of the tangent line to f at $x = 2$ is $f'(2)$; this looks to be about 4.

The slope of the tangent line to f at $x = 3$ is $f'(3)$; this looks to be about 3.

Using these slopes, the tangent lines to f are sketched in Figure 2.12 as well. Included on the graph of f' in this figure are filled circles where $x = 1$, $x = 2$ and $x = 3$ to help better visualize the y value of f' at those points.

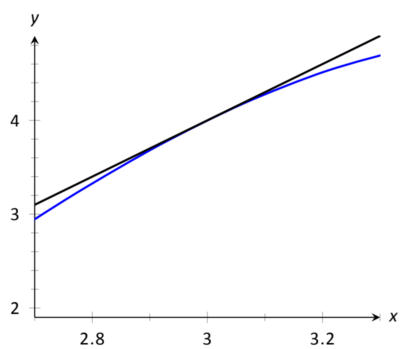


Figure 2.13: Zooming in on f at $x = 3$ for the function given in Examples 2.2.4 and 2.2.5.

Example 2.2.5 Approximation with the derivative

Consider again the graph of $f(x)$ and its derivative $f'(x)$ in Example 2.2.4. Use the tangent line to f at $x = 3$ to approximate the value of $f(3.1)$.

Solution Figure 2.13 shows the graph of f along with its tangent line, zoomed in at $x = 3$. Notice that near $x = 3$, the tangent line makes an excellent approximation of f. Since lines are easy to deal with, often it works well to approximate a function with its tangent line. (This is especially true when you don't actually know much about the function at hand, as we don't in this example.)

While the tangent line to f was drawn in Example 2.2.4, it was not explicitly computed. Recall that the tangent line to f at $x = c$ is $y = f'(c)(x - c) + f(c)$.

Notes:

While f is not explicitly given, by the graph it looks like $f(3) = 4$. Recalling that $f'(3) = 3$, we can compute the tangent line to be approximately $y = 3(x-3)+4$. It is often useful to leave the tangent line in point–slope form.

To use the tangent line to approximate $f(3.1)$, we simply evaluate y at 3.1 instead of f.

$$f(3.1) \approx y(3.1) = 3(3.1-3)+4 = .1*3+4 = 4.3.$$

We approximate $f(3.1) \approx 4.3$.

To demonstrate the accuracy of the tangent line approximation, we now state that in Example 2.2.5, $f(x) = -x^3 + 7x^2 - 12x + 4$. We can evaluate $f(3.1) = 4.279$. Had we known f all along, certainly we could have just made this computation. In reality, we often only know two things:

1. What $f(c)$ is, for some value of c, and
2. what $f'(c)$ is.

For instance, we can easily observe the location of an object and its instantaneous velocity at a particular point in time. We do not have a "function f" for the location, just an observation. This is enough to create an approximating function for f.

This last example has a direct connection to our approximation method explained above after Example 2.2.2. We stated there that

$$f(c+h) \approx f(c) + f'(c) \cdot h.$$

If we know $f(c)$ and $f'(c)$ for some value $x = c$, then computing the tangent line at $(c, f(c))$ is easy: $y(x) = f'(c)(x-c) + f(c)$. In Example 2.2.5, we used the tangent line to approximate a value of f. Let's use the tangent line at $x = c$ to approximate a value of f near $x = c$; i.e., compute $y(c+h)$ to approximate $f(c+h)$, assuming again that h is "small." Note:

$$y(c+h) = f'(c)\big((c+h)-c\big) + f(c) = f'(c) \cdot h + f(c).$$

This is the exact same approximation method used above! Not only does it make intuitive sense, as explained above, it makes analytical sense, as this approximation method is simply using a tangent line to approximate a function's value.

The importance of understanding the derivative cannot be understated. When f is a function of x, $f'(x)$ measures the instantaneous rate of change of f with respect to x and gives the slope of the tangent line to f at x.

Notes:

Exercises 2.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What is the instantaneous rate of change of position called?

2. Given a function $y = f(x)$, in your own words describe how to find the units of $f'(x)$.

3. What functions have a constant rate of change?

Problems

4. Given $f(5) = 10$ and $f'(5) = 2$, approximate $f(6)$.

5. Given $P(100) = -67$ and $P'(100) = 5$, approximate $P(110)$.

6. Given $z(25) = 187$ and $z'(25) = 17$, approximate $z(20)$.

7. Knowing $f(10) = 25$ and $f'(10) = 5$ and the methods described in this section, which approximation is likely to be most accurate: $f(10.1)$, $f(11)$, or $f(20)$? Explain your reasoning.

8. Given $f(7) = 26$ and $f(8) = 22$, approximate $f'(7)$.

9. Given $H(0) = 17$ and $H(2) = 29$, approximate $H'(2)$.

10. Let $V(x)$ measure the volume, in decibels, measured inside a restaurant with x customers. What are the units of $V'(x)$?

11. Let $v(t)$ measure the velocity, in ft/s, of a car moving in a straight line t seconds after starting. What are the units of $v'(t)$?

12. The height H, in feet, of a river is recorded t hours after midnight, April 1. What are the units of $H'(t)$?

13. P is the profit, in thousands of dollars, of producing and selling c cars.

    (a) What are the units of $P'(c)$?

    (b) What is likely true of $P(0)$?

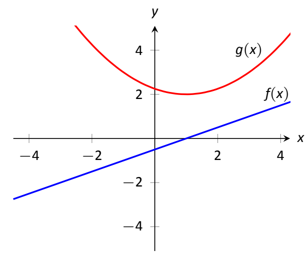
14. T is the temperature in degrees Fahrenheit, h hours after midnight on July 4 in Sidney, NE.

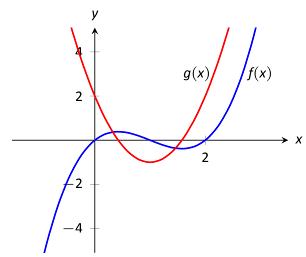
    (a) What are the units of $T'(h)$?

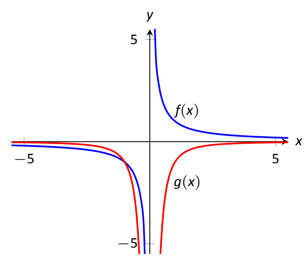
    (b) Is $T'(8)$ likely greater than or less than 0? Why?

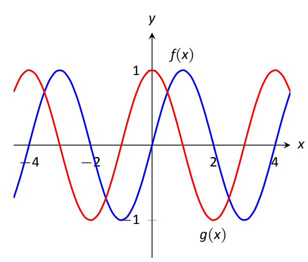
    (c) Is $T(8)$ likely greater than or less than 0? Why?

In Exercises 15 – 18, graphs of functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ are given. Identify which function is the derivative of the other.

15. 

16. 

17. 

18. 

19. If the tangent line to $y = f(x)$ at $(6, 1)$ passes through the point $(2, 4)$, find $f(6)$ and $f'(6)$.

20. Sketch the graph of a function f for which $f(0) = 0$, $f'(0) > 0$, $f'(1) = 0$, and $f'(3) < 0$.

21. Sketch the graph of a function h for which $h(1) = 0$, $h'(1) > 0$, $h'(2) = 0$, and $h'(3) > 0$.

Review

In Exercises 22 – 23, use the definition to compute the derivatives of the following functions.

22. $f(x) = 5x^2$

23. $f(x) = (x-2)^3$

In Exercises 24 – 25, numerically approximate the value of $f'(x)$ at the indicated x value.

24. $f(x) = \cos x$ at $x = \pi$.

25. $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ at $x = 9$.

2.3 Basic Differentiation Rules

The derivative is a powerful tool but is admittedly awkward given its reliance on limits. Fortunately, one thing mathematicians are good at is *abstraction.* For instance, instead of continually finding derivatives at a point, we abstracted and found the derivative function.

Let's practice abstraction on linear functions, $y = mx + b$. What is y'? Without limits, recognize that linear function are characterized by being functions with a constant rate of change (the slope). The derivative, y', gives the instantaneous rate of change; with a linear function, this is constant, m. Thus $y' = m$.

Let's abstract once more. Let's find the derivative of the general quadratic function, $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$. Using the definition of the derivative, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{a(x+h)^2 + b(x+h) + c - (ax^2 + bx + c)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} \frac{ah^2 + 2ahx + bh}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h\to 0} ah + 2ax + b \\ &= 2ax + b. \end{aligned}$$

So if $y = 6x^2 + 11x - 13$, we can immediately compute $y' = 12x + 11$.

In this section (and in some sections to follow) we will learn some of what mathematicians have already discovered about the derivatives of certain functions and how derivatives interact with arithmetic operations. We start with a theorem.

Theorem 14 Derivatives of Common Functions

1. **Constant Rule:** $\frac{d}{dx}\big(c\big) = 0$, where c is a constant.
2. **Power Rule:** $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x^n\big) = nx^{n-1}$, where n is any real number.
3. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\sin x\big) = \cos x$
4. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\cos x\big) = -\sin x$
5. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(e^x\big) = e^x$
6. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\ln x\big) = \frac{1}{x}$

This theorem starts by stating an intuitive fact: constant functions have a rate of change of zero, as they are *constant*. Therefore their derivative is 0. The proof is left as an exercise.

Notes:

The theorem then states some fairly amazing things.

In Part 2, the Power Rule states that the derivatives of functions of the form $y = x^n$ where **n is ANY real number** are very straightforward: multiply by the power, then subtract 1 from the power. This allows us to differentiate Power Functions, Root Functions, and functions with irrational exponents. The work we have done so far only allows us to prove the Power Rule when n is a non-negative integer, which is presented here. We will provide proofs for other values of n as we add the necessary tools to our knowledge of calculus.

Proof of Differentiation Power Rule when n is a non-negative integer
If $n = 0$, then $f(x) = x^0 = 1$ (except when $x = 0$, when the expression is indeterminate). This means that

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1-1}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{0}{h} = 0 = 0x^{0-1}$$

as claimed. Now let $f(x) = x^n$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z}^+$. By the definition of derivative,

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(x+h)^n - x^n}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{(x+h)^n - x^n}{h} \qquad \text{use the Binomial Theorem to expand } (x+h)^n\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\binom{n}{0}x^n + \binom{n}{1}hx^{n-1} + \binom{n}{2}h^2x^{n-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n-1}h^{n-1}x + \binom{n}{n}h^n - x^n}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\binom{n}{1}hx^{n-1} + \binom{n}{2}h^2x^{n-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n-1}h^{n-1}x + \binom{n}{n}h^n}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{h\left[\binom{n}{1}x^{n-1} + \binom{n}{2}hx^{n-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n-1}h^{n-2}x + \binom{n}{n}h^{n-1}\right]}{h}, \text{ divide } h\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\binom{n}{1}x^{n-1} + \binom{n}{2}hx^{n-2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n-1}h^{n-2}x + \binom{n}{n}h^{n-1},\\
&= nx^{n-1} \qquad \text{since } \binom{n}{1} = n
\end{aligned}$$

$\square$

We proved Theorem 14 part 3 in Section 2.1 and part 4 is left as an exercise. In parts 5 and 6 we see something incredible about the functions $y = e^x$ and $y = \ln x$. We will use these rules freely, unfortunately their proofs will have to wait until we know a few more calculus techniques.

Let's practice using this theorem.

Example 2.3.1 Using Theorem 14 to find, and use, derivatives
Let $f(x) = x^3$.

Notes:

1. Find $f'(x)$.
2. Find the equation of the line tangent to the graph of f at $x = -1$.
3. Use the tangent line to approximate $(-1.1)^3$.
4. Sketch f, f' and the found tangent line on the same axis.

Solution

1. The Power Rule states that if $f(x) = x^3$, then $f'(x) = 3x^2$.
2. To find the equation of the line tangent to the graph of f at $x = -1$, we need a point and the slope. The point is $(-1, f(-1)) = (-1, -1)$. The slope is $f'(-1) = 3$. Thus the tangent line has equation $y = 3(x-(-1)) + (-1) = 3x + 2$.
3. We can use the tangent line to approximate $(-1.1)^3$ as -1.1 is close to -1. We have
$$(-1.1)^3 \approx (-1)^3 + 3(-1.1 - (-1)) = -1 + 3(-.1) = -1.3.$$
We can easily find the actual answer; $(-1.1)^3 = -1.331$.
4. See Figure 2.14.

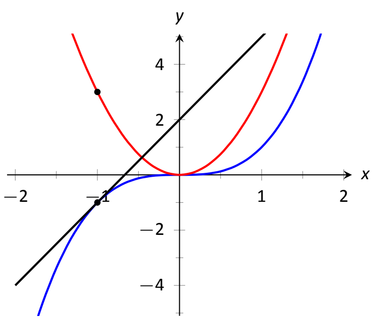


Figure 2.14: A graph of $f(x) = x^3$, along with its derivative $f'(x) = 3x^2$ and its tangent line at $x = -1$.

Theorem 14 gives useful information, but we will need much more. For instance, using the theorem, we can easily find the derivative of $y = x^3$, but it does not tell how to compute the derivative of $y = 2x^3$, $y = x^3 + \sin x$, nor $y = x^3 \sin x$. The following theorem helps with the first two of these examples (the third is answered in the next section).

Theorem 15 Properties of the Derivative

Let f and g be differentiable on an open interval I and let c be a real number. Then:

1. **Sum/Difference Rule:**
$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x) \pm g(x)\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)\Big) \pm \frac{d}{dx}\Big(g(x)\Big) = f'(x) \pm g'(x)$$
2. **Constant Multiple Rule:**
$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(c \cdot f(x)\Big) = c \cdot \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)\Big) = c \cdot f'(x).$$

Notes:

Proof of Sum Rule for Differentiation
Let f and g be differentiable on an open interval I and let c be a real number,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\big(f(x)+g(x)\big) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[f(x+h)+g(x+h)]-[f(x)+g(x)]}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[f(x+h)-f(x)]+[g(x+h)-g(x)]}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{[f(x+h)-f(x)]}{h}+\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}\\
&= f'(x)+g'(x) \qquad \square
\end{aligned}$$

Watch the video:
Derivatives — Basic Examples at
`http://patrickjmt.com/basic-derivative-examples/`

Theorem 15 allows us to find the derivatives of a wide variety of functions. It can be used in conjunction with the Power Rule to find the derivatives of any polynomial. Recall in Example 2.1.4 that we found, using the limit definition, the derivative of $f(x) = 3x^2 + 5x - 7$. We can now find its derivative without expressly using limits:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\Big(3x^2+5x+7\Big) &= 3\frac{d}{dx}\Big(x^2\Big)+5\frac{d}{dx}\Big(x\Big)+\frac{d}{dx}\Big(7\Big)\\
&= 3\cdot 2x+5\cdot 1+0\\
&= 6x+5.
\end{aligned}$$

We were a bit pedantic here, showing every step. Normally we would do all the arithmetic and steps in our head and readily find $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(3x^2+5x+7\Big) = 6x+5$.

Example 2.3.2 Using Theorems 14 and 15 to find derivatives
Use Theorems 14 and 15 to differentiate

1. $g(x) = (x^2+1)^3$
2. $f(x) = \ln\dfrac{\sqrt{x}}{8}$

Notes:

Solution Given the differentiation rules we have thus far, our only option for finding $g'(x)$ is to first multiply $g(x)$ out and then apply the sum and power rules. We see that

$$g(x) = x^6 + 3x^4 + 3x^2 + 1$$

thus,

$$g'(x) = 6x^5 + 12x^3 + 6x.$$

To differentiate $f(x)$ we will first need to use the Laws of Logarithms to expand f as

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= \ln \frac{\sqrt{x}}{8} \\ &= \ln x^{\frac{1}{2}} - \ln 8 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\ln x - \ln 8 \end{aligned}$$

so that,

$$f'(x) = \frac{1}{2} \cdot \frac{1}{x} - 0 = \frac{1}{2}x.$$

Example 2.3.3 Using the tangent line to approximate a function value

Let $f(x) = \sin x + 2x + 1$. Approximate $f(3)$ using an appropriate tangent line.

Solution This problem is intentionally ambiguous; we are to *approximate* using an *appropriate* tangent line. How good of an approximation are we seeking? What does appropriate mean?

In the "real world," people solving problems deal with these issues all time. One must make a judgment using whatever seems reasonable. In this example, the actual answer is $f(3) = \sin 3 + 7$, where the real problem spot is $\sin 3$. What is $\sin 3$?

Since 3 is close to π, we can assume $\sin 3 \approx \sin \pi = 0$. Thus one guess is $f(3) \approx 7$. Can we do better? Let's use a tangent line as instructed and examine the results; it seems best to find the tangent line at $x = \pi$.

Using Theorem 14 we find $f'(x) = \cos x + 2$. The slope of the tangent line is thus $f'(\pi) = \cos \pi + 2 = 1$. Also, $f(\pi) = 2\pi + 1 \approx 7.28$. So the tangent line to the graph of f at $x = \pi$ is $y = 1(x-\pi)+2\pi+1 = x+\pi+1 \approx x+4.14$. Evaluated at $x = 3$, our tangent line gives $y = 3 + 4.14 = 7.14$. Using the tangent line, our final approximation is that $f(3) \approx 7.14$.

Notes:

Using a calculator, we get an answer accurate to 4 places after the decimal: $f(3) = 7.1411$. Our initial guess was 7; our tangent line approximation was more accurate, at 7.14.

The point is *not* "Here's a cool way to do some math without a calculator." Sure, that might be handy sometime, but your phone could probably give you the answer. Rather, the point is to say that tangent lines are a good way of approximating, and many scientists, engineers and mathematicians often face problems too hard to solve directly. So they approximate.

Higher Order Derivatives

The derivative of a function f is itself a function, therefore we can take its derivative. The following definition gives a name to this concept and introduces its notation.

Definition 12 Higher Order Derivatives
Let $y = f(x)$ be a differentiable function on I.

1. The *second derivative* of f is:
$$f''(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f'(x)\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{dy}{dx}\right) = \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = y''.$$
2. The *third derivative* of f is:
$$f'''(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f''(x)\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}\right) = \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = y'''.$$
3. The n^{th} *derivative* of f is:
$$f^{(n)}(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f^{(n-1)}(x)\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{d^{n-1}y}{dx^{n-1}}\right) = \frac{d^ny}{dx^n} = y^{(n)}.$$

Note: Definition 12 comes with the caveat "Where the corresponding limits exist." With f differentiable on I, it is possible that f' is *not* differentiable on all of I, and so on.

In general, when finding the fourth derivative and on, we resort to the $f^{(4)}(x)$ notation, not $f''''(x)$; after a while, too many ticks is too confusing.

Let's practice using this new concept.

Notes:

Example 2.3.4 Finding higher order derivatives

Find the first four derivatives of the following functions:

$$1.\ f(x) = 4x^2 \qquad 2.\ f(x) = \sin x \qquad 3.\ f(x) = 5e^x$$

SOLUTION

1. Using the Power and Constant Multiple Rules, we have: $f'(x) = 8x$. Continuing on, we have

   $$f''(x) = \frac{d}{dx}\big(8x\big) = 8; \qquad f'''(x) = 0; \qquad f^{(4)}(x) = 0.$$

   Notice how all successive derivatives will also be 0.

2. We employ Theorem 14 repeatedly.

   $$f'(x) = \cos x; \quad f''(x) = -\sin x; \quad f'''(x) = -\cos x; \quad f^{(4)}(x) = \sin x.$$

   Note how we have come right back to $f(x)$ again. (Can you quickly figure what $f^{(23)}(x)$ is?)

3. Employing Theorem 14 and the Constant Multiple Rule, we can see that

   $$f'(x) = f''(x) = f'''(x) = f^{(4)}(x) = 5e^x.$$

Interpreting Higher Order Derivatives

What do higher order derivatives *mean*? What is the practical interpretation?

Our first answer is a bit wordy, but is technically correct and beneficial to understand. That is,

> The second derivative of a function f is the rate of change of the rate of change of f.

One way to grasp this concept is to let f describe a position function. Then, as stated in Key Idea 3, f' describes the rate of position change: velocity. We now consider f'', which describes the rate of velocity change. Sports car enthusiasts talk of how fast a car can go from 0 to 60 mph; they are bragging about the *acceleration* of the car.

We started this chapter with amusement–park riders free–falling with position function $f(t) = -16t^2 + 150$. It is easy to compute $f'(t) = -32t$ ft/s and

Notes:

$f''(t) = -32$ (ft/s)/s. We may recognize this latter constant; it is the acceleration due to gravity. In keeping with the unit notation introduced in the previous section, we say the units are "feet per second per second." This is usually shortened to "feet per second squared," written as "ft/s^2."

It can be difficult to consider the meaning of the third, and higher order, derivatives. The third derivative is "the rate of change of the rate of change of the rate of change of *f*." That is essentially meaningless to the uninitiated. In the context of our position/velocity/acceleration example, the third derivative is the "rate of change of acceleration," commonly referred to as "jerk."

Make no mistake: higher order derivatives have great importance even if their practical interpretations are hard (or "impossible") to understand. The mathematical topic of *series* makes extensive use of higher order derivatives.

Notes:

Exercises 2.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What is the name of the rule which states that $\frac{d}{dx}\left(x^n\right) = nx^{n-1}$, where $n > 0$ is an integer?

2. What is $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\ln x\right)$?

3. Give an example of a function $f(x)$ where $f'(x) = f(x)$.

4. Give an example of a function $f(x)$ where $f'(x) = 0$.

5. The derivative rules introduced in this section explain how to compute the derivative of which of the following functions?
   - $f(x) = \frac{3}{x^2}$
   - $g(x) = 3x^2 - x + 17$
   - $h(x) = 5\ln x$
   - $j(x) = \sin x \cos x$
   - $k(x) = e^{x^2}$
   - $m(x) = \sqrt{x}$

6. Explain in your own words how to find the third derivative of a function $f(x)$.

7. Give an example of a function where $f'(x) \neq 0$ and $f''(x) = 0$.

8. Explain in your own words what the second derivative "means."

9. If $f(x)$ describes a position function, then $f'(x)$ describes what kind of function? What kind of function is $f''(x)$?

10. Let $f(x)$ be a function measured in pounds, where x is measured in feet. What are the units of $f''(x)$?

Problems

In Exercises 11 – 28, compute the derivative of the given function.

11. $f(x) = 7x^2 - 5x + 7$

12. $g(x) = 14x^3 + 7x^2 + 11x - 29$

13. $m(t) = 9t^5 - \frac{1}{8}t^3 + 3t - 8$

14. $f(\theta) = 9\sin\theta + 10\cos\theta$

15. $f(r) = 6e^r$

16. $g(t) = 10t^4 - \cos t + 7\sin t$

17. $f(x) = 2\ln x - x$

18. $p(s) = \frac{1}{4}s^4 + \frac{1}{3}s^3 + \frac{1}{2}s^2 + s + 1$

19. $h(t) = e^t - \sin t - \cos t$

20. $f(x) = \ln(5x^2)$

21. $f(t) = \ln(17) + e^2 + \sin\pi/2$

22. $g(t) = (1 + 3t)^2$

23. $g(x) = (2x - 5)^3$

24. $f(x) = (1 - x)^3$

25. $f(x) = (2 - 3x)^2$

26. $h(x) = \dfrac{x^5 - 2x^3 + x^2}{x^2}$

27. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 + 1}{\sqrt{x}}$

28. $g(\theta) = \dfrac{1 - \sin^2\theta}{\cos\theta}$

29. A property of logarithms is that $\log_a x = \dfrac{\log_b x}{\log_b a}$, for all bases $a, b > 0$ and $a, b \neq 1$.

    (a) Rewrite this identity when $b = e$, i.e., using $\log_e x = \ln x$.

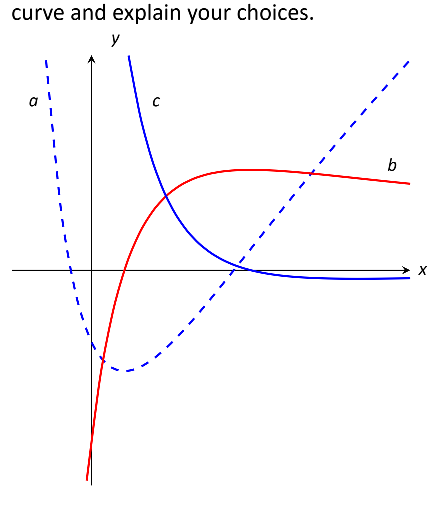
    (b) Use part (a) to find the derivative of $y = \log_a x$.

    (c) Give the derivative of $y = \log_{10} x$.

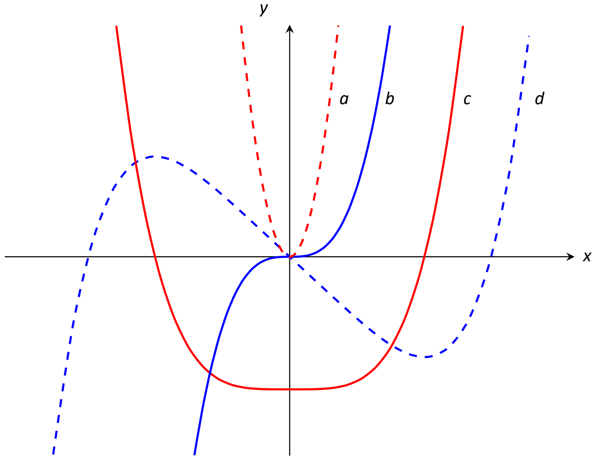
30. Prove the Constant Rule: $\frac{d}{dx}(c) = 0$, where c is constant.

31. Find two values of n so that the function $y = x^n$ satisfies the differential equation $x^2y'' + 2xy' - 6y = 0$.

32. The figure shows the graphs of f, f', and f''. Identify each curve and explain your choices.



33. The figure shows the graphs of f, f', f'' and f'''. Identify each curve and explain your choices.



In Exercises 34 – 39, compute the first four derivatives of the given function.

34. $f(x) = x^6$

35. $g(x) = 2\cos x$

36. $h(t) = t^2 - e^t$

37. $p(\theta) = \theta^4 - \theta^3$

38. $f(\theta) = \sin\theta - \cos\theta$

39. $f(x) = 1,100$

40. The position of a object is described by $s(t) = t^4 - 4t^2$, $t \geq 0$, where s is in feet and t is in seconds. Find

    (a) the velocity and acceleration functions for the object,

    (b) the acceleration after 1.5 seconds, and

    (c) the time(s), in seconds, when the object is at rest.

41. The position of a object is described by $s(t) = 5e^t - 5t$, where s is in inches and t is in seconds. Find

    (a) the velocity and acceleration functions for the object,

    (b) the acceleration after 2 seconds, and

    (c) the acceleration when the object is at rest.

In Exercises 42 – 47, find the equations of the tangent line to the graph of the function at the given point.

42. $f(x) = x^3 - x$ at $x = 1$

43. $f(t) = e^t + 3$ at $t = 0$

44. $g(x) = \ln x$ at $x = 1$

45. $f(x) = 4\sin x$ at $x = \pi/2$

46. $f(x) = -2\cos x$ at $x = \pi/4$

47. $f(x) = 2x + 3$ at $x = 5$

Review

48. Given that $e^0 = 1$, approximate the value of $e^{0.1}$ using the tangent line to $f(x) = e^x$ at $x = 0$.

49. Approximate the value of $(3.01)^4$ using the tangent line to $f(x) = x^4$ at $x = 3$.

2.4 The Product and Quotient Rules

The previous section showed that, in some ways, derivatives behave nicely. The Constant Multiple and Sum/Difference Rules established that the derivative of $f(x) = 5x^2 + \sin x$ was not complicated. We neglected computing the derivative of things like $g(x) = 5x^2 \sin x$ and $h(x) = \frac{5x^2}{\sin x}$ on purpose; their derivatives are *not* as straightforward. (If you had to guess what their respective derivatives are, you would probably guess wrong.) For these, we need the Product and Quotient Rules, respectively, which are defined in this section.

We begin with the Product Rule.

Theorem 16 Product Rule
Let f and g be differentiable functions on an open interval I. Then $f \cdot g$ is a differentiable function on I, and

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)g(x)\Big) = f(x)g'(x) + f'(x)g(x).$$

Important: $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)g(x)\Big) \neq f'(x)g'(x)$. While this answer is simpler than the Product Rule, it is wrong. We can show that this is wrong by considering $f(x) = x^2$ and $g(x) = x^5$.

Using the WRONG rule we get $\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = 2x \cdot 5x^4 = 10x^5$. However, when we simplify the product first and apply the Power Rule, $f \cdot g = x^2 \cdot x^5 = x^7$ and

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = 7x^6 \neq 10x^5.$$

Applying the **real** Product Rule we see that,

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] &= x^2\frac{d}{dx}(x^5) + \frac{d}{dx}(x^2) \cdot x^5\\ &= x^2 \cdot 5x^4 + 2x \cdot x^5\\ &= 7x^6\end{aligned}$$

Watch the video:
The Product Rule for Derivatives at
`https://youtu.be/uPCjqfTOIxg`

Notes:

We practice using this new rule in an example, followed by a proof of the theorem.

Example 2.4.1 Using the Product Rule

Use the Product Rule to compute the derivative of $y = 5x^2 \sin x$. Evaluate the derivative at $x = \pi/2$.

SOLUTION To make our use of the Product Rule explicit, let's set $f(x) = 5x^2$ and $g(x) = \sin x$. We easily compute/recall that $f'(x) = 10x$ and $g'(x) = \cos x$. Employing the rule, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(5x^2 \sin x\Big) = 5x^2 \cos x + 10x \sin x.$$

At $x = \pi/2$, we have

$$y'(\pi/2) = 5\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)^2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 10\frac{\pi}{2}\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 5\pi.$$

We graph y and its tangent line at $x = \pi/2$, which has a slope of 5π, in Figure 2.15. While this does not *prove* that the Product Rule is the correct way to handle derivatives of products, it helps validate its truth.

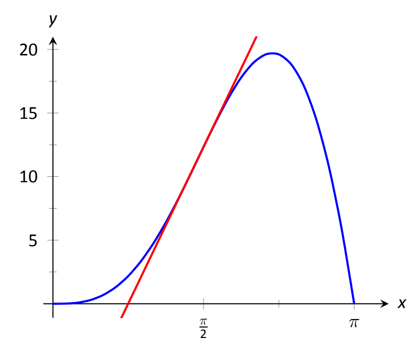


Figure 2.15: A graph of $y = 5x^2 \sin x$ and its tangent line at $x = \pi/2$.

Proof of the Product Rule

By the limit definition, we have

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)g(x)\Big) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(x+h)g(x+h) - f(x)g(x)}{h}.$$

We now do something a bit unexpected; add 0 to the numerator (so that nothing is changed) in the form of $-f(x+h)g(x) + f(x+h)g(x)$, and then do some regrouping as shown.

Notes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(x)g(x)\Big) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x)g(x)}{h} \qquad \text{(now add 0 to the numerator)}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x+h)g(x)+f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\Big(f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x+h)g(x)\Big)+\Big(f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)\Big)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x+h)-f(x+h)g(x)}{h}+\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}f(x+h)\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}+\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}g(x)\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}f(x+h)\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}+\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}\lim_{h\to 0}g(x)\\
&= f(x)g'(x)+f'(x)g(x). \qquad \square
\end{aligned}
$$

It is often true that we can recognize that a theorem is true through its proof yet somehow doubt its applicability to real problems. In the following example, we compute the derivative of a product of functions in two ways to verify that the Product Rule is indeed "right."

Example 2.4.2 Exploring alternate derivative methods

Let $y = (x^2 + 3x + 1)(2x^2 - 3x + 1)$. Find y' two ways: first, by expanding the given product and then taking the derivative, and second, by applying the Product Rule. Verify that both methods give the same answer.

Solution We first expand the expression for y; a little algebra shows that $y = 2x^4 + 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$. It is easy to compute y';

$$y' = 8x^3 + 9x^2 - 12x.$$

Now apply the Product Rule.

$$
\begin{aligned}
y' &= (x^2+3x+1)\cdot\frac{d}{dx}(2x^2-3x+1)+\frac{d}{dx}(x^2+3x+1)\cdot(2x^2-3x+1)\\
&= (x^2+3x+1)(4x-3)+(2x+3)(2x^2-3x+1)\\
&= \big(4x^3+9x^2-5x-3\big)+\big(4x^3-7x+3\big)\\
&= 8x^3+9x^2-12x.
\end{aligned}
$$

The uninformed usually assume that "the derivative of the product is the product of the derivatives." Thus we are tempted to say that $y' = (2x+3)(4x-3) = 8x^2 + 6x - 9$. Obviously this is not correct.

Notes:

Example 2.4.3 Using the Product Rule with a product of three functions

Let $y = x^3 \ln x \cos x$. Find y'.

SOLUTION We have a product of three functions while the Product Rule only specifies how to handle a product of two functions. Our method of handling this problem is to simply group the latter two functions together, and consider $y = x^3\big(\ln x \cos x\big)$. Following the Product Rule, we have

$$y' = (x^3)\big(\ln x \cos x\big)' + 3x^2\big(\ln x \cos x\big)$$

To evaluate $\big(\ln x \cos x\big)'$, we apply the Product Rule again:

$$\begin{aligned} &= (x^3)\left(\ln x(-\sin x) + \frac{1}{x}\cos x\right) + 3x^2\big(\ln x \cos x\big) \\ &= x^3 \ln x(-\sin x) + x^3\frac{1}{x}\cos x + 3x^2 \ln x \cos x \end{aligned}$$

Recognize the pattern in our answer above: when applying the Product Rule to a product of three functions, there are three terms added together in the final derivative. Each term contains only one derivative of one of the original functions, and each function's derivative shows up in only one term. It is straightforward to extend this pattern to finding the derivative of a product of 4 or more functions.

We consider one more example before discussing another derivative rule.

Example 2.4.4 Using the Product Rule

Find the derivatives of the following functions.

1. $f(x) = x \ln x$ 2. $g(x) = x \ln x - x$.

SOLUTION Recalling that the derivative of $\ln x$ is $1/x$, we use the Product Rule to find our answers.

1. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\Big(x \ln x\Big) = x \cdot 1/x + 1 \cdot \ln x = 1 + \ln x.$
2. Using the result from above, we compute

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(x \ln x - x\Big) = 1 + \ln x - 1 = \ln x.$$

Notes:

This seems significant; if the natural log function $\ln x$ is an important function (it is), it seems worthwhile to know a function whose derivative is $\ln x$. We have found one. (We leave it to the reader to find others; a correct answer will be *very* similar to this one.)

We have learned how to compute the derivatives of sums, differences, and products of functions. We now learn how to find the derivative of a quotient of functions.

Theorem 17 Quotient Rule
Let f and g be functions defined on an open interval I, where $g(x) \neq 0$ on I. Then f/g is differentiable on I, and

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right) = \frac{g(x)f'(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}.$$

Proof of the Quotient Rule
Let the functions f and g be defined and $g(x) \neq 0$ on an open interval I. By the definition of derivative,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{\frac{f(x+h)}{g(x+h)} - \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}}{h}\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\left(\frac{f(x+h)}{g(x+h)} - \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right)\cdot\frac{1}{h}\right]\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\left(\frac{f(x+h)g(x) - f(x)g(x+h)}{g(x+h)g(x)}\right)\cdot\frac{1}{h}\right]
\end{aligned}$$

Adding and subtracting the term $f(x)g(x)$ in the numerator does not change

Notes:

the value of the expression and allows us to separate f and g so that

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right) &= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\left(\frac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)+f(x)g(x)-f(x)g(x+h)}{g(x+h)g(x)}\right)\cdot\frac{1}{h}\right]\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[\frac{f(x+h)g(x)-f(x)g(x)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}+\frac{f(x)g(x)-f(x)g(x+h)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}\right]\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\left[g(x)\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}+f(x)\frac{g(x)-g(x+h)}{hg(x+h)g(x)}\right]\\
&= \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x)\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}-f(x)\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}}{g(x+h)g(x)}\\
&= \frac{\lim\limits_{h\to 0}g(x)\cdot\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\frac{f(x+h)-f(x)}{h}-\lim\limits_{h\to 0}f(x)\cdot\lim\limits_{h\to 0}\frac{g(x+h)-g(x)}{h}}{\lim\limits_{h\to 0}g(x+h)\cdot\lim\limits_{h\to 0}g(x)}\\
&= \frac{g(x)f'(x)-f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}
\end{aligned}$$ □

Let's practice using the Quotient Rule.

Example 2.4.5 Using the Quotient Rule

Let $f(x)=\dfrac{5x^2}{\sin x}$. Find $f'(x)$.

Solution Directly applying the Quotient Rule gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{5x^2}{\sin x}\right) &= \frac{\sin x\frac{d}{dx}(5x^2)-5x^2\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x)}{(\sin x)^2}\\
&= \frac{\sin x\cdot 10x-5x^2\cdot\cos x}{\sin^2 x}\\
&= \frac{10x\sin x-5x^2\cos x}{\sin^2 x}.
\end{aligned}$$

The Quotient Rule allows us to fill in holes in our understanding of derivatives of the common trigonometric functions. We start with finding the derivative of the tangent function.

Example 2.4.6 Using the Quotient Rule to find $\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x)$.

Find the derivative of $y=\tan x$.

Notes:

Solution At first, one might feel unequipped to answer this question. But recall that $\tan x = \sin x / \cos x$, so we can apply the Quotient Rule.

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\tan x\Big) &= \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}\right)\\
&= \frac{\cos x\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) - \sin x\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x)}{(\cos x)^2}\\
&= \frac{\cos x\cos x - \sin x(-\sin x)}{\cos^2 x}\\
&= \frac{\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x}{\cos^2 x}\\
&= \frac{1}{\cos^2 x}\\
&= \sec^2 x.
\end{aligned}$$

This is a beautiful result. To confirm its truth, we can find the equation of the tangent line to $y = \tan x$ at $x = \pi/4$. The slope is $\sec^2(\pi/4) = 2$; $y = \tan x$, along with its tangent line, is graphed in Figure 2.16.

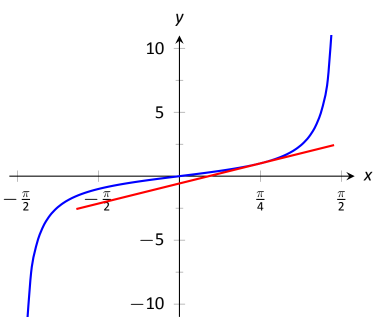


Figure 2.16: A graph of $y = \tan x$ along with its tangent line at $x = \pi/4$.

We include this result in the following theorem about the derivatives of the trigonometric functions. Recall we found the derivative of $y = \sin x$ in Example 2.1.6 and stated the derivative of the cosine function in Theorem 14. The derivatives of the cotangent, cosecant and secant functions can all be computed directly using Theorem 14 and the Quotient Rule.

Theorem 18 Derivatives of Trigonometric Functions

1. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\sin x\Big) = \cos x$
2. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\cos x\Big) = -\sin x$
3. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\tan x\Big) = \sec^2 x$
4. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\cot x\Big) = -\csc^2 x$
5. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\sec x\Big) = \sec x\tan x$
6. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\csc x\Big) = -\csc x\cot x$

The proofs of these derivatives have been presented or left as exercises. To remember the above, it may be helpful to keep in mind that the derivatives of the trigonometric functions that start with “c” have a minus sign in them.

Notes:

Example 2.4.7 Exploring alternate derivative methods

In Example 2.4.5 the derivative of $f(x) = \dfrac{5x^2}{\sin x}$ was found using the Quotient Rule. Rewriting f as $f(x) = 5x^2 \csc x$, find f' using Theorem 18 and verify the two answers are the same.

Solution We found in Example 2.4.5 that $f'(x) = \dfrac{10x\sin x - 5x^2\cos x}{\sin^2 x}$. We now find f' using the Product Rule, considering f as $f(x) = 5x^2 \csc x$.

$$\begin{aligned}
f'(x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\Big(5x^2\csc x\Big) \\
&= 5x^2\frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) - \csc x\frac{d}{dx}(5x^2) \\
&= 5x^2(-\csc x\cot x) + 10x\csc x && \text{(now rewrite trig functions)} \\
&= 5x^2\cdot\frac{-1}{\sin x}\cdot\frac{\cos x}{\sin x} + \frac{10x}{\sin x} \\
&= \frac{-5x^2\cos x}{\sin^2 x} + \frac{10x}{\sin x} && \text{(get common denominator)} \\
&= \frac{10x\sin x - 5x^2\cos x}{\sin^2 x}
\end{aligned}$$

Finding f' using either method returned the same result. At first, the answers looked different, but some algebra verified they are the same. In general, there is not one final form that we seek; the immediate result from the Product Rule is fine. Work to "simplify" your results into a form that is most readable and useful to you.

When we stated the Power Rule in Section 2.3 we claimed that it worked for all $n \in \mathbb{R}$ but only provided the proof for non-negative integers. The next example uses the Quotient Rule to provide justification of the Power Rule for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Example 2.4.8 Using the Quotient Rule to expand the Power Rule

Find the derivatives of the following functions.

1. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$
2. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^n}$, where $n > 0$ is an integer.

Solution We employ the Quotient Rule.

Notes:

1. $f'(x) = \dfrac{x \cdot 0 - 1 \cdot 1}{x^2} = -\dfrac{1}{x^2}.$

2. $f'(x) = \dfrac{x^n \cdot 0 - 1 \cdot nx^{n-1}}{(x^n)^2} = -\dfrac{nx^{n-1}}{x^{2n}} = -\dfrac{n}{x^{n+1}}.$

The derivative of $y = \dfrac{1}{x^n}$ turned out to be rather nice. It gets better. Consider:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x^n}\right) &= \frac{d}{dx}\left(x^{-n}\right) && \text{(apply result from Example 2.4.8)} \\ &= -\frac{n}{x^{n+1}} && \text{(rewrite algebraically)} \\ &= -nx^{-(n+1)} \\ &= -nx^{-n-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, we can officially apply the Power Rule: multiply by the power, then subtract 1 from the power.

Taking the derivative of many functions is relatively straightforward. It is clear (with practice) what rules apply and in what order they should be applied. Other functions present multiple paths; different rules may be applied depending on how the function is treated. One of the beautiful things about calculus is that there is not "the" right way; each path, when applied correctly, leads to the same result, the derivative. We demonstrate this concept in an example.

Example 2.4.9 Exploring alternate derivative methods

Let $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 3x + 1}{x}$. Find $f'(x)$ in each of the following ways:

1. By applying the Quotient Rule,
2. by viewing f as $f(x) = \left(x^2 - 3x + 1\right) \cdot x^{-1}$ and applying the Product and Power Rules, and
3. by "simplifying" first through division.

Verify that all three methods give the same result.

Solution

1. Applying the Quotient Rule gives:

$$f'(x) = \frac{x \cdot \left(2x - 3\right) - \left(x^2 - 3x + 1\right) \cdot 1}{x^2} = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2} = 1 - \frac{1}{x^2}.$$

Notes:

2. By rewriting f, we can apply the Product and Power Rules as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \big(x^2-3x+1\big)\cdot(-1)x^{-2} + \big(2x-3\big)\cdot x^{-1} \\ &= -\frac{x^2-3x+1}{x^2} + \frac{2x-3}{x} \\ &= -\frac{x^2-3x+1}{x^2} + \frac{2x^2-3x}{x^2} \\ &= \frac{x^2-1}{x^2} = 1-\frac{1}{x^2}, \end{aligned}$$

   the same result as above.

3. As $x \neq 0$, we can divide through by x first, giving $f(x) = x - 3 + \dfrac{1}{x}$. Now apply the Power Rule to see

$$f'(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{x^2},$$

   the same result as before.

Example 2.4.9 demonstrates three methods of finding f'. One is hard pressed to argue for a "best method" as all three gave the same result without too much difficulty, although it is clear that using the Product Rule required more steps. Ultimately, the important principle to take away from this is: simplify the answer to a form that seems "simple" and easy to interpret. They are equal; they are all correct. The most appropriate form of f' depends on what we need to do with the function next. For later problems it will be important for us to determine the most appropriate form to use and to move flexibly between the different forms.

In the next section we continue to learn rules that allow us to more easily compute derivatives than using the limit definition directly. We have to memorize the derivatives of a certain set of functions, such as "the derivative of $\sin x$ is $\cos x$." The Sum/Difference, Constant Multiple, Power, Product and Quotient Rules show us how to find the derivatives of certain combinations of these functions. The next section shows how to find the derivatives when we *compose* these functions together.

Notes:

Exercises 2.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: The Product Rule states that $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x^2\sin x\big) = 2x\cos x$.

2. T/F: The Quotient Rule states that $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{x^2}{\sin x}\right) = \frac{2x}{\cos x}$.

3. T/F: The derivatives of the trigonometric functions that start with "c" have minus signs in them.

4. What derivative rule is used to extend the Power Rule to include negative integer exponents?

5. T/F: Regardless of the function, there is always exactly one right way of computing its derivative.

6. In your own words, explain what it means to make your answers "clear."

Problems

In Exercises 7 – 9, use the Quotient Rule to verify these derivatives.

7. $\frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x$

8. $\frac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x\tan x$

9. $\frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x\cot x$

In Exercises 10 – 13:

(a) Use the Product Rule to differentiate the function.

(b) Manipulate the function algebraically and differentiate without the Product Rule.

(c) Show that the answers from (a) and (b) are equivalent.

10. $f(x) = x(x^2+3x)$

11. $g(x) = 2x^2(5x^3)$

12. $h(s) = (2s-1)(s+4)$

13. $f(x) = (x^2+5)(3-x^3)$

In Exercises 14 – 17:

(a) Use the Quotient Rule to differentiate the function.

(b) Manipulate the function algebraically and differentiate without the Quotient Rule.

(c) Show that the answers from (a) and (b) are equivalent.

14. $f(x) = \frac{x^2+3}{x}$

15. $g(x) = \frac{x^3-2x^2}{2x^2}$

16. $h(s) = \frac{3}{4s^3}$

17. $f(t) = \frac{t^2-1}{t+1}$

In Exercises 18 – 42, compute the derivative of the given function.

18. $f(x) = x\sin x$

19. $f(t) = \frac{1}{t^2}(\csc t - 4)$

20. $H(y) = (y^5-2y^3)(7y^2+y-8)$

21. $F(y) = \sqrt[3]{y^2}(y^2+9y)$

22. $g(x) = \frac{x+7}{x-5}$

23. $y = \frac{\sqrt{x}}{x+4}$

24. $g(x) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x}+4}$

25. $g(t) = \frac{t^5}{\cos t - 2t^2}$

26. $h(x) = \cot x - e^x$

27. $h(t) = 7t^2+6t-2$

28. $f(x) = \frac{x^4+2x^3}{x+2}$

29. $f(x) = \frac{x^2-\sqrt{x}}{x^3}$

30. $y = \left(\frac{1}{x^3}+\frac{5}{x^4}\right)(2x^3-x^5)$

31. $g(x) = \frac{1}{1+x+x^2+x^3}$

32. $p(x) = 1+\frac{1}{x}+\frac{1}{x^2}+\frac{1}{x^3}$

33. $f(x) = (16x^3+24x^2+3x)\frac{7x-1}{16x^3+24x^2+3x}$

34. $f(t) = t^5(\sec t + e^t)$

35. $f(x) = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x + 3}$

36. $g(x) = e^2\big(\sin(\pi/4)-1\big)$

37. $g(t) = 4t^3e^t - \sin t \cos t$

38. $f(y) = y(2y^3 - 5y - 1)(6y^2 + 7)$

39. $F(x) = (8x - 1)(x^2 + 4x + 7)(x^3 - 5)$

40. $h(t) = \dfrac{t^2 \sin t + 3}{t^2 \cos t + 2}$

41. $f(x) = x^2e^x \tan x$

42. $g(x) = 2x \sin x \sec x$

In Exercises 43 – 46, find the equations of the tangent line to the graph of g at the indicated point.

43. $g(s) = e^s(s^2 + 2)$ at $(0, 2)$.

44. $g(t) = t \sin t$ at $\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, -\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$

45. $g(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x - 1}$ at $(2, 4)$

46. $g(\theta) = \dfrac{\cos\theta - 8\theta}{\theta + 1}$ at $(0, 1)$

In Exercises 47 – 50, find the x–values where the graph of the function has a horizontal tangent line.

47. $f(x) = 6x^2 - 18x - 24$

48. $f(x) = x \sin x$ on $[-1, 1]$

49. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x + 1}$

50. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x + 1}$

In Exercises 51 – 54, find the requested derivative.

51. $f(x) = x \sin x$; find $f''(x)$.

52. $f(x) = x \sin x$; find $f^{(4)}(x)$.

53. $f(x) = \csc x$; find $f''(x)$.

54. $f(x) = (x^3 - 5x + 2)(x^2 + x - 7)$; find $f^{(8)}(x)$.

In Exercises 55 – 60, f and g are differentiable functions such that $f(2) = 3$, $f'(2) = -1$, $g(2) = -5$, and $g'(2) = 2$. Evaluate the expressions.

55. $(f + g)'(2)$

56. $(f - g)'(2)$

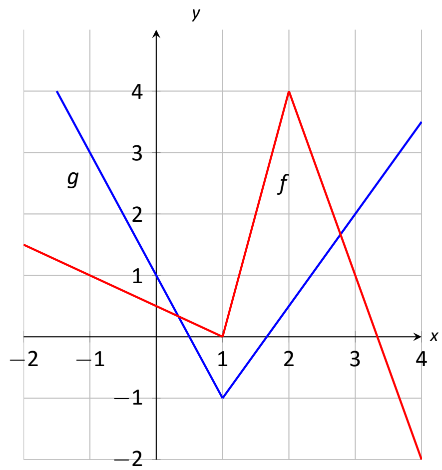
57. $(4f)'(2)$

58. $(f \cdot g)'(2)$

59. $\left(\dfrac{f}{g}\right)'(2)$

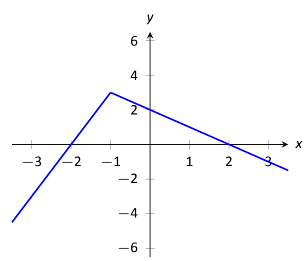
60. $\left(\dfrac{g}{f + g}\right)'(2)$

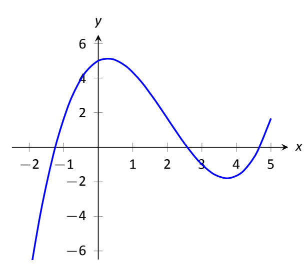
61. If f and g are functions whose graphs are shown, evaluate the expressions.

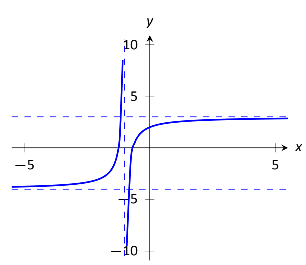


(a) $(fg)'(-1)$ (b) $(f/g)'(-1)$
(c) $(fg)'(3)$ (d) $(g/f)'(3)$

In Exercises 62 – 65, use the graph of $f(x)$ to sketch $f'(x)$.

62. 

63. 

64. 

2.5 The Chain Rule

We have covered almost all of the derivative rules that deal with combinations of two (or more) functions. The operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication (including by a constant) and division led to the Sum and Difference rules, the Constant Multiple Rule, the Power Rule, the Product Rule and the Quotient Rule. To complete the list of differentiation rules, we look at the last way two (or more) functions can be combined: the process of composition (i.e. one function "inside" another).

One example of a composition of functions is $f(x) = \cos(x^2)$. We currently do not know how to compute this derivative. If forced to guess, one would likely guess $f'(x) = -\sin(2x)$, where we recognize $-\sin x$ as the derivative of $\cos x$ and $2x$ as the derivative of x^2. However, this is not the case; $f'(x) \neq -\sin(2x)$. In Example 2.5.4 we'll see the correct answer, which employs the new rule this section introduces, the **Chain Rule**.

Before we define this new rule, recall the notation for composition of functions. We write $(f \circ g)(x)$ or $f(g(x))$, read as "f of g of x," to denote composing f with g. In shorthand, we simply write $f \circ g$ or $f(g)$ and read it as "f of g." Before giving the corresponding differentiation rule, we note that the rule extends to multiple compositions like $f(g(h(x)))$ or $f(g(h(j(x))))$, etc.

To motivate the rule, let's look at three derivatives we can already compute.

Example 2.5.1 Exploring similar derivatives

Find the derivatives of $F_1(x) = (1-x)^2$, $F_2(x) = (1-x)^3$, and $F_3(x) = (1-x)^4$. (We'll see later why we are using subscripts for different functions and an uppercase F.)

Solution In order to use the rules we already have, we must first expand each function as $F_1(x) = 1 - 2x + x^2$, $F_2(x) = 1 - 3x + 3x^2 - x^3$ and $F_3(x) = 1 - 4x + 6x^2 - 4x^3 + x^4$.

It is not hard to see that:

$$\begin{aligned} {F_1}'(x) &= -2 + 2x, \\ {F_2}'(x) &= -3 + 6x - 3x^2 \qquad \text{and} \\ {F_3}'(x) &= -4 + 12x - 12x^2 + 4x^3. \end{aligned}$$

An interesting fact is that these can be rewritten as

$$\begin{aligned} {F_1}'(x) &= -2(1-x), \\ {F_2}'(x) &= -3(1-x)^2 \qquad \text{and} \\ {F_3}'(x) &= -4(1-x)^3. \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

A pattern might jump out at you. Recognize that each of these functions is a composition, letting $g(x) = 1 - x$:

$$F_1(x) = f_1(g(x)), \text{ where } f_1(x) = x^2,$$
$$F_2(x) = f_2(g(x)), \text{ where } f_2(x) = x^3,$$
$$F_3(x) = f_3(g(x)), \text{ where } f_3(x) = x^4.$$

We'll come back to this example after giving the formal statements of the Chain Rule; for now, we are just illustrating a pattern.

Theorem 19 The Chain Rule
Let $y = f(u)$ be a differentiable function of u and let $u = g(x)$ be a differentiable function of x. Then $y = f(g(x))$ is a differentiable function of x, and

$$y' = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x).$$

We can think of this as taking the derivative of the outer function evaluated at the inner function times the derivative of the inner function. To help understand the Chain Rule, we return to Example 2.5.1.

Example 2.5.2 Using the Chain Rule
Use the Chain Rule to find the derivatives of the functions given in Example 2.5.1.

Solution Example 2.5.1 ended with the recognition that each of the given functions was actually a composition of functions. To avoid confusion, we ignore most of the subscripts here.

$F_1(x) = (1-x)^2$:

We found that

$$y = (1-x)^2 = f(g(x)), \text{ where } f(x) = x^2 \text{ and } g(x) = 1 - x.$$

To find y', we apply the Chain Rule. We need $f'(x) = 2x$ and $g'(x) = -1$.

Part of the Chain Rule uses $f'(g(x))$. This means substitute $g(x)$ for x in the equation for $f'(x)$. That is, $f'(x) = 2(1-x)$. Finishing out the Chain Rule we have

$$y' = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) = 2(1-x) \cdot (-1) = -2(1-x) = 2x - 2.$$

$F_2(x) = (1-x)^3$:

Let $y = (1-x)^3 = f(g(x))$, where $f(x) = x^3$ and $g(x) = (1-x)$. We have

Notes:

$f'(x) = 3x^2$, so $f'(g(x)) = 3(1-x)^2$. The Chain Rule then states

$$y' = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) = 3(1-x)^2 \cdot (-1) = -3(1-x)^2.$$

$F_3(x) = (1-x)^4$:
Finally, when $y = (1-x)^4$, we have $f(x) = x^4$ and $g(x) = (1-x)$. Thus $f'(x) = 4x^3$ and $f'(g(x)) = 4(1-x)^3$. Thus

$$y' = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) = 4(1-x)^3 \cdot (-1) = -4(1-x)^3.$$

Example 2.5.2 demonstrated a particular pattern: when $f(x) = x^n$ and $y = f(g(x))$, then $y' = n \cdot (g(x))^{n-1} \cdot g'(x)$. This is called the Generalized Power Rule.

Theorem 20 Generalized Power Rule
Let $g(x)$ be a differentiable function. Then

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(g(x)^n\Big) = n \cdot \big(g(x)\big)^{n-1} \cdot g'(x).$$

This allows us to quickly find the derivative of functions like $y = (3x^2 - 5x + 7 + \sin x)^{20}$. While it may look intimidating, the Generalized Power Rule states that

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= 20(3x^2 - 5x + 7 + \sin x)^{19} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(3x^2 - 5x + 7 + \sin x) \\ &= 20(3x^2 - 5x + 7 + \sin x)^{19} \cdot (6x - 5 + \cos x). \end{aligned}$$

Treat the derivative–taking process step–by–step. In the example just given, first multiply by 20, then rewrite the inside of the parentheses, raising it all to the 19$^{\text{th}}$ power. Then think about the derivative of the expression inside the parentheses, and multiply by that.

Watch the video:
Chain Rule for Finding Derivatives at
`https://youtu.be/6kScLENCXLg`

We now consider more examples that employ the Chain Rule.

Notes:

Example 2.5.3 Using the Chain Rule

Find the derivatives of the following functions:

1. $y = \sin 2x$ 2. $y = \ln(4x^3 - 2x^2)$ 3. $y = e^{-x^2}$

Solution

1. Consider $y = \sin 2x$. Recognize that this is a composition of functions, where $f(x) = \sin x$ and $g(x) = 2x$. Thus

$$y' = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) = \cos(2x) \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(2x) = \cos(2x) \cdot 2 = 2\cos 2x.$$

2. Recognize that $y = \ln(4x^3 - 2x^2)$ is the composition of $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = 4x^3 - 2x^2$. Also, recall that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\ln x\Big) = \frac{1}{x}.$$

This leads us to:

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= \frac{1}{4x^3 - 2x^2} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(4x^3 - 2x^2) \\ &= \frac{1}{4x^3 - 2x^2} \cdot (12x^2 - 4x) \\ &= \frac{12x^2 - 4x}{4x^3 - 2x^2} \\ &= \frac{4x(3x-1)}{2x(2x^2 - x)} \\ &= \frac{2(3x-1)}{2x^2 - x}. \end{aligned}$$

3. Recognize that $y = e^{-x^2}$ is the composition of $f(x) = e^x$ and $g(x) = -x^2$. Remembering that $f'(x) = e^x$, we have

$$y' = e^{x^2} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(x^2) = e^{-x^2} \cdot (-2x) = (-2x)e^{-x^2}.$$

Notes:

Example 2.5.4 Using the Chain Rule to find a tangent line

Let $f(x) = \cos x^2$. Find the equation of the line tangent to the graph of f at $x = 1$.

SOLUTION The tangent line goes through the point $(1, f(1)) \approx (1, 0.54)$ with slope $f'(1)$. To find f', we need the Chain Rule.

$f'(x) = -\sin(x^2) \cdot (2x) = -2x\sin x^2$. Evaluated at $x = 1$, we have $f'(1) = -2\sin 1 \approx -1.68$. Thus the equation of the tangent line is approximately

$$y = -1.68(x - 1) + 0.54.$$

The tangent line is sketched along with f in Figure 2.17.

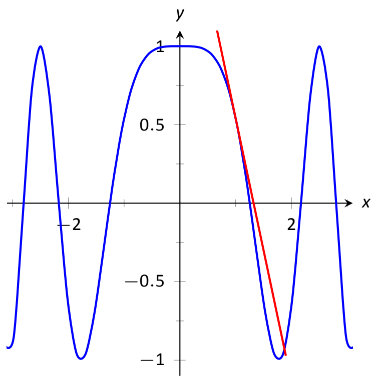


Figure 2.17: $f(x) = \cos x^2$ sketched along with its tangent line at $x = 1$.

The Chain Rule is used often in taking derivatives. Because of this, one can become familiar with the basic process and learn patterns that facilitate finding derivatives quickly. For instance,

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\ln(\text{anything})\Big) = \frac{1}{\text{anything}} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(\text{anything}) = \frac{\frac{d}{dx}(\text{anything})}{\text{anything}}.$$

A concrete example of this is

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\ln(3x^{15} - \cos x + e^x)\Big) = \frac{45x^{14} + \sin x + e^x}{3x^{15} - \cos x + e^x}.$$

While the derivative may look intimidating at first, look for the pattern. The denominator is the same as what was inside the natural log function; the numerator is simply its derivative.

This pattern recognition process can be applied to lots of functions. In general, instead of writing "anything", we use u as a generic function of x. We then say

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\ln u\Big) = \frac{u'}{u}.$$

The following is a short list of how the Chain Rule can be quickly applied to familiar functions.

1. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(u^n\Big) = n \cdot u^{n-1} \cdot u'.$
2. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(e^u\Big) = u' \cdot e^u.$
3. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\sin u\Big) = u' \cdot \cos u.$
4. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\cos u\Big) = -u' \cdot \sin u.$
5. $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\tan u\Big) = u' \cdot \sec^2 u.$

Of course, the Chain Rule can be applied in conjunction with any of the other rules we have already learned. We practice this next.

Notes:

Example 2.5.5 Using the Product, Quotient and Chain Rules

Find the derivatives of the following functions.

1. $f(x) = x^5 \sin 2x^3$
2. $f(x) = \dfrac{5x^3}{e^{-x^2}}$.

Solution

1. We must use the Product and Chain Rules. Do not think that you must be able to "see" the whole answer immediately; rather, just proceed step–by–step.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= x^5 \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(\sin 2x^3) + \frac{d}{dx}(x^5) \cdot \sin 2x^3 \\ &= x^5 \cdot [\cos 2x^3 \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(2x^3)] + 5x^4 \cdot \sin 2x^3 \\ &= x^5\big(6x^2 \cos 2x^3\big) + 5x^4\big(\sin 2x^3\big) \\ &= 6x^7 \cos 2x^3 + 5x^4 \sin 2x^3. \end{aligned}$$

2. We must employ the Quotient Rule along with the Chain Rule. Again, proceed step–by–step.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \frac{e^{-x^2} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(5x^3) - 5x^3 \frac{d}{dx}e^{-x^2}}{(e^{-x^2})^2} \\ &= \frac{e^{-x^2} \cdot 15x^2 - 5x^3 \cdot e^{-x^2} \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(-x^2)}{(e^{-x^2})^2} \\ &= \frac{e^{-x^2}\big(15x^2\big) - 5x^3\big((-2x)e^{-x^2}\big)}{\big(e^{-x^2}\big)^2} \\ &= \frac{e^{-x^2}\big(10x^4 + 15x^2\big)}{e^{-2x^2}} \\ &= e^{x^2}\big(10x^4 + 15x^2\big). \end{aligned}$$

A key to correctly working these problems is to break the problem down into smaller, more manageable pieces. For instance, when using the Product and Chain Rules together, just consider the first part of the Product Rule at first: $f(x)g'(x)$. Just rewrite $f(x)$, then find $g'(x)$. Then move on to the $f'(x)g(x)$ part. Don't attempt to figure out both parts at once.

Notes:

Likewise, using the Quotient Rule, approach the numerator in two steps and handle the denominator after completing that. Only simplify afterward.

We can also employ the Chain Rule itself several times, as shown in the next example.

Example 2.5.6 Using the Chain Rule multiple times

Find the derivative of $y = \tan^5(6x^3 - 7x)$.

Solution Recognize that we have the function $g(x) = \tan(6x^3 - 7x)$ "inside" the function $f(x) = x^5$; that is, we have $y = \big(\tan(6x^3 - 7x)\big)^5$. We use the Chain Rule multiple times, beginning with the Generalized Power Rule:

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= 5\left(\tan(6x^3 - 7x)\right)^4 \cdot \frac{d}{dx}\tan(6x^3 - 7x) \\ &= 5\tan^4(6x^3 - 7x) \cdot \sec^2(6x^3 - 7x) \cdot \frac{d}{dx}(6x^3 - 7x) \\ &= 5\tan^4(6x^3 - 7x) \cdot \sec^2(6x^3 - 7x) \cdot (18x^2 - 7) \\ &= 5(18x^2 - 7)\tan^4(6x^3 - 7x)\sec^2(6x^3 - 7x) \end{aligned}$$

This function is frankly a ridiculous function, possessing no real practical value. It is very difficult to graph, as the tangent function has many vertical asymptotes and $6x^3 - 7x$ grows so very fast. The important thing to learn from this is that the derivative can be found. In fact, it is not "hard;" one must take several small steps and be careful to keep track of how to apply each of these steps.

It is a traditional mathematical exercise to find the derivatives of arbitrarily complicated functions just to demonstrate that it *can be done*. Just break everything down into smaller pieces.

Example 2.5.7 Using the Product, Quotient and Chain Rules

Find the derivative of $f(x) = \dfrac{x\cos(x^{-2}) - \sin^2(e^{4x})}{\ln x^2}$.

Solution This function likely has no practical use outside of demonstrating derivative skills. The answer is given below without simplification. It employs the Quotient Rule, the Product Rule, and the Chain Rule three times.

$f'(x) =$

$$\frac{(\ln x^2)[-x(\sin x^{-2})(-2x^{-3}) + 1\cdot(\cos(x^{-2})) - 2\sin e^{4x}\cos e^{4x}\cdot(4e^{4x})] - \frac{1}{x^2}(2x)\cdot[x\cos(x^{-2}) - \sin^2(e^{4x})]}{(\ln x^2)^2}.$$

The reader is highly encouraged to look at each term and recognize why it is there. This example demonstrates that derivatives can be computed systematically, no matter how arbitrarily complicated the function is.

Notes:

Alternate Chain Rule Notation

It is instructive to understand what the Chain Rule "looks like" using "$\frac{dy}{dx}$" notation instead of y' notation. Suppose that $y = f(u)$ is a function of u, where $u = g(x)$ is a function of x, as stated in Theorem 19. Then, through the composition $f \circ g$, we can think of y as a function of x, as $y = f(g(x))$. Thus the derivative of y with respect to x makes sense; we can talk about $\frac{dy}{dx}$. This leads to an interesting progression of notation:

$$\begin{aligned}
y' &= f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) & \\
\frac{dy}{dx} &= y'(u) \cdot u'(x) & \text{(since } y = f(u) \text{ and } u = g(x)\text{)} \\
\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} & \text{(using "fractional" notation for the derivative)}
\end{aligned}$$

Here the "fractional" aspect of the derivative notation stands out. On the right hand side, it seems as though the "du" terms divide out, leaving

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{dx}.$$

It is important to realize that we *are not* dividing these terms; the derivative notation of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is one symbol. It is equally important to realize that this notation was chosen precisely because of this behavior. It makes applying the Chain Rule easy with multiple variables. For instance,

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{dy}{d\square} \cdot \frac{d\square}{d\triangle} \cdot \frac{d\triangle}{dt}.$$

where $\square$ and $\triangle$ are any variables you'd like to use.

One of the most common ways of "visualizing" the Chain Rule is to consider a set of gears, as shown in Figure 2.18. The gears have 36, 18, and 6 teeth, respectively. That means for every revolution of the x gear, the u gear revolves twice. That is, the rate at which the u gear makes a revolution is twice as fast as the rate at which the x gear makes a revolution. Using the terminology of calculus, the rate of u-change, with respect to x, is $\frac{du}{dx} = 2$.

Likewise, every revolution of u causes 3 revolutions of y: $\frac{dy}{du} = 3$. How does y change with respect to x? For each revolution of x, y revolves 6 times; that is,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} = 2 \cdot 3 = 6.$$

We can then extend the Chain Rule with more variables by adding more gears to the picture.

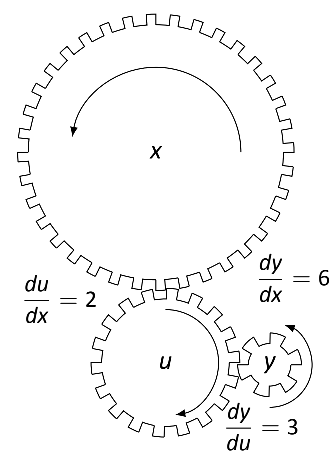


Figure 2.18: A series of gears to demonstrate the Chain Rule. Note how $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$

Notes:

It is difficult to overstate the importance of the Chain Rule. So often the functions that we deal with are compositions of two or more functions, requiring us to use this rule to compute derivatives. It is often used in practice when actual functions are unknown. Rather, through measurement, we can calculate $\frac{dy}{du}$ and $\frac{du}{dx}$. With our knowledge of the Chain Rule, finding $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is straightforward.

In the next section, we use the Chain Rule to justify another differentiation technique. There are many curves that we can draw in the plane that fail the "vertical line test." For instance, consider $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, which describes the unit circle. We may still be interested in finding slopes of tangent lines to the circle at various points. The next section shows how we can find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ without first "solving for y." While we can in this instance, in many other instances solving for y is impossible. In these situations, *implicit differentiation* is indispensable.

Notes:

Exercises 2.5 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: The Chain Rule describes how to evaluate the derivative of a composition of functions.

2. T/F: The Generalized Power Rule states that $\frac{d}{dx}\Big(g(x)^n\Big) = n\big(g(x)\big)^{n-1}$.

3. T/F: $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\ln(x^2)\big) = \frac{1}{x^2}$.

4. T/F: $\frac{d}{dx}\big(3^x\big) \approx 1.1 \cdot 3^x$.

5. T/F: $\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{dx}{dt} \cdot \frac{dt}{dy}$

6. T/F: Taking the derivative of $f(x) = x^2 \sin(5x)$ requires the use of both the Product and Chain Rules.

Problems

In Exercises 7 – 39, compute the derivative of the given function.

7. $f(x) = (4x^3 - x)^{10}$

8. $f(t) = (3t - 2)^5$

9. $g(\theta) = (\sin\theta + \cos\theta)^3$

10. $h(t) = e^{3t^2+t-1}$

11. $f(x) = \left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^4$

12. $p(x) = \left(x^2 - \dfrac{1}{x^2}\right)^6$

13. $f(x) = \cos(3x)$

14. $g(x) = \tan(5x)$

15. $h(t) = \sin^4(2t)$

16. $p(t) = \cos^3(t^2 + 3t + 1)$

17. $g(x) = \tan^2 x - \tan(x^2)$

18. $w(x) = \sec(e^{x^3})$

19. $f(x) = \ln(\cos x)$

20. $f(x) = \ln(x^2)$

21. $f(x) = 2\ln(x)$

22. $g(t) = 15^2$

23. $r(x) = \dfrac{\sqrt{4x-3}}{x^2}$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{(3x^2-5)^4}{(2x^3-1)^2}$

25. $h(x) = [(2x+1)^{10} + 1]^{10}$

26. $f(t) = \left[\left(1 + \dfrac{1}{t}\right)^{-1} + 1\right]^{-1}$

27. $F(x) = 2x(2x+1)^2(2x+3)^3$

28. $f(x) = x^2 \sin(5x)$

29. $g(t) = \cos(t^2 + 3t)\sin(5t - 7)$

30. $g(t) = \cos(\frac{1}{t})e^{5t^2}$

31. $a(t) = 7t^3 e^{\tan t^2}$

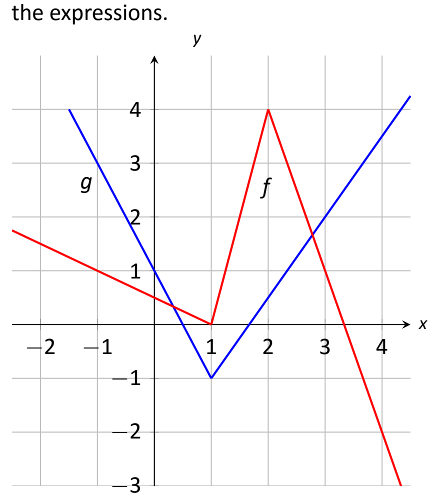
32. $y = \sqrt{\sin(\cos^2 x)}$

33. $k(x) = \cos(x \sin x^3)$

34. If $k(x) = f(g(x))$ with $f(2) = -4$, $g(2) = 2$, $f'(2) = 3$, and $g'(2) = 5$. Find $k'(2)$.

35. Suppose $r(x) = f(g(h(x)))$, where $h(1) = 2$, $g(2) = 3$, $h'(1) = 3$, $g'(2) = 5$, and $f'(3) = 6$. Find $r'(1)$.

36. If f and g are functions whose graphs are shown, evaluate the expressions.



(a) $(f \circ g)'(-1)$ (b) $(g \circ f)'(0)$
(c) $(g \circ g)'(-1)$ (d) $(f \circ f)'(4)$

37.

x	$f(x)$	$f'(x)$	$g(x)$	$g'(x)$
1	4	5	4	5
4	0	7	1	$\frac{1}{2}$
6	6	4	6	3

Use the given table of values for f, g, f', and g' to find

(a) $(f \circ g)'(6)$

(b) $(g \circ f)'(1)$

(c) $(g \circ g)'(6)$

(d) $(f \circ f)'(1)$

In Exercises 38 – 41, find the equations of tangent and normal lines to the graph of the function at the given point. Note: the functions here are the same as in Exercises 7 through 10.

38. $f(x) = (4x^3 - x)^{10}$ at $x = 0$

39. $f(t) = (3t - 2)^5$ at $t = 1$

40. $g(\theta) = (\sin\theta + \cos\theta)^3$ at $\theta = \pi/2$

41. $h(t) = e^{3t^2+t-1}$ at $t = -1$

42. Compute $\dfrac{d}{dx}\big(\ln(kx)\big)$ two ways:

(a) Using the Chain Rule, and

(b) by first using the logarithm rule $\ln(ab) = \ln a + \ln b$, then taking the derivative.

43. Compute $\dfrac{d}{dx}\big(\ln(x^k)\big)$ two ways:

(a) Using the Chain Rule, and

(b) by first using the logarithm rule $\ln(a^p) = p\ln a$, then taking the derivative.

44. Use the Chain Rule to prove the following:

(a) The derivative of an even function is an odd function.

(b) The derivative of an odd function is an even function.

45. Use the Chain Rule and Product Rule to give an alternative proof of the Quotient Rule. (Hint: write $f(x)/g(x)$ as $f(x) \cdot [g(x)]^{-1}$).

46. Use the Chain Rule to express the second derivative of $f(g(x))$ in terms of first and second derivatives of f and g.

Review

47. The "wind chill factor" is a measurement of how cold it "feels" during cold, windy weather. Let $W(w)$ be the wind chill factor, in degrees Fahrenheit, when it is 25°F outside with a wind of w mph.

(a) What are the units of $W'(w)$?

(b) What would you expect the sign of $W'(10)$ to be?

48. Find the derivatives of $f(x) = x^2e^x\cot x$

2.6 Implicit Differentiation

In the previous sections we learned to find the derivative, $\frac{dy}{dx}$, or y', when y is given *explicitly* as a function of x. That is, if we know $y = f(x)$ for some function f, we can find y'. For example, given $y = 3x^2 - 7$, we can easily find $y' = 6x$. (Here we explicitly state how x and y are related. Knowing x, we can directly find y.)

Sometimes the relationship between y and x is not explicit; rather, it is *implicit*. For instance, we might know that $x^2 - y = 4$. This equality defines a relationship between x and y; if we know x, we could figure out y. Can we still find y'? In this case, sure; we solve for y to get $y = x^2 - 4$ (hence we now know y explicitly) and then differentiate to get $y' = 2x$.

Sometimes the *implicit* relationship between x and y is complicated. Suppose we are given $\sin(y) + y^3 = 6 - x^3$. A graph of this equation is given in Figure 2.19. In this case there is absolutely no way to solve for y in terms of elementary functions. The surprising thing is, however, that we can still find y' via a process known as **implicit differentiation**.

Implicit differentiation is a technique based on the Chain Rule that is used to find a derivative when the relationship between the variables is given implicitly rather than explicitly (solved for one variable in terms of the other).

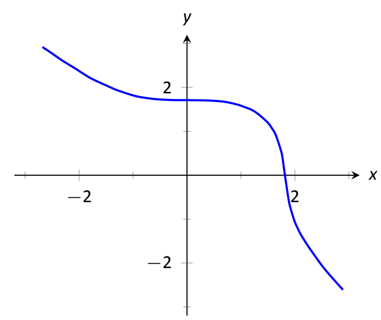


Figure 2.19: A graph of the equation $\sin(y) + y^3 = 6 - x^3$.

We begin by reviewing the Chain Rule. Let f and g be functions of x. Then

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(g(x))\Big) = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x).$$

Suppose now that $y = g(x)$. We can rewrite the above as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(y)\Big) = f'(y) \cdot y', \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{d}{dx}\Big(f(y)\Big) = f'(y) \cdot \frac{dy}{dx}. \tag{2.1}$$

These equations look strange; the key concept to learn here is that we can find y' even if we don't exactly know how y and x relate.

Watch the video:
Showing explicit and implicit differentiation give same result at
`https://youtu.be/2CsQ_l1S2_Y`

We demonstrate this process in the following example.

Notes:

Example 2.6.1 Using Implicit Differentiation

Find y' given that $\sin(y) + y^3 = 6 - x^3$.

Solution We start by taking the derivative of both sides (thus maintaining the equality). We have:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\sin(y) + y^3\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big(6 - x^3\Big).$$

The right hand side is easy; it returns $-3x^2$.

The left hand side requires more consideration. We take the derivative term–by–term. Using the technique derived from Equation 2.1 above, we can see that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(\sin y\Big) = \cos y \cdot y'.$$

We apply the same process to the y^3 term.

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(y^3\Big) = \frac{d}{dx}\Big((y)^3\Big) = 3(y)^2 \cdot y'.$$

Putting this together with the right hand side, we have

$$\cos(y)y' + 3y^2y' = -3x^2.$$

Now solve for y'.

$$\begin{aligned} \cos(y)y' + 3y^2y' &= -3x^2. \\ \big(\cos y + 3y^2\big)y' &= -3x^2 \\ y' &= \frac{-3x^2}{\cos y + 3y^2} \end{aligned}$$

This equation for y' probably seems unusual for it contains both x and y terms. How is it to be used? We'll address that next.

Implicit functions are generally harder to deal with than explicit functions. With an explicit function, given an x value, we have an explicit formula for computing the corresponding y value. With an implicit function, one often has to find x and y values *at the same time* that satisfy the equation. It is much easier to demonstrate that a given point satisfies the equation than to actually find such a point.

For instance, we can affirm easily that the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$ lies on the graph of the equation $\sin y + y^3 = 6 - x^3$. Plugging in 0 for y, we see the left hand side is 0. Setting $x = \sqrt[3]{6}$, we see the right hand side is also 0; the equation is satisfied. The following example finds an equation of the tangent line to this equation at this point.

Notes:

Example 2.6.2 Using Implicit Differentiation to find a tangent line
Find the equation of the line tangent to the implicitly defined curve $\sin y + y^3 = 6 - x^3$ at the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$.

SOLUTION In Example 2.6.1 we found that

$$y' = \frac{-3x^2}{\cos y + 3y^2}.$$

We find the slope of the tangent line at the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$ by substituting $\sqrt[3]{6}$ for x and 0 for y. Thus at the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$, we have the slope as

$$y' = \frac{-3(\sqrt[3]{6})^2}{\cos 0 + 3 \cdot 0^2} = \frac{-3\sqrt[3]{36}}{1} \approx -9.91.$$

Therefore an equation of the tangent line to the implicitly defined curve $\sin y + y^3 = 6 - x^3$ at the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$ is

$$y = -3\sqrt[3]{36}(x - \sqrt[3]{6}) + 0 \approx -9.91x + 18.$$

The curve and this tangent line are shown in Figure 2.20.

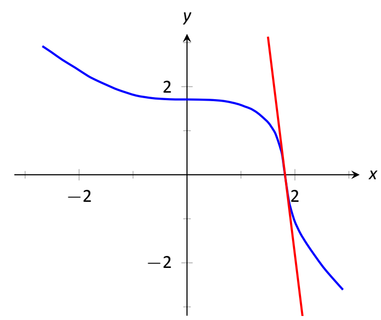


Figure 2.20: The equation $\sin y + y^3 = 6 - x^3$ and its tangent line at the point $(\sqrt[3]{6}, 0)$.

This suggests a general method for implicit differentiation. For the steps below assume y is a function of x.

1. Take the derivative of each term in the equation. Treat the x terms like normal. When taking the derivatives of y terms, the usual rules apply except that, because of the Chain Rule, we need to multiply each term by y'.

2. Get all the y' terms on one side of the equal sign and put the remaining terms on the other side.

3. Factor out y'; solve for y' by dividing.

Practical Note: When working by hand, it may be beneficial to use the symbol $\frac{dy}{dx}$ instead of y', as the latter can be easily confused for y or y^1.

Example 2.6.3 Using Implicit Differentiation
Given the implicitly defined function $y^3 + x^2y^4 = 1 + 2x$, find y'.

SOLUTION We will take the implicit derivatives term by term. Using the Chain Rule the derivative of y^3 is $3y^2y'$.

Notes:

The second term, x^2y^4 is a little more work. It requires the Product Rule as it is the product of two functions of x: x^2 and y^4. We see that $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x^2y^4\big)$ is

$$x^2 \cdot \frac{d}{dx}\big(y^4\big) + \frac{d}{dx}\big(x^2\big) \cdot y^4$$
$$x^2 \cdot \big(4y^3y'\big) + 2x \cdot y^4$$

The first part of this expression requires a y' because we are taking the derivative of a y term. The second part does not require it because we are taking the derivative of x^2.

The derivative of the right hand side of the equation is found to be 2. In all, we get:

$$3y^2y' + 4x^2y^3y' + 2xy^4 = 2.$$

Move terms around so that the left side consists only of the y' terms and the right side consists of all the other terms:

$$3y^2y' + 4x^2y^3y' = 2 - 2xy^4.$$

Factor out y' from the left side and solve to get

$$y' = \frac{2 - 2xy^4}{3y^2 + 4x^2y^3}.$$

To confirm the validity of our work, let's find the equation of a tangent line to this curve at a point. It is easy to confirm that the point $(0, 1)$ lies on the graph of this curve. At this point, $y' = 2/3$. So the equation of the tangent line is $y = 2/3(x - 0) + 1$. The equation and its tangent line are graphed in Figure 2.21.

Notice how our curve looks much different than other functions we have worked with up to this point. Such curves are important in many areas of mathematics, so developing tools to deal with them is also important.

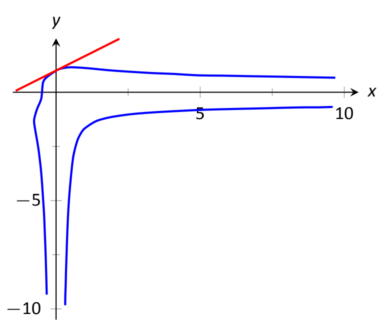


Figure 2.21: A graph of the equation $y^3 + x^2y^4 = 1 + 2x$ along with its tangent line at the point $(0, 1)$.

Example 2.6.4 Using Implicit Differentiation

Given the implicitly defined curve $\sin(x^2y^2) + y^3 = x + y$, find y'.

Solution Differentiating term by term, we find the most difficulty in

Notes:

the first term. It requires both the Chain and Product Rules.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\sin(x^2y^2)\right) &= \cos(x^2y^2)\cdot\frac{d}{dx}(x^2y^2)\\ &= \cos(x^2y^2)\cdot\left(x^2\frac{d}{dx}(y^2)+\frac{d}{dx}(x^2)\cdot y^2\right)\\ &= \cos(x^2y^2)\cdot(x^2\cdot 2yy'+2y^2)\\ &= 2(x^2yy'+y^2)\cos(x^2y^2).\end{aligned}$$

We leave the derivatives of the other terms to the reader. After taking the derivatives of both sides, we have

$$2(x^2yy'+xy^2)\cos(x^2y^2)+3y^2y'=1+y'.$$

We now have to be careful to properly solve for y', particularly because of the product on the left. It is best to multiply out the product. Doing this, we get

$$2x^2y\cos(x^2y^2)y'+2xy^2\cos(x^2y^2)+3y^2y'=1+y'.$$

From here we can safely move around terms to get the following:

$$2x^2y\cos(x^2y^2)y'+3y^2y'-y'=1-2xy^2\cos(x^2y^2).$$

Then we can solve for y' to get

$$y'=\frac{1-2xy^2\cos(x^2y^2)}{2x^2y\cos(x^2y^2)+3y^2-1}.$$

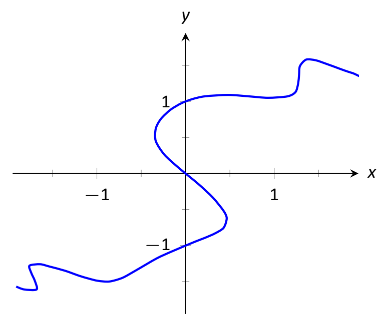
A graph of this implicit equation is given in Figure 2.22(a). It is easy to verify that the points $(0,0)$, $(0,1)$ and $(0,-1)$ all lie on the graph. We can find the slopes of the tangent lines at each of these points using our formula for y'.

At $(0,0)$, the slope is -1.

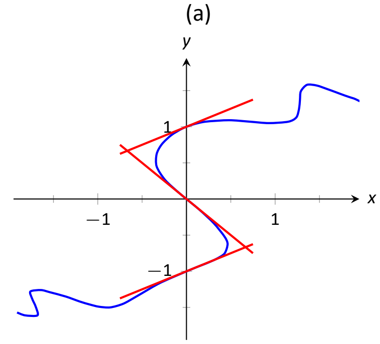
At $(0,1)$, the slope is $1/2$.

At $(0,-1)$, the slope is also $1/2$.

The tangent lines have been added to the graph of the function in Figure 2.22(b).



(a)



(b)

Figure 2.22: A graph of the equation $\sin(x^2y^2)+y^3=x+y$ and certain tangent lines.

Quite a few "famous" curves have equations that are given implicitly. We can use implicit differentiation to find the slope at various points on those curves. We investigate two such curves in the next examples.

Notes:

Example 2.6.5 Finding slopes of tangent lines to a circle

Find the slope of the tangent line to the circle $x^2+y^2=1$ at the point $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$.

SOLUTION Taking derivatives, we get $2x+2yy'=0$. Solving for y' gives:

$$y' = \frac{-x}{y}.$$

This is a clever formula. Recall that the slope of the line through the origin and the point (x, y) on the circle will be y/x. We have found that the slope of the tangent line to the circle at that point is the opposite reciprocal of y/x, namely, $-x/y$. Hence these two lines are always perpendicular.

At the point $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$, we have the tangent line's slope as

$$y' = \frac{-1/2}{\sqrt{3}/2} = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{3}} \approx -0.577.$$

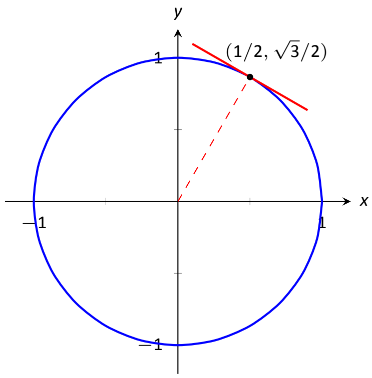


Figure 2.23: The unit circle with its tangent line at $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$.

A graph of the circle and its tangent line at $(1/2, \sqrt{3}/2)$ is given in Figure 2.23, along with a thin dashed line from the origin that is perpendicular to the tangent line. (It turns out that all normal lines to a circle pass through the center of the circle.)

This section has shown how to find the derivatives of implicitly defined functions, whose graphs include a wide variety of interesting and unusual shapes. Implicit differentiation can also be used to further our understanding of "regular" differentiation.

Implicit Differentiation and the Second Derivative

We can use implicit differentiation to find higher order derivatives. In theory, this is simple: first find $\frac{dy}{dx}$, then take its derivative with respect to x. In practice, it is not hard, but it often requires a bit of algebra. We demonstrate this in an example.

Example 2.6.6 Finding the second derivative

Given $x^2+y^2=1$, find $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2} = y''$.

SOLUTION We found that $y' = \frac{dy}{dx} = -x/y$ in Example 2.6.5. To find y'',

Notes:

we apply implicit differentiation to y'.

$$\begin{aligned}
y'' &= \frac{d}{dx}\big(y'\big) \\
&= \frac{d}{dx}\left(-\frac{x}{y}\right) && \text{now use the Quotient Rule} \\
&= -\frac{y(1) - x(y')}{y^2} && \text{replace } y' \text{ with } -x/y \\
&= -\frac{y - x(-x/y)}{y^2} \\
&= -\frac{y^2 + x^2}{y^3}, && \text{since we were given } x^2 + y^2 = 1 \\
&= -\frac{1}{y^3}.
\end{aligned}$$

We can see that $y'' > 0$ when $y < 0$ and $y'' < 0$ when $y > 0$. In Section 3.4, we will see how this relates to the shape of the graph.

Implicit differentiation proves to be useful as it allows us to find the instantaneous rates of change of a variety of functions.

In this chapter we have defined the derivative, given rules to facilitate its computation, and given the derivatives of a number of standard functions. We restate the most important of these in the following theorem, intended to be a reference for further work.

Theorem 21 Glossary of Derivatives of Elementary Functions
Let u and v be differentiable functions, and let c and n be real numbers, $n \neq 0$.

1. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(cu\big) = cu'$
2. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(u \pm v\big) = u' \pm v'$
3. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(u \cdot v\big) = uv' + u'v$
4. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\frac{u}{v}\big) = \frac{u'v - uv'}{v^2}$
5. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(u(v)\big) = u'(v)v'$
6. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(e^x\big) = e^x$
7. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(c\big) = 0$
8. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x^n\big) = nx^{n-1}$
9. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\sin x\big) = \cos x$
10. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\cos x\big) = -\sin x$
11. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\tan x\big) = \sec^2 x$
12. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\cot x\big) = -\csc^2 x$
13. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\sec x\big) = \sec x \tan x$
14. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\csc x\big) = -\csc x \cot x$

Notes:

Exercises 2.6 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. In your own words, explain the difference between implicit functions and explicit functions.

2. Implicit differentiation is based on what other differentiation rule?

3. T/F: Implicit differentiation can be used to find the derivative of $y = \sqrt{x}$.

4. T/F: Implicit differentiation can be used to find the derivative of $y = x^{3/4}$.

Problems

In Exercises 5 – 20, find $\frac{dy}{dx}$ using implicit differentiation.

5. $x^4 + y^2 + y = 7$

6. $x^{2/5} + y^{2/5} = 1$

7. $\cos(x) + \sin(y) = 1$

8. $\frac{x}{y} = 10$

9. $\frac{y}{x} = 10$

10. $x^2 \tan y = 50$

11. $(3x^2 + 2y^3)^4 = 2$

12. $(y^2 + 2y - x)^2 = 200$

13. $\frac{x^2 + y}{x + y^2} = 17$

14. $\frac{\sin(x) + y}{\cos(y) + x} = 1$

15. $\ln(x^2 + y^2) = e$

16. $\ln(x^2 + xy + y^2) = 1$

17. $xe^x = ye^y$

18. $y \sin(x^3) = x \sin(y^3)$

19. $\sqrt{xy} = 1 + x^2 y$

20. Show that $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is the same for each of the following implicitly defined functions.

    (a) $xy = 1$

    (b) $x^2y^2 = 1$

    (c) $\sin(xy) = 1$

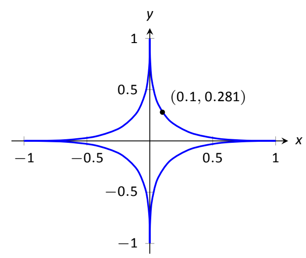
    (d) $\ln(xy) = 1$

In Exercises 21 – 28, find the equation of the tangent line to the graph of the implicitly defined function at the indicated points. As a visual aid, each function is graphed.

21. $x^{2/5} + y^{2/5} = 1$

    (a) At $(1, 0)$.

    (b) At $(0.1, 0.281)$ (which does not *exactly* lie on the curve, but is very close).

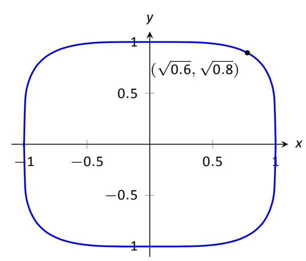


22. $x^4 + y^4 = 1$

    (a) At $(1, 0)$.

    (b) At $(\sqrt{0.6}, \sqrt{0.8})$.

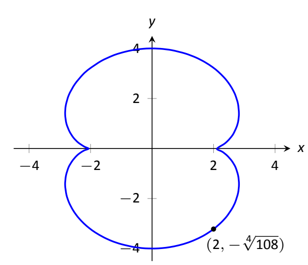
    (c) At $(0, 1)$.



23. $(x^2 + y^2 - 4)^3 = 108y^2$

    (a) At $(0, 4)$.

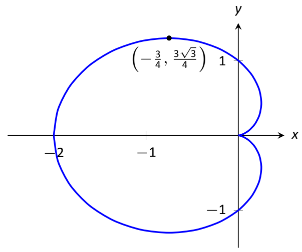
    (b) At $(2, -\sqrt[4]{108})$.



24. $(x^2+y^2+x)^2 = x^2+y^2$

(a) At $(0, 1)$.

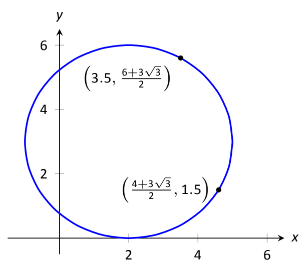
(b) At $\left(-\frac{3}{4}, \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{4}\right)$.



25. $(x-2)^2 + (y-3)^2 = 9$

(a) At $\left(\frac{7}{2}, \frac{6+3\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

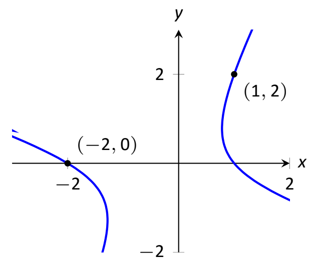
(b) At $\left(\frac{4+3\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$.



26. $x^2 + 2xy - y^2 + x = 2$

(a) At $(-2, 0)$.

(b) At $(1, 2)$.



In Exercises 27 – 30, an implicitly defined function is given. Find $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$. Note: these are the same problems used in Exercises 5 through 8.

27. $x^4 + y^2 + y = 7$

28. $x^{2/5} + y^{2/5} = 1$

29. $\cos x + \sin y = 1$

30. $\frac{x}{y} = 10$

3: The Graphical Behavior of Functions

Our study of limits led to continuous functions, which is a certain class of functions that behave in a particularly nice way. Limits then gave us an even nicer class of functions, functions that are differentiable.

This chapter explores many of the ways we can take advantage of the information that continuous and differentiable functions provide.

3.1 Extreme Values

Given any quantity described by a function, we are often interested in the largest and/or smallest values that quantity attains. For instance, if a function describes the speed of an object, it seems reasonable to want to know the fastest/slowest the object traveled. If a function describes the value of a stock, we might want to know the highest/lowest values the stock attained over the past year. We call such values *extreme values.*

Note: The extreme values of a function are "y" values, values the function attains, not the input values.

Definition 13 Extreme Values
Let f be defined on an interval I containing c.

1. $f(c)$ is the **minimum** (also, **absolute minimum**) of f on I if $f(c) \leq f(x)$ for all x in I.
2. $f(c)$ is the **maximum** (also, **absolute maximum**) of f on I if $f(c) \geq f(x)$ for all x in I.

The maximum and minimum values are the **extreme values**, or **extrema**, of f on I.

Consider Figure 3.1. The function displayed in (a) has a maximum, but no minimum, as the interval over which the function is defined is open. In (b), the function has a minimum, but no maximum; there is a discontinuity in the "natural" place for the maximum to occur. Finally, the function shown in (c) has both a maximum and a minimum; note that the function is continuous and the interval on which it is defined is closed.

It is possible for discontinuous functions defined on an open interval to have both a maximum and minimum value, but we have just seen examples where

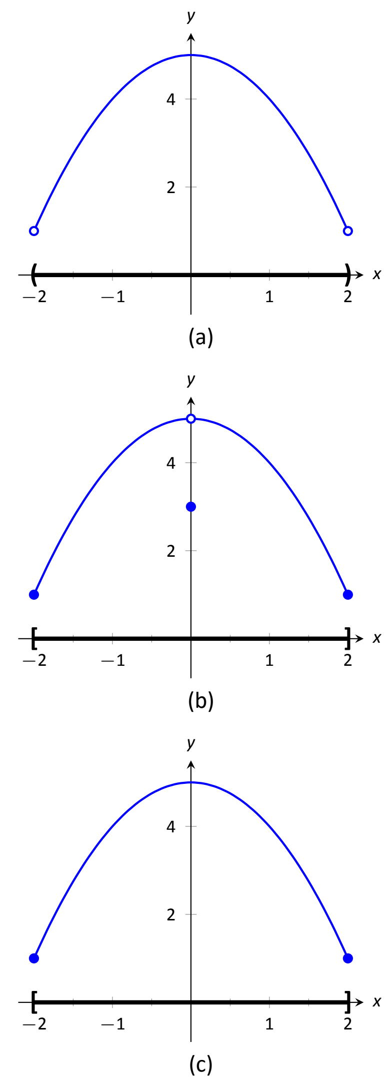


Figure 3.1: Graphs of functions with and without extreme values.

they did not. On the other hand, continuous functions on a closed interval *always* have a maximum and minimum value.

Theorem 22 The Extreme Value Theorem
Let f be a continuous function defined on a closed interval I. Then f has both a maximum and minimum value on I.

This theorem states that f has extreme values, but it does not offer any advice about how/where to find these values. The process can seem to be fairly easy, as the next example illustrates. After the example, we will draw on lessons learned to form a more general and powerful method for finding extreme values.

Watch the video:
Finding Critical Numbers — Example 2 at
`https://youtu.be/3-6bdDXzl9M`

Example 3.1.1 Approximating extreme values
Consider $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2$ on $I = [-1, 5]$, as graphed in Figure 3.2. Approximate the extreme values of f.

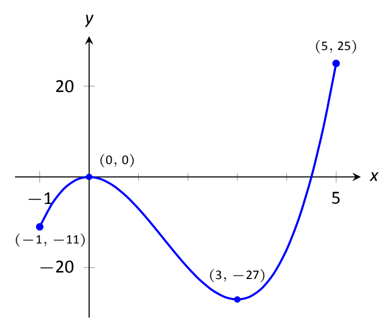


Figure 3.2: A graph of $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2$ as in Example 3.1.1.

Solution The graph is drawn in such a way to draw attention to certain points. It certainly seems that the smallest y value is -27, found when $x = 3$. It also seems that the largest y value is 25, found at the endpoint of I, $x = 5$. We use the word *seems*, for by the graph alone we cannot be sure the smallest value is not less than -27. Since the problem asks for an approximation, we approximate the extreme values to be 25 and -27.

Notice how the minimum value came at "the bottom of a valley," and the maximum value came at an endpoint. Also note that while 0 is not an extreme value, it would be if we narrowed our interval to $[-1, 4]$. The idea that the point $(0, 0)$ is the location of an extreme value for some interval is important, leading us to a definition.

Notes:

Definition 14 Relative Minimum and Relative Maximum

Let f be defined on an interval I containing c.

1. If there is an open interval containing c such that $f(c)$ is the minimum value, then $f(c)$ is a **relative minimum** of f. We also say that f has a relative minimum at $(c, f(c))$.

2. If there is an open interval containing c such that $f(c)$ is the maximum value, then $f(c)$ is a **relative maximum** of f. We also say that f has a relative maximum at $(c, f(c))$.

The relative maximum and minimum values comprise the **relative extrema** of f.

Note: The terms *local minimum*, *local maximum*, and *local extrema* are often used as synonyms for *relative minimum*, *relative maximum*, and *relative extrema*.

We briefly practice using these definitions.

Example 3.1.2 Approximating relative extrema

Consider $f(x) = (3x^4 - 4x^3 - 12x^2 + 5)/5$, as shown in Figure 3.3. Approximate the relative extrema of f. At each of these points, evaluate f'.

Solution We still do not have the tools to exactly find the relative extrema, but the graph does allow us to make reasonable approximations. It seems f has relative minima at $x = -1$ and $x = 2$, with values of $f(-1) = 0$ and $f(2) = -5.4$. It also seems that f has a relative maximum at the point $(0, 1)$.

We approximate the relative minima to be 0 and -5.4; we approximate the relative maximum to be 1.

It is straightforward to evaluate $f'(x) = \frac{1}{5}(12x^3 - 12x^2 - 24x)$ at $x = 0, 1$ and 2. In each case, $f'(x) = 0$.

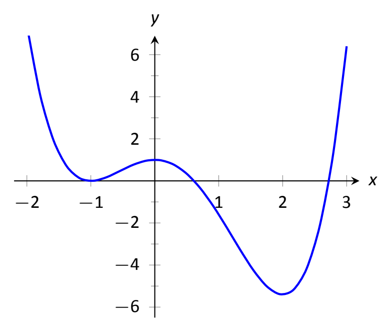


Figure 3.3: A graph of $f(x) = (3x^4 - 4x^3 - 12x^2 + 5)/5$ as in Example 3.1.2.

Example 3.1.3 Approximating relative extrema

Approximate the relative extrema of $f(x) = (x - 1)^{2/3} + 2$, shown in Figure 3.4. At each of these points, evaluate f'.

Solution The figure implies that f does not have any relative maxima, but has a relative minimum at $(1, 2)$. In fact, the graph suggests that not only is this point a relative minimum, $y = f(1) = 2$ is *the* minimum value of the function.

We compute $f'(x) = \frac{2}{3}(x - 1)^{-1/3}$. When $x = 1$, f' is undefined.

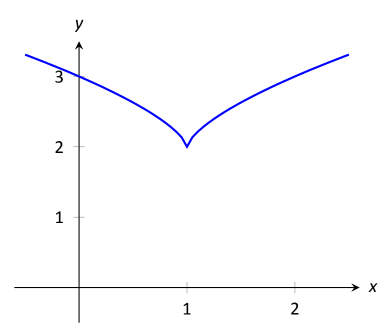


Figure 3.4: A graph of $f(x) = (x-1)^{2/3}+2$ as in Example 3.1.3.

What can we learn from the previous two examples? We were able to vi-

Notes:

sually approximate relative extrema, and at each such point, the derivative was either 0 or it was not defined. This observation holds for all functions, leading to a definition and a theorem.

Definition 15 Critical Numbers and Critical Points
Let f be defined at c. The value c is a **critical number** (or **critical value**) of f if $f'(c) = 0$ or $f'(c)$ is not defined.

If c is a critical number of f, then the point $(c, f(c))$ is a **critical point** of f.

Theorem 23 Fermat's Theorem
Let a function f have a relative extrema at the point $(c, f(c))$. Then c is a critical number of f.

It isn't too hard to see why this should be true. If f' is defined at a relative extreme, then the tangent line must be horizontal. Otherwise, we'd be able to move along the graph in the direction given by the tangent line to get a more extreme value.

Be careful to understand that this theorem states "All relative extrema occur at critical points." It does not say "All critical numbers produce relative extrema." For instance, consider $f(x) = x^3$. Since $f'(x) = 3x^2$, it is straightforward to determine that $x = 0$ is a critical number of f. However, f has no relative extrema, as illustrated in Figure 3.5.

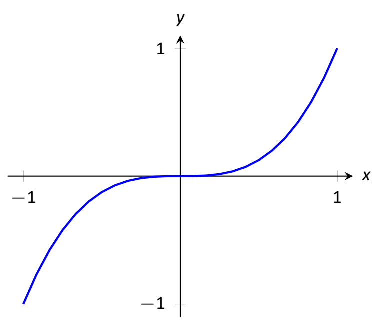


Figure 3.5: A graph of $f(x) = x^3$ which has a critical value of $x = 0$, but no relative extrema.

Theorem 22 states that a continuous function on a closed interval will have absolute extrema, that is, both an absolute maximum and an absolute minimum. These extrema occur either at the endpoints or at critical values in the interval. We combine these concepts to offer a strategy for finding extrema.

Notes:

Key Idea 4 Finding Extrema on a Closed Interval

Let f be a continuous function defined on a closed interval $[a, b]$. To find the maximum and minimum values of f on $[a, b]$:

1. Evaluate f at the endpoints a and b of the interval.
2. Find the critical numbers of f in (a, b).
3. Evaluate f at each critical number.
4. The absolute maximum of f is the largest of these values, and the absolute minimum of f is the least of these values.

We practice these ideas in the next examples.

Example 3.1.4 Finding extreme values

Find the extreme values of $f(x) = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 12x$ on $[0, 3]$, graphed in Figure 3.6(a).

Solution We follow the steps outlined in Key Idea 4. We first evaluate f at the endpoints:

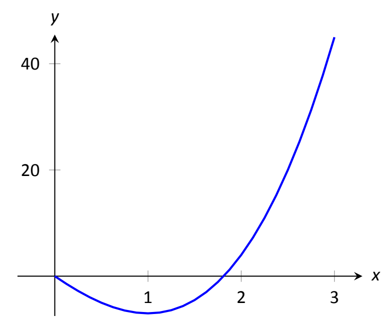
$$f(0) = 2(0)^3 + 3(0)^2 - 12(0) = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad f(3) = 2(3)^3 + 3(3)^2 - 12(3) = 45.$$

Next, we find the critical values of f on $[0, 3]$. We see that $f'(x) = 6x^2 + 6x - 12 = 6(x + 2)(x - 1)$; therefore the critical values of f are $x = -2$ and $x = 1$. Since $x = -2$ does not lie in the interval $[0, 3]$, we ignore it. Evaluating f at the only critical number in our interval gives: $f(1) = 2(1)^3 + 3(1)^2 - 12(1) = -7$.

The table in Figure 3.6(b) gives f evaluated at the "important" x values in $[0, 3]$. We can easily see the maximum and minimum values of f: the maximum value is 45 and the minimum value is -7.

Note that all this was done without the aid of a graph; this work followed an analytic algorithm and did not depend on any visualization. Figure 3.6(a) shows f and we can confirm our answer, but it is important to understand that these answers can be found without graphical assistance.

We practice again.



(a)

x	$f(x)$
0	0
1	-7
3	45

(b)

Figure 3.6: A graph and table of extreme values of $f(x) = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 12x$ on $[0, 3]$ as in Example 3.1.4.

Example 3.1.5 Finding extreme values

Find the maximum and minimum values of f on $[-4, 2]$, where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} (x-1)^2 & x \le 0 \\ x + 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

Notes:

Solution

Here f is piecewise–defined, but we can still apply Key Idea 4 because it is continuous. Evaluating f at the endpoints gives:

$$f(-4) = (-4-1)^2 = (-5)^2 = 25 \quad \text{and} \quad f(2) = 2+1 = 3.$$

We now find the critical numbers of f. We have to define f' in a piecewise manner; it is

$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} 2(x-1) & x < 0 \\ 1 & x > 0 \end{cases}.$$

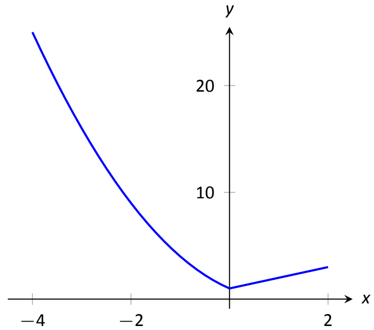
Note that while f is defined for all of $[-4, 2]$, f' is not, as the derivative of f does not exist when $x = 0$. (From the left, the derivative approaches -2; from the right the derivative is 1.) Thus one critical number of f is $x = 0$.

We now set $f'(x) = 0$. When $x > 0$, $f'(x)$ is never 0. When $x < 0$, $f'(x)$ is also never 0. (We may be tempted to say that $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 1$. However, this is nonsensical, for we only consider $f'(x) = 2(x-1)$ when $x < 0$, so we will ignore a solution that says $x = 1$.)

So we have three important x values to consider: $x = -4, 2$ and 0. We have already evaluated the first two, and $f(0) = (0-1)^2 = (-1)^2 = 1$. Collecting these values into Figure 3.7(a), we see that the absolute minimum of f is 1 and the absolute maximum of f is 25. Our answer is confirmed by the graph of f in Figure 3.7(b).

x	$f(x)$
-4	25
0	1
2	3

(a)



(b)

Figure 3.7: A table of extreme values and graph of $f(x)$ on $[-4, 2]$ as in Example 3.1.5.

Example 3.1.6 Finding extreme values

Find the extrema of $f(x) = \cos(x^2)$ on $[-2, 2]$.

Solution We again use Key Idea 4. Evaluating f at the endpoints of the interval gives: $f(-2) = f(2) = \cos(4) \approx -0.6536$. We now find the critical values of f.

Applying the Chain Rule, we find $f'(x) = -2x\sin(x^2)$. Set $f'(x) = 0$ and solve for x to find the critical values of f.

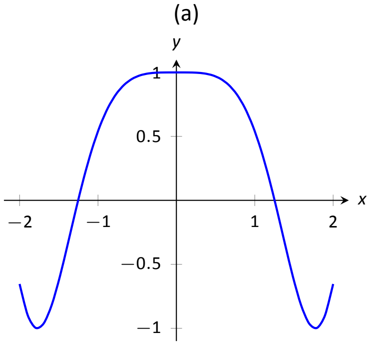
We have $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$ and when $\sin(x^2) = 0$. In general, $\sin t = 0$ when $t = \ldots - 2\pi, -\pi, 0, \pi, \ldots$ Thus $\sin(x^2) = 0$ when $x^2 = 0, \pi, 2\pi, \ldots$ (x^2 is always positive so we ignore $-\pi$, etc.) So $\sin(x^2) = 0$ when $x = 0, \pm\sqrt{\pi}, \pm\sqrt{2\pi}, \ldots$. The only values to fall in the given interval of $[-2, 2]$ are are 0 and $\pm\pi$, approximately ± 1.77.

We again construct a table of important values in Figure 3.8(a). In this example we have 5 values to consider: $x = 0, \pm 2, \pm\sqrt{\pi}$.

From the table it is clear that the maximum value of f on $[-2, 2]$ is 1; the minimum value is -1. The graph in Figure 3.8(b) confirms our results.

x	$f(x)$
-2	-0.65
$-\sqrt{\pi}$	-1
0	1
$\sqrt{\pi}$	-1
2	-0.65

(a)



(b)

Figure 3.8: A table of extreme values and graph of $f(x) = \cos(x^2)$ on $[-2, 2]$ in Example 3.1.6.

Notes:

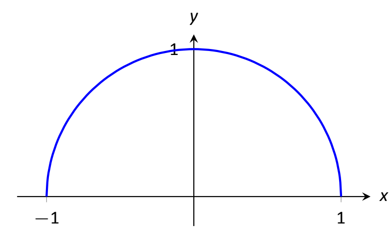
We consider one more example.

Example 3.1.7 Finding extreme values
Find the extreme values of $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$.

Solution A closed interval is not given, so we find the extreme values of f on its domain. This f is defined whenever $1 - x^2 \geq 0$; thus the domain of f is $[-1, 1]$. Evaluating f at either endpoint returns 0.

Using the Chain Rule, we find $f'(x) = \dfrac{-x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$. The critical points of f are found when $f'(x) = 0$ or when f' is undefined. It is straightforward to find that $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$, and f' is undefined when $x = \pm 1$, the endpoints of the interval. The table of important values is given in Figure 3.9(b). The maximum value is 1, and the minimum value is 0.

We have seen that continuous functions on closed intervals always have a maximum and minimum value, and we have also developed a technique to find these values. In the next section, we further our study of the information we can glean from "nice" functions with the Mean Value Theorem. On a closed interval, we can find the *average rate of change* of a function (as we did at the beginning of Chapter 2). We will see that differentiable functions always have a point at which their *instantaneous* rate of change is same as the *average* rate of change. This is surprisingly useful, as we'll see.



(a)

x	$f(x)$
-1	0
0	1
1	0

(b)

Figure 3.9: A graph and table of extrema of $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$ on $[-1, 1]$ as in Example 3.1.7.

Note: We implicitly found the derivative of $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, the unit circle, in Example 2.6.5 as $\frac{dy}{dx} = -x/y$. In Example 3.1.7, half of the unit circle is given as $y = f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$. We found $f'(x) = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$. Recognize that the denominator of this fraction is y; that is, we again found $f'(x) = \frac{dy}{dx} = -x/y$.

Notes:

Exercises 3.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Describe what an "extreme value" of a function is in your own words.

2. Sketch the graph of a function f on $(-1, 1)$ that has both a maximum and minimum value.

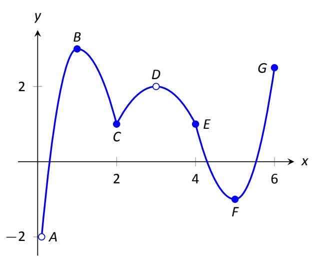
3. Describe the difference between absolute and relative maxima in your own words.

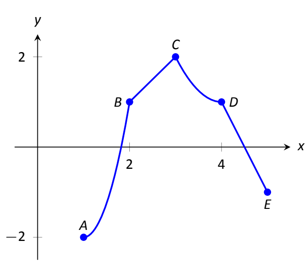
4. Sketch the graph of a function f where f has a relative maximum at $x = 1$ and $f'(1)$ is undefined.

5. T/F: If c is a critical value of a function f, then f has either a relative maximum or relative minimum at $x = c$.

Problems

In Exercises 6 – 7, identify each of the marked points as being an absolute maximum or minimum, a relative maximum or minimum, or none of the above. (A point could be more than one.)

6. 

7. 

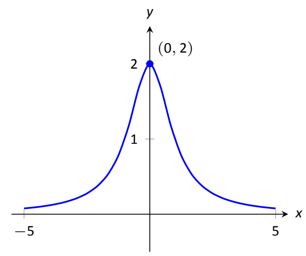
8. (a) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local minimum at 3 and is differentiable at 3.

   (b) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local minimum at 3 and is continuous but not differentiable at 3.

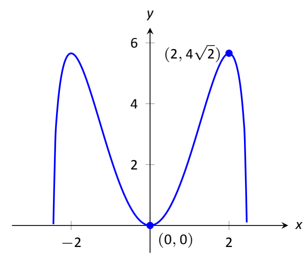
   (c) Sketch the graph of a function that has a local minimum at 3 and is not continuous at 3.

In Exercises 9 – 15, evaluate $f'(x)$ at the points indicated in the graph.

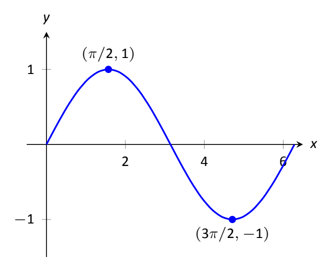
9. $f(x) = \dfrac{2}{x^2+1}$



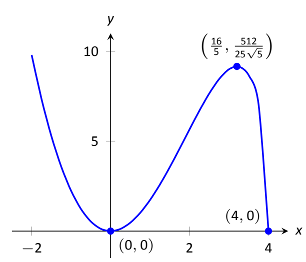
10. $f(x) = x^2\sqrt{6-x^2}$



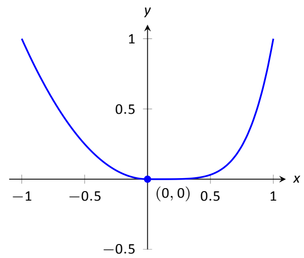
11. $f(x) = \sin x$



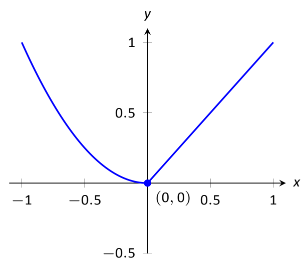
12. $f(x) = x^2\sqrt{4-x}$



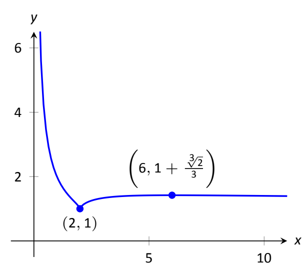
13. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & x \le 0 \\ x^5 & x > 0 \end{cases}$



14. $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 & x \leq 0 \\ x & x > 0 \end{cases}$



15. $f(x) = \dfrac{(x-2)^{2/3}}{x}$



In Exercises 16 – 25, find the extreme values of the function on the given interval.

16. $f(x) = x^2 + x + 4$ on $[-1, 2]$.

17. $f(x) = x^3 - \dfrac{9}{2}x^2 - 30x + 3$ on $[0, 6]$.

18. $f(x) = 3\sin x$ on $[\pi/4, 2\pi/3]$.

19. $f(x) = x^2\sqrt{4 - x^2}$ on $[-2, 2]$.

20. $f(x) = x + \dfrac{3}{x}$ on $[1, 5]$.

21. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2}{x^2 + 5}$ on $[-3, 5]$.

22. $f(x) = e^x \cos x$ on $[0, \pi]$.

23. $f(x) = e^x \sin x$ on $[0, \pi]$.

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{\ln x}{x}$ on $[1, 4]$.

25. $f(x) = x^{2/3} - x$ on $[0, 2]$.

26. Show that 4 is a critical number of $f(x) = (x-4)^3 + 7$ but f does not have a relative extreme value at 4.

27. A cubic function is a polynomial of degree 3; that is, it has the form $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, where $a \neq 0$.

    (a) Show that a cubic function can have 2, 1, or 0 critical numbers. Give examples and sketches to illustrate the 3 possibilities.

    (b) How many local extreme values can a cubic function have?

28. Suppose that a and b are positive numbers. Find the extreme values of $f(x) = x^a(1-x)^b$ on $[0, 1]$.

Review

29. Find $\frac{dy}{dx}$, where $x^2y - y^2x = 1$.

30. Find the equation of the line tangent to the graph of $x^2 + y^2 + xy = 7$ at the point $(1, 2)$.

31. Let $f(x) = x^3 + x$.

    Evaluate $\displaystyle\lim_{s\to 0} \frac{f(x+s) - f(x)}{s}$.

3.2 The Mean Value Theorem

We motivate this section with the following question: Suppose you leave your house and drive to your friend's house in a city 100 miles away, completing the trip in two hours. Is there necessarily a moment during the trip when you are going 50 miles per hour?

In answering this question, it is clear that the *average* speed for the entire trip is 50 mph (i.e. 100 miles in 2 hours), but the question is whether or not your *instantaneous* speed is ever exactly 50 mph. More simply, does your speedometer ever read exactly 50 mph?. Figure 3.10 shows a graphical interpretation of this question. The answer, under some very reasonable assumptions, is "yes."

Let's now see why this situation is in a calculus text by translating it into mathematical symbols.

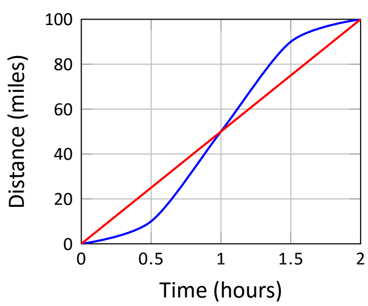


Figure 3.10: Distance traveled as a function of time. Must there be a tangent line parallel to the average slope?

First assume that the function $y = f(t)$ gives the distance (in miles) traveled from your home at time t (in hours) where $0 \leq t \leq 2$. In particular, this gives $f(0) = 0$ and $f(2) = 100$. The slope of the secant line (average velocity) connecting the starting and ending points $(0, f(0))$ and $(2, f(2))$ is therefore

$$\frac{\Delta f}{\Delta t} = \frac{f(2) - f(0)}{2 - 0} = \frac{100 - 0}{2} = 50 \text{ mph}.$$

The slope at any point on the graph itself (instantaneous velocity) is given by the derivative $f'(t)$. So, since the answer to the question above is "yes," this means that at some time during the trip, the derivative takes on the value of 50 mph. Symbolically,

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(2) - f(0)}{2 - 0} = 50$$

for some time $0 \leq c \leq 2$.

How about more generally? Given any function $y = f(x)$ and a range $a \leq x \leq b$ does the value of the derivative at some point between a and b have to match the slope of the secant line connecting the points $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$? Or equivalently, does the equation $f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$ have to hold for some $a < c < b$?

Let's look at two functions in an example.

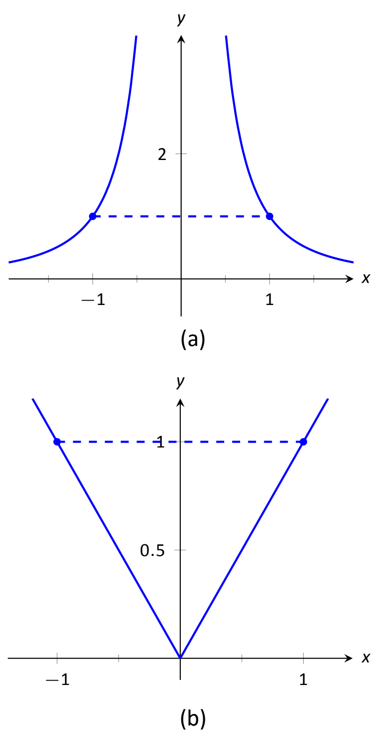


Figure 3.11: A graph of $f_1(x) = 1/x^2$ and $f_2(x) = |x|$ in Example 3.2.1.

Example 3.2.1 Comparing average and instantaneous rates of change

Consider functions

$$f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x^2} \quad \text{and} \quad f_2(x) = |x|$$

with $a = -1$ and $b = 1$ as shown in Figure 3.11(a) and (b), respectively. Both functions have a value of 1 at a and b. Therefore the slope of the secant line

Notes:

connecting the end points is 0 in each case. But if you look at the plots of each, you can see that there are no points on either graph where the tangent lines have slope zero. Therefore we have found that there is no c in $[-1, 1]$ such that

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(1) - f(-1)}{1 - (-1)} = 0.$$

So what went "wrong"? It may not be surprising to find that the discontinuity of f_1 and the corner of f_2 play a role. If our functions had been continuous and differentiable, would we have been able to find that special value c? This is our motivation for the following theorem.

Theorem 24 The Mean Value Theorem of Differentiation

Let $y = f(x)$ be a continuous function on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and differentiable on the open interval (a, b). There exists a value c, $a < c < b$, such that

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}.$$

That is, there is a value c in (a, b) where the instantaneous rate of change of f at c is equal to the average rate of change of f on $[a, b]$.

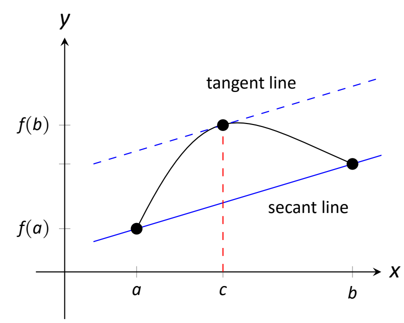


Figure 3.12: A graph of illustrating the Mean Value Theorem of Differentiation

Note that the reasons that the functions in Example 3.2.1 fail are indeed that f_1 has a discontinuity on the interval $[-1, 1]$ and f_2 is not differentiable at the origin.

We will give a proof of the Mean Value Theorem below. To do so, we use Rolle's Theorem, stated here.

Theorem 25 Rolle's Theorem

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b), where $f(a) = f(b)$. There is some c in (a, b) such that $f'(c) = 0$.

Consider Figure 3.13 where the graph of a function f is given, where $f(a) = f(b)$. It should make intuitive sense that if f is differentiable (and hence, continuous) that there would be a value c in (a, b) where $f'(c) = 0$; that is, there would be a relative maximum or minimum of f in (a, b). Rolle's Theorem guarantees at least one; there may be more.

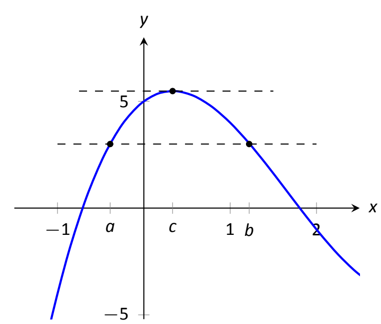


Figure 3.13: A graph of $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 3x + 5$, where $f(a) = f(b)$. Note the existence of c, where $a < c < b$, where $f'(c) = 0$.

Notes:

Rolle's Theorem is really just a special case of the Mean Value Theorem. If $f(a) = f(b)$, then the *average* rate of change on (a, b) is 0, and the theorem guarantees some c where $f'(c) = 0$. We will prove Rolle's Theorem, then use it to prove the Mean Value Theorem.

Proof of Rolle's Theorem
Let f be differentiable on (a, b) where $f(a) = f(b)$. We consider two cases.

Case 1: Consider the case when f is constant on $[a, b]$; that is, $f(x) = f(a) = f(b)$ for all x in $[a, b]$. Then $f'(x) = 0$ for all x in $[a, b]$, showing there is at least one value c in (a, b) where $f'(c) = 0$.

Case 2: Now assume that f is not constant on $[a, b]$. The Extreme Value Theorem guarantees that f has a maximal and minimal value on $[a, b]$, found either at the endpoints or at a critical value in (a, b). Since $f(a) = f(b)$ and f is not constant, it is clear that the maximum and minimum cannot *both* be found at the endpoints. Assume, without loss of generality, that the maximum of f is not found at the endpoints. Therefore there is a c in (a, b) such that $f(c)$ is the maximum value of f. By Theorem 23, c must be a critical number of f; since f is differentiable, we have that $f'(c) = 0$, completing the proof of the theorem. □

Example 3.2.2 Exactly One Root
Show that $f(x) = 8x^7 + x^3 + 3x + 2$ has exactly one real root.

SOLUTION We'll do this in two steps. The first step is to use the Intermediate Value Theorem to show that there is at least one root. The second step is to use Rolle's Theorem to show that there is at most one root. (Because f is a polynomial, it is continuous and differentiable, so both of these theorems apply.)

We can apply the Intermediate Value Theorem on the interval $[-1, 0]$. Since $f(-1) = -10 < 0 < f(0) = 2$, the Intermediate Value Theorem tells us that there is at least one place in $[-1, 0]$ where $f(x) = 0$. This means that there is at least one root, but there may be more in the interval (and there may be more outside the interval where we haven't even looked).

We will now use Rolle's Theorem to show that f has at most one root. Suppose for this paragraph that f had two (or more) roots. Then by Rolle's Theorem, there is some c in between the roots so that $0 = f'(c) = 56x^6 + 3x^2 + 3$. But this cannot happen, since f' is always at least 3.

Therefore, f has at most one root. Combining this with "there is at least one root", we see that f has exactly one root. (Notice that because both the Intermediate Value Theorem and Rolle's Theorem are existential theorems, we don't know what the root is, only that it must exist.)

Notes:

We will now use Rolle's Theorem to prove the Mean Value Theorem.

Proof of the Mean Value Theorem
Define the function

$$g(x) = f(x) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}x.$$

We know g is differentiable on (a, b) and continuous on $[a, b]$ since f is. We also see that

$$\begin{aligned} g(b) - g(a) &= f(b) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}b - f(a) + \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}a \\ &= \big(f(b) - f(a)\big) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}(b - a) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

which shows that $g(a) = g(b)$. We can then apply Rolle's theorem to guarantee the existence of $c \in (a, b)$ such that $g'(c) = 0$. But note that

$$0 = g'(c) = f'(c) - \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}\ ;$$

hence

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a},$$

which is what we sought to prove. □

Going back to the very beginning of the section, we see that the only assumption we would need about our distance function $f(t)$ is that it be continuous and differentiable for t from 0 to 2 hours (both reasonable assumptions). By the Mean Value Theorem, we are guaranteed a time during the trip where our instantaneous speed is 50 mph. This fact is used in practice. Some law enforcement agencies monitor traffic speeds while in aircraft. They do not measure speed with radar, but rather by timing individual cars as they pass over lines painted on the highway whose distances apart are known. The officer is able to measure the *average* speed of a car between the painted lines; if that average speed is greater than the posted speed limit, the officer is assured that the driver exceeded the speed limit at some time.

Note that the Mean Value Theorem is an *existence* theorem. It states that a special value *c exists*, but it does not give any indication about how to find it. It turns out that when we need the Mean Value Theorem, existence is all we need.

Notes:

Watch the video:
The Mean Value Theorem at
`https://youtu.be/xY0rYLq3fE0`

Example 3.2.3 Using the Mean Value Theorem

Consider $f(x) = x^3 + 5x + 5$ on $[-3, 3]$. Find c in $[-3, 3]$ that satisfies the Mean Value Theorem.

SOLUTION The average rate of change of f on $[-3, 3]$ is:

$$\frac{f(3) - f(-3)}{3 - (-3)} = \frac{84}{6} = 14.$$

We want to find c such that $f'(c) = 14$. We find $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 5$. We set this equal to 14 and solve for x.

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= 14 \\ 3x^2 + 5 &= 14 \\ x^2 &= 3 \\ x &= \pm\sqrt{3} \approx \pm 1.732 \end{aligned}$$

We have found 2 values c in $[-3, 3]$ where the instantaneous rate of change is equal to the average rate of change; the Mean Value Theorem guaranteed at least one. In Figure 3.14 f is graphed with a dashed line representing the average rate of change; the lines tangent to f at $x = \pm\sqrt{3}$ are also given. Note how these lines are parallel (i.e., have the same slope) as the dashed line.

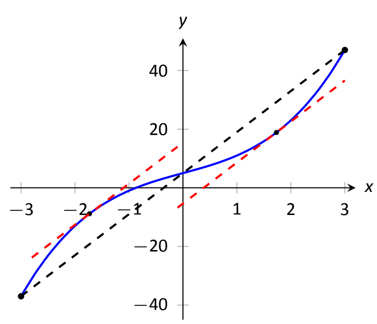


Figure 3.14: Demonstrating the Mean Value Theorem in Example 3.2.3.

While the Mean Value Theorem has practical use (for instance, the speed monitoring application mentioned before), it is mostly used to advance other theory. We will use it in the next section to relate the shape of a graph to its derivative.

Notes:

Exercises 3.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Explain in your own words what the Mean Value Theorem states.

2. Explain in your own words what Rolle's Theorem states.

Problems

In Exercises 3 – 10, a function $f(x)$ and interval $[a, b]$ are given. Check if Rolle's Theorem can be applied to f on $[a, b]$; if so, find c in $[a, b]$ such that $f'(c) = 0$.

3. $f(x) = 6$ on $[-1, 1]$.

4. $f(x) = 6x$ on $[-1, 1]$.

5. $f(x) = x^2 + x - 6$ on $[-3, 2]$.

6. $f(x) = x^2 + x - 2$ on $[-3, 2]$.

7. $f(x) = x^2 + x$ on $[-2, 2]$.

8. $f(x) = \sin x$ on $[\pi/6, 5\pi/6]$.

9. $f(x) = \cos x$ on $[0, \pi]$.

10. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 2x + 1}$ on $[0, 2]$.

In Exercises 11 – 20, a function $f(x)$ and interval $[a, b]$ are given. Check if the Mean Value Theorem can be applied to f on $[a, b]$; if so, find a value c in $[a, b]$ guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

11. $f(x) = x^2 + 3x - 1$ on $[-2, 2]$.

12. $f(x) = 5x^2 - 6x + 8$ on $[0, 5]$.

13. $f(x) = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$ on $[0, 3]$.

14. $f(x) = \sqrt{25 - x}$ on $[0, 9]$.

15. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 9}{x^2 - 1}$ on $[0, 2]$.

16. $f(x) = \ln x$ on $[1, 5]$.

17. $f(x) = \tan x$ on $[-\pi/4, \pi/4]$.

18. $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + x + 1$ on $[-2, 2]$.

19. $f(x) = 2x^3 - 5x^2 + 6x + 1$ on $[-5, 2]$.

20. Suppose that f is continuous on $[1, 4]$ and differentiable on $(1, 4)$. If $f(1) = 10$ and $f'(x) \geq 2$ for $1 \leq x \leq 4$, how small can $f(4)$ possibly be?

21. Does there exist a function f such that $f(0) = -1$, $f(2) = 4$, and $f'(x) \leq 2$ for all x?

22. Show that the equation $1 + 2x + x^3 + 4x^5 = 0$ has exactly one real root.

23. Show that a polynomial of degree 3 has at most 3 real roots.

24. (a) Suppose that f is differentiable everywhere and has 2 roots. Show that f' has at least one real root.

    (b) Suppose that f is twice differentiable everywhere and has 3 roots. Show that f'' has at least one real root.

25. Let p, q, and r be constants, and define $f(x) = px^2 + qx + r$. Show that the Mean Value Theorem applied to f for the interval $[a, b]$ is always satisfied at the midpoint of the interval.

Review

26. Find the extreme values of $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 9$ on $[-2, 5]$.

27. Describe the critical points of $f(x) = \cos x$.

28. Describe the critical points of $f(x) = \tan x$.

3.3 Increasing and Decreasing Functions

Our study of "nice" functions f in this chapter has so far focused on individual points: points where f is maximal/minimal, points where $f'(x) = 0$ or f' does not exist, and points c where $f'(c)$ is the average rate of change of f on some interval.

In this section we begin to study how functions behave *between* special points; we begin studying in more detail the shape of their graphs.

We start with an intuitive concept. Given the graph in Figure 3.15, where would you say the function is *increasing*? *Decreasing*? Even though we have not defined these terms mathematically, one likely answered that f is increasing when $x > 1$ and decreasing when $x < 1$. We formally define these terms here.

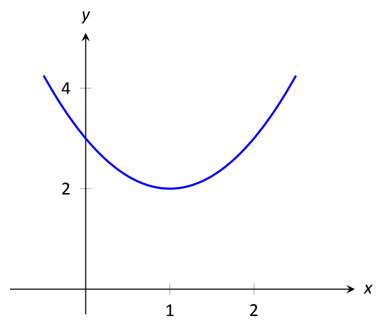


Figure 3.15: A graph of a function f used to illustrate the concepts of *increasing* and *decreasing*.

Definition 16 Increasing and Decreasing Functions

Let f be a function defined on an interval I.

1. f is **increasing** on I if for every $a < b$ in I, $f(a) \leq f(b)$.
2. f is **decreasing** on I if for every $a < b$ in I, $f(a) \geq f(b)$.

A function is **strictly increasing** when $a < b$ in I implies $f(a) < f(b)$, with a similar definition holding for **strictly decreasing**.

Informally, a function is increasing if as x gets larger (i.e., looking left to right) $f(x)$ gets larger.

Our interest lies in finding intervals in the domain of f on which f is either increasing or decreasing. Such information should seem useful. For instance, if f describes the speed of an object, we might want to know when the speed was increasing or decreasing (i.e., when the object was accelerating vs. decelerating). If f describes the population of a city, we should be interested in when the population is growing or declining.

To find such intervals, we again consider secant lines. Let f be an increasing, differentiable function on an open interval I, such as the one shown in Figure 3.16, and let $a < b$ be given in I. The secant line on the graph of f from $x = a$ to $x = b$ is drawn; it has a slope of $(f(b) - f(a))/(b - a)$. But note:

$$\frac{f(b)-f(a)}{b-a} \Rightarrow \frac{\text{numerator } > 0}{\text{denominator } > 0} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}\text{slope of the}\\ \text{secant line} > 0\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}\text{Average rate of}\\ \text{change of } f \text{ on}\\ [a,b] \text{ is} > 0.\end{array}$$

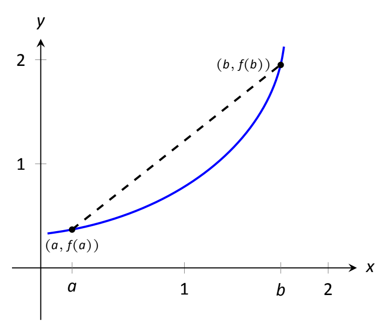


Figure 3.16: Examining the secant line of an increasing function.

We have shown mathematically what may have already been obvious: when f is increasing, its secant lines will have a positive slope. Now recall the Mean

Notes:

Value Theorem guarantees that there is a number c, where $a < c < b$, such that

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} > 0.$$

By considering all such secant lines in I, we strongly imply that $f'(x) \geq 0$ on I. A similar statement can be made for decreasing functions.

Our above logic can be summarized as "If f is increasing, then f' is probably positive." Theorem 26 below turns this around by stating "If f' is postive, then f is increasing." This leads us to a method for finding when functions are increasing and decreasing.

Theorem 26 Test For Increasing/Decreasing Functions
Let f be a continuous function on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b).

1. If $f'(c) > 0$ for all c in (a, b), then f is increasing on $[a, b]$.
2. If $f'(c) < 0$ for all c in (a, b), then f is decreasing on $[a, b]$.
3. If $f'(c) = 0$ for all c in (a, b), then f is constant on $[a, b]$.

Let a and b be in I where $f'(a) > 0$ and $f'(b) < 0$. It follows from the Intermediate Value Theorem that there must be some value c between a and b where $f'(c) = 0$. This leads us to the following method for finding intervals on which a function is increasing or decreasing.

Note: Theorem 26 (parts 1 and 2) also holds if $f'(c) = 0$ for a finite number of values of c in I.

Key Idea 5 Finding Intervals on which f is Increasing or Decreasing
Let f be a differentiable function on an interval I. To find intervals on which f is increasing and decreasing:

1. Find the critical values of f. That is, find all c in I where $f'(c) = 0$ or f' is not defined.
2. Use the critical values to divide I into subintervals.
3. Pick any point p in each subinterval, and find the sign of $f'(p)$.
   (a) If $f'(p) > 0$, then f is increasing on that subinterval.
   (b) If $f'(p) < 0$, then f is decreasing on that subinterval.

Notes:

Watch the video:
Finding Intervals of Increase/Decrease Local Max/Mins at
https://youtu.be/-W4dOqFzyQY

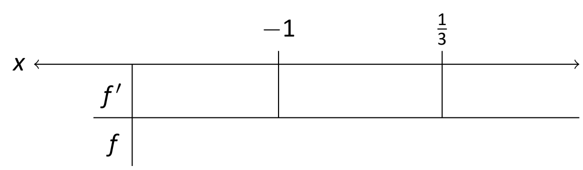
We demonstrate using Key Idea 5 in the following example.

Example 3.3.1 Finding intervals of increasing/decreasing

Let $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - x + 1$. Find intervals on which f is increasing or decreasing.

Solution Using Key Idea 5, we first find the critical values of f. We have $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 2x - 1 = (3x - 1)(x + 1)$, so $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = -1$ and when $x = 1/3$. We see that f' is never undefined.

Since an interval was not specified for us to consider, we consider the entire domain of f which is $(-\infty, \infty)$. We thus break the whole real line into three subintervals based on the two critical values we just found: $(-\infty, -1)$, $(-1, 1/3)$ and $(1/3, \infty)$. This is shown in the following sign chart.



We now pick a value p in each subinterval and find the sign of $f'(p)$. All we care about is the sign, so we do not actually have to fully compute $f'(p)$; pick "nice" values that make this simple.

Subinterval 1, $(-\infty, -1)$: We (arbitrarily) pick $p = -2$. We can compute $f'(-2)$ directly: $f'(-2) = 3(-2)^2 + 2(-2) - 1 = 7 > 0$. We conclude that f is increasing on $(-\infty, -1)$.

Note we can arrive at the same conclusion without computation. For instance, we could choose $p = -100$. The first term in $f'(-100)$, i.e., $3(-100)^2$ is clearly positive and very large. The other terms are small in comparison, so we know $f'(-100) > 0$. All we need is the sign.

Subinterval 2, $(-1, 1/3)$: We pick $p = 0$ since that value seems easy to deal with and note that $f'(0) = -1 < 0$. We conclude f is decreasing on $(-1, 1/3)$.

Notes:

Subinterval 3, $(1/3, \infty)$: Pick an arbitrarily large value for $p > 1/3$ and note that $f'(p) = 3p^2 + 2p - 1 > 0$. We conclude that f is increasing on $(1/3, \infty)$ and use all of our information to complete our sign chart.

x		-1		$\frac{1}{3}$	
f'	$+$		$-$		$+$
f	incr		decr		incr

We can verify our calculations by considering Figure 3.17, where f is graphed. The graph also presents f'; note how $f' > 0$ when f is increasing and $f' < 0$ when f is decreasing.

One is justified in wondering why so much work is done when the graph seems to make the intervals very clear. We give three reasons why the above work is worthwhile.

First, the points at which f switches from increasing to decreasing are not precisely known given a graph. The graph shows us something significant happens near $x = -1$ and $x = 0.3$, but we cannot determine exactly where from the graph.

One could argue that just finding critical values is important; once we know the significant points are $x = -1$ and $x = 1/3$, the graph shows the increasing/decreasing traits just fine. That is true. However, the technique prescribed here helps reinforce the relationship between increasing/decreasing and the sign of f'. Once mastery of this concept (and several others) is obtained, one finds that either (a) just the critical points are computed and the graph shows all else that is desired, or (b) a graph is never produced, because determining increasing/decreasing using f' is straightforward and the graph is unnecessary. So our second reason why the above work is worthwhile is this: once mastery of a subject is gained, one has *options* for finding needed information. We are working to develop mastery.

Finally, our third reason: many problems we face "in the real world" are very complex. Solutions are tractable only through the use of computers to do many calculations for us. Computers do not solve problems "on their own," however; they need to be taught (i.e., *programmed*) to do the right things. It would be beneficial to give a function to a computer and have it return maximum and minimum values, intervals on which the function is increasing and decreasing, the locations of relative maxima, etc. The work that we are doing here is easily programmable. It is hard to teach a computer to "look at the graph and see if it is going up or down." It is easy to teach a computer to "determine if a number is greater than or less than 0."

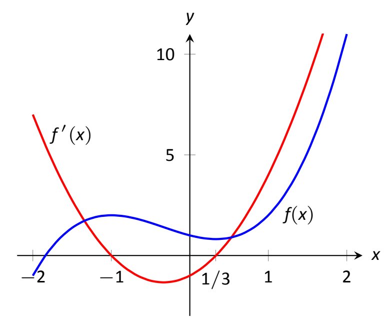


Figure 3.17: A graph of $f(x)$ in Example 3.3.1, showing where f is increasing and decreasing.

Notes:

In Section 3.1 we learned the definition of relative maxima and minima and found that they occur at critical points. We are now learning that functions can switch from increasing to decreasing (and vice–versa) at critical points. This new understanding of increasing and decreasing creates a great method of determining whether a critical point corresponds to a maximum, minimum, or neither. Imagine a function increasing until a critical point at $x = c$, after which it decreases. A quick sketch helps confirm that $f(c)$ must be a relative maximum. A similar statement can be made for relative minimums, see Figure 3.18. We formalize this concept in a theorem.

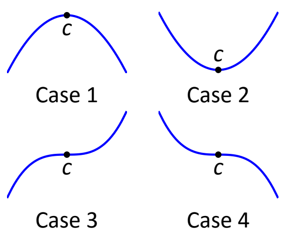


Figure 3.18: The four cases of Theorem 27

Theorem 27 First Derivative Test
Let f be differentiable on I and let c be a critical number in I.

1. If the sign of f' switches from positive to negative at c, then $f(c)$ is a relative maximum of f.
2. If the sign of f' switches from negative to positive at c, then $f(c)$ is a relative minimum of f.
3. If the sign of f' is positive before and after c, then $f(c)$ is not a relative extrema of f.
4. If the sign of f' is negative before and after c, then $f(c)$ is not a relative extrema of f.

Example 3.3.2 Using the First Derivative Test
Find the intervals on which f is increasing and decreasing, and use the First Derivative Test to determine the relative extrema of f, where

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2+3}{x-1}.$$

Solution We start by noting the domain of f: $(-\infty, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$. Key Idea 5 describes how to find intervals where f is increasing and decreasing *when the domain of f is an interval.* Since the domain of f in this example is the union of two intervals, we apply the techniques of Key Idea 5 to both intervals of the domain of f.

Since f is not defined at $x = 1$, the increasing/decreasing nature of f could switch at this value. We do not formally consider $x = 1$ to be a critical value of f, but we will include it in our list of critical values that we find next.

Notes:

Using the Quotient Rule, we find

$$f'(x) = \frac{x^2 - 2x - 3}{(x-1)^2}.$$

We need to find the critical values of f; we want to know when $f'(x) = 0$ and when f' is not defined. That latter is straightforward: when the denominator of $f'(x)$ is 0, f' is undefined. That occurs when $x = 1$, which we've already recognized as an important value.

$f'(x) = 0$ when the numerator of $f'(x)$ is 0. That occurs when $x^2 - 2x - 3 = (x-3)(x+1) = 0$; i.e., when $x = -1, 3$.

We have found that f has two critical numbers, $x = -1, 3$, and at $x = 1$ something important might also happen. These three numbers divide the real number line into 4 subintervals:

$$(-\infty, -1), \quad (-1, 1), \quad (1, 3) \quad \text{and} \quad (3, \infty).$$

Pick a number p from each subinterval and test the sign of f' at p to determine whether f is increasing or decreasing on that interval. Again, we do well to avoid complicated computations; notice that the denominator of f' is *always* positive so we can ignore it during our work.

Interval 1, $(-\infty, -1)$: Choosing a very small number (i.e., a negative number with a large magnitude) p returns $p^2 - 2p - 3$ in the numerator of f'; that will be positive. Hence f is increasing on $(-\infty, -1)$.

Interval 2, $(-1, 1)$: Choosing 0 seems simple: $f'(0) = -3 < 0$. We conclude f is decreasing on $(-1, 1)$.

Interval 3, $(1, 3)$: Choosing 2 seems simple: $f'(2) = -3 < 0$. Again, f is decreasing.

Interval 4, $(3, \infty)$: Choosing a very large number p from this subinterval will give a positive numerator and (of course) a positive denominator. So f is increasing on $(3, \infty)$.

In summary, f is increasing on the set $(-\infty, -1) \cup (3, \infty)$ and is decreasing on the set $(-1, 1) \cup (1, 3)$. Since at $x = -1$, the sign of f' switched from positive to negative, Theorem 27 states that $f(-1)$ is a relative maximum of f. At $x = 3$, the sign of f' switched from negative to positive, meaning $f(3)$ is a relative minimum. At $x = 1$, f is not defined, so there is no relative extrema at $x = 1$.

Notes:

x		-1		1		3	
f'	$+$		$-$		$-$		$+$
f	incr	max	decr	U	decr	min	incr

Note: In our sign charts, we will use "U" to indicate that something is undefined.

This is summarized in the number line shown above. Also, Figure 3.19 shows a graph of f, confirming our calculations. This figure also shows f', again demonstrating that f is increasing when $f' > 0$ and decreasing when $f' < 0$.

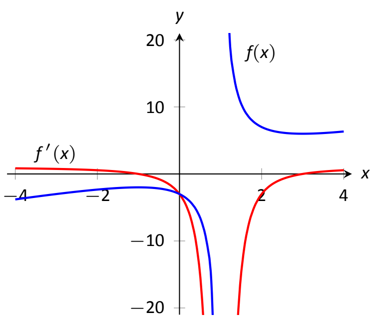


Figure 3.19: A graph of $f(x)$ in Example 3.3.2, showing where f is increasing and decreasing.

One is often tempted to think that functions always alternate "increasing, decreasing, increasing, decreasing,..." around critical values. Our previous example demonstrated that this is not always the case. While $x = 1$ was not technically a critical value, it was an important value we needed to consider. We found that f was decreasing on "both sides of $x = 1$."

Example 3.3.3 Using the First Derivative Test

Find the intervals on which $f(x) = x^{8/3} - 4x^{2/3}$ is increasing and decreasing and identify the relative extrema.

SOLUTION We again start with taking derivatives. Since we know we want to solve $f'(x) = 0$, we will do some algebra after taking derivatives.

$$\begin{aligned}
f(x) &= x^{\frac{8}{3}} - 4x^{\frac{2}{3}} \\
f'(x) &= \frac{8}{3}x^{\frac{5}{3}} - \frac{8}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}} \\
&= \frac{8}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}\left(x^{\frac{6}{3}} - 1\right) \\
&= \frac{8}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}(x^2 - 1) \\
&= \frac{8}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}(x-1)(x+1).
\end{aligned}$$

This derivation of f' shows that $f'(x) = 0$ when $x = \pm 1$ and f' is not defined when $x = 0$. Thus we have 3 critical values, breaking the number line into 4 subintervals: $(-\infty, -1)$, $(-1, 0)$, $(0, 1)$, and (1∞).

Interval 1, $(\infty, -1)$: We choose $p = -2$; we can easily verify that $f'(-2) < 0$. So f is decreasing on $(-\infty, -1)$.

Interval 2, $(-1, 0)$: Choose $p = -1/2$. Once more we practice finding the sign of $f'(p)$ without computing an actual value. We have $f'(p) = (8/3)p^{-1/3}(p -$

Notes:

$1)(p+1)$; find the sign of each of the three terms.

$$f'(p) = \frac{8}{3} \cdot \underbrace{p^{-\frac{1}{3}}}_{<0} \cdot \underbrace{(p-1)}_{<0} \underbrace{(p+1)}_{>0}.$$

We have a "negative $\times$ negative $\times$ positive" giving a positive number; f is increasing on $(-1, 0)$.

Interval 3, $(0, 1)$: We do a similar sign analysis as before, using p in $(0, 1)$.

$$f'(p) = \frac{8}{3} \cdot \underbrace{p^{-\frac{1}{3}}}_{>0} \cdot \underbrace{(p-1)}_{<0} \underbrace{(p+1)}_{>0}.$$

We have 2 positive factors and one negative factor; $f'(p) < 0$ and so f is decreasing on $(0, 1)$.

Interval 4, $(1, \infty)$: Similar work to that done for the other three intervals shows that $f'(x) > 0$ on $(1, \infty)$, so f is increasing on this interval. We can now put all this information into a chart.

x		-1		0		1	
f'	$-$		$+$		$-$		$+$
f	decr	min	incr	max	decr	min	incr

We conclude by stating that f is increasing on $(-1, 0) \cup (1, \infty)$ and decreasing on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (0, 1)$. The sign of f' changes from negative to positive around $x = -1$ and $x = 1$, meaning by Theorem 27 that $f(-1)$ and $f(1)$ are relative minima of f. As the sign of f' changes from positive to negative at $x = 0$, we have a relative maximum at $f(0)$. Figure 3.20 shows a graph of f, confirming our result. We also graph f', highlighting once more that f is increasing when $f' > 0$ and is decreasing when $f' < 0$.

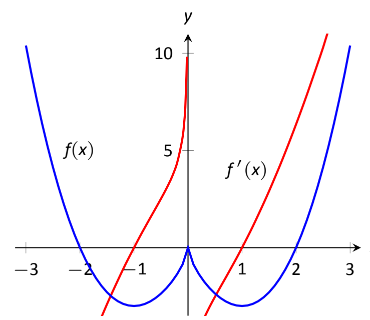


Figure 3.20: A graph of $f(x)$ in Example 3.3.3, showing where f is increasing and decreasing.

We examine one more example.

Example 3.3.4 Using the First Derivative Test with Trigonometry

Find the intervals on which $f(\theta) = \cos\theta - \cos^2\theta$ is increasing and decreasing and find the relative extrema on the interval $[0, 2\pi]$.

Solution We see that $f'(\theta) = -\sin\theta + 2\cos\theta\sin\theta = \sin\theta(2\cos\theta - 1)$. Therefore, $f'(\theta) = 0$ when $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \pi, \frac{5\pi}{3}, 2\pi$. This breaks our number line into four intervals.

Notes:

Interval 1, $(0, \frac{\pi}{3})$: We choose $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$, and see that $\sin\theta$ and $2\cos\theta - 1$ are both positive. Therefore, $f' > 0$.

Interval 2, $(\frac{\pi}{3}, \pi)$: When $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, $\sin\theta$ is positive, but $2\cos\theta - 1$ is negative. Therefore, $f' < 0$.

Interval 3, $(\pi, \frac{5\pi}{3})$: When $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$, $\sin\theta$ and $2\cos\theta - 1$ are both negative. Therefore, $f' > 0$.

Interval 4, $(\frac{5\pi}{3}, 2\pi)$: When $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{6}$, $\sin\theta < 0$ and $2\cos\theta - 1 > 0$ so that $f' < 0$. We summarize this information in a chart.

x	0		$\frac{\pi}{3}$		π		$\frac{5\pi}{3}$		2π
f'		$+$		$-$		$+$		$-$	
f		incr	max	decr	min	incr	max	decr	

This means that f is increasing on $(0, \frac{\pi}{3}) \cup (\pi, \frac{5\pi}{3})$ and decreasing on $(\frac{\pi}{3}, \pi) \cup (\frac{5\pi}{3}, 2\pi)$, so that the relative maxima are $f(\frac{\pi}{3})$ and $f(\frac{5\pi}{3})$ and the relative minimum is $f(\pi)$. (The values $f(0)$ and $f(2\pi)$ would also be relative minima, but relative extrema are not allowed to occur at the endpoints of an interval.)

We have seen how the first derivative of a function helps determine when the function is going "up" or "down." In the next section, we will see how the second derivative helps determine how the graph of a function curves.

Notes:

Exercises 3.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. In your own words describe what it means for a function to be increasing.

2. What does a decreasing function "look like"?

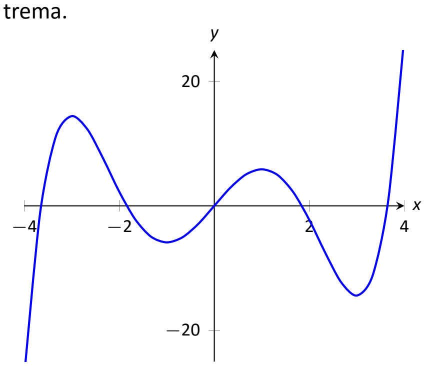
3. Sketch a graph of a function on $[0, 2]$ that is increasing but not strictly increasing.

4. Give an example of a function describing a situation where it is "bad" to be increasing and "good" to be decreasing.

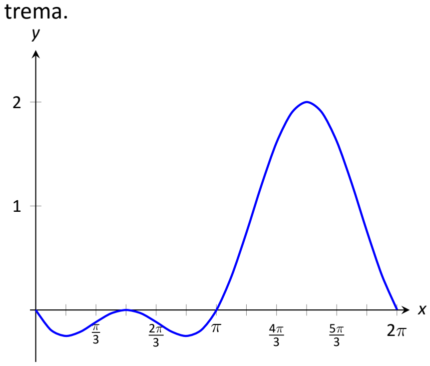
5. A function f has derivative $f'(x) = (\sin x + 2)e^{x^2+1}$, where $f'(x) > 1$ for all x. Is f increasing, decreasing, or can we not tell from the given information?

Problems

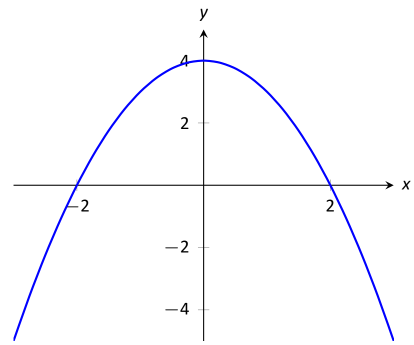
6. Given the graph of f, identify the intervals of increasing and decreasing as well as the x coordinates of the relative extrema.



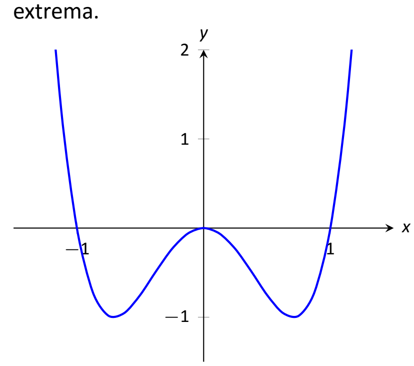
7. Given the graph of f, identify the intervals of increasing and decreasing as well as the x coordinates of the relative extrema.



8. Given the graph of f', identify the intervals of increasing and decreasing as well as the x coordinates of the relative extrema.



9. Given the graph of f', identify the intervals of increasing and decreasing as well as the x coordinates of the relative extrema.



In Exercises 10 – 17, a function $f(x)$ is given.

(a) Compute $f'(x)$.

(b) Graph f and f' on the same axes (using technology is permitted) and verify Theorem 26.

10. $f(x) = 2x + 3$

11. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 5$

12. $f(x) = \cos x$

13. $f(x) = \tan x$

14. $f(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + 7x - 1$

15. $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 + x - 1$

16. $f(x) = x^4 - 5x^2 + 4$

17. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 + 1}$

In Exercises 18 – 31, a function $f(x)$ is given.

(a) Give the domain of f.

(b) Find the critical numbers of f.

(c) Create a number line to determine the intervals on which f is increasing and decreasing.

(d) Use the First Derivative Test to determine whether each critical point is a relative maximum, minimum, or neither.

18. $f(x) = x^2 + 2x - 3$

19. $f(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 + 3$

20. $f(x) = 2x^3 + x^2 - x + 3$

21. $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 3x - 1$

22. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 - 2x + 2}$

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - 4}{x^2 - 1}$

24. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 2x - 8}$

25. $f(x) = \dfrac{(x-2)^{2/3}}{x}$

26. $f(x) = \sin x \cos x$ on $(-\pi, \pi)$.

27. $f(x) = x^5 - 5x$

28. $f(x) = x - 2\sin x$ on $0 \leq x \leq 3\pi$

29. $f(x) = \cos^2 x - 2\sin x$ on $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$

30. $f(x) = x\sqrt{x-3}$

31. $f(x) = (x^2 - 1)^3$

Review

32. Consider $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 5$ on $[-1, 2]$; find c guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

33. Consider $f(x) = \sin x$ on $[-\pi/2, \pi/2]$; find c guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

3.4 Concavity and the Second Derivative

Our study of "nice" functions continues. The previous section showed how the first derivative of a function, f', can relay important information about f. We now apply the same technique to f' itself, and learn what this tells us about f.

The key to studying f' is to consider its derivative, namely f'', which is the second derivative of f. When $f'' > 0$, f' is increasing. When $f'' < 0$, f' is decreasing. As with f, f' has relative maxima and minima where $f'' = 0$ or is undefined.

This section explores how knowing information about f'' gives information about f.

Concavity

We begin with a definition, then explore its meaning.

Note: We often state that "f is concave up" instead of "the graph of f is concave up" for simplicity.

Definition 17 Concave Up and Concave Down
Let f be differentiable on an interval I. The graph of f is **concave up** on I if f' is increasing. The graph of f is **concave down** on I if f' is decreasing. If f' is constant then the graph of f is said to have **no concavity**.

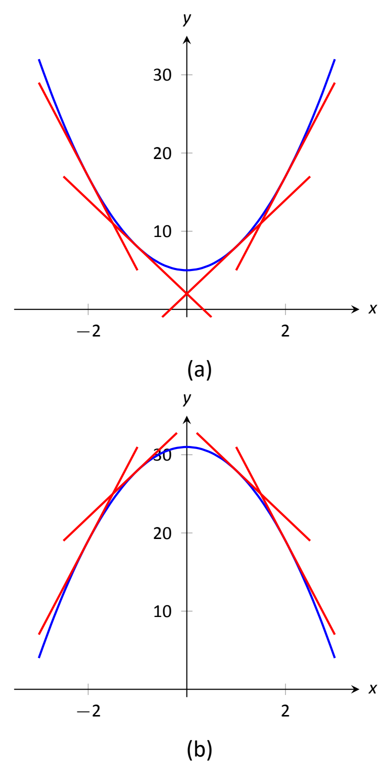


Figure 3.21: A function f with a graph that is (a) concave up and (b) concave down. Notice how the slopes of the tangent lines, when looking from left to right, are (a) increasing and (b) decreasing.

Geometrically,a function is concave up if its graph lies above its tangent lines, so that it curves upward. A function is concave down if its graph lies below its tangent lines, so that it curves downward.

The graph of a function f is concave up when f' is increasing. That means as one looks at a concave up graph from left to right, the slopes of the tangent lines will be increasing. Consider Figure 3.21(a), where a concave up graph is shown along with some tangent lines. Notice how the tangent line on the left is steep, downward, corresponding to a small value of f'. On the right, the tangent line is steep, upward, corresponding to a large value of f'.

If a function is decreasing and concave up, then its rate of decrease is slowing; it is "leveling off." If the function is increasing and concave up, then the *rate* of increase is increasing. The function is increasing at a faster and faster rate.

Now consider a function which is concave down. We essentially repeat the above paragraphs with slight variation.

The graph of a function f is concave down when f' is decreasing. That means as one looks at a concave down graph from left to right, the slopes of the tangent lines will be decreasing. Consider Figure 3.21(b), where a concave down graph is shown along with some tangent lines. Notice how the tangent line on the left

Notes:

is steep, upward, corresponding to a large value of f'. On the right, the tangent line is steep, downward, corresponding to a small value of f'.

If a function is increasing and concave down, then its rate of increase is slowing; it is "leveling off." If the function is decreasing and concave down, then the *rate* of decrease is decreasing. The function is decreasing at a faster and faster rate.

Note: A mnemonic for remembering what concave up/down means is: "Concave up is like a cup; concave down is like a frown." It is admittedly terrible, but it works.

Our definition of concave up and concave down is given in terms of when the first derivative is increasing or decreasing. We can apply the results of the previous section and to find intervals on which a graph is concave up or down. That is, we recognize that f' is increasing when $f'' > 0$, etc.

Theorem 28 Test for Concavity
Let f be twice differentiable on an interval I. The graph of f is concave up if $f'' > 0$ on I, and is concave down if $f'' < 0$ on I.

If knowing where a graph is concave up/down is important, it makes sense that the places where the graph changes from one to the other is also important. This leads us to a definition.

Definition 18 Point of Inflection
A **point of inflection** is a point on the graph of f at which the concavity of f changes.

Figure 3.22 shows a graph of a function with inflection points labeled.

If the concavity of f changes at a point $(c, f(c))$, then f' is changing from increasing to decreasing (or, decreasing to increasing) at $x = c$. That means that the sign of f'' is changing from positive to negative (or, negative to positive) at $x = c$. This leads to the following theorem.

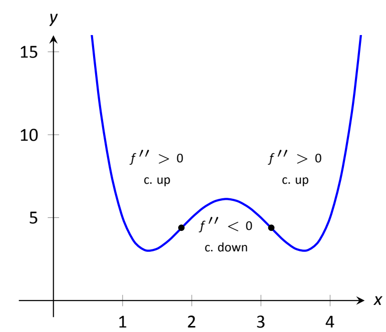


Figure 3.22: A graph of a function with its inflection points marked. The intervals where concave up/down are also indicated.

Theorem 29 Points of Inflection
If $(c, f(c))$ is a point of inflection on the graph of f, then either $f'' = 0$ or f'' is not defined at c.

We have identified the concepts of concavity and points of inflection. It is now time to practice using these concepts; given a function, we should be able to find its points of inflection and identify intervals on which it is concave up or

Notes:

down. We do so in the following examples.

Watch the video:
Finding Local Maximums/Minimums — Second Derivative Test at
https://youtu.be/QtXCIxB6kW8

Example 3.4.1 Finding intervals of concave up/down, inflection points

Let $f(x) = x^3 - 3x + 1$. Find the inflection points of f and the intervals on which it is concave up/down.

Solution We start by finding $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 3$ and $f''(x) = 6x$. To find the inflection points, we use Theorem 29 and find where $f''(x) = 0$ or where f'' is undefined. We find f'' is always defined, and is 0 only when $x = 0$. So the point $(0, 1)$ is the only possible point of inflection.

This possible inflection point divides the real line into two intervals, $(-\infty, 0)$ and $(0, \infty)$. We use a process similar to the one used in the previous section to determine increasing/decreasing. Pick any $c < 0$; $f''(c) < 0$ so f is concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$. Pick any $c > 0$; $f''(c) > 0$ so f is concave up on $(0, \infty)$. Since the concavity changes at $x = 0$, the point $(0, 1)$ is an inflection point.

The number line in Figure 3.23(a) illustrates the process of determining concavity (to save space, we will abbreviate "concave down", "concave up", and "inflection point" to "CD", "CU", and "IP", respectively). Figure 3.23(b) shows a graph of f and f'', confirming our results. Notice how f is concave down precisely when $f''(x) < 0$ and concave up when $f''(x) > 0$.

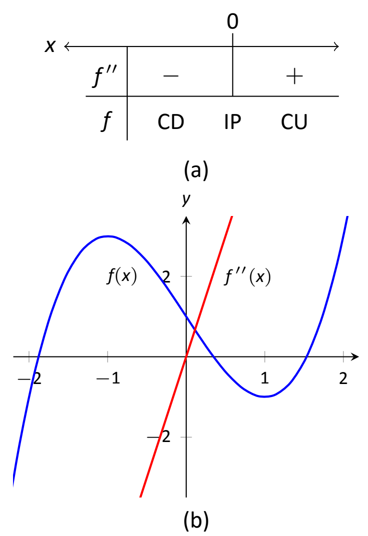


Figure 3.23: A number line determining the concavity of f and a graph of f used in Example 3.4.1.

Example 3.4.2 Finding intervals of concave up/down, inflection points

Let $f(x) = x/(x^2 - 1)$. Find the inflection points of f and the intervals on which it is concave up/down.

Solution The first thing we see is that f itself is not defined at $x = \pm 1$, having a domain of $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$. Since the domain of f is the union of three intervals, it makes sense that the concavity of f could switch across intervals. We cannot say that f has points of inflection at $x = \pm 1$ as they are not part of the domain, but we must still consider these x-values to be important and will include them in our number line.

Notes:

We need to find f' and f''. Using the Quotient Rule and simplifying, we find

$$f'(x) = \frac{-(1+x^2)}{(x^2-1)^2} \quad \text{and} \quad f''(x) = \frac{2x(x^2+3)}{(x^2-1)^3}.$$

To find the possible points of inflection, we seek to find where $f''(x) = 0$ and where f'' is not defined. Solving $f''(x) = 0$ reduces to solving $2x(x^2+3) = 0$; we find $x = 0$. We find that f'' is not defined when $x = \pm 1$, for then the denominator of f'' is 0 (of course, f is not defined at these points either).

The important x-values at which concavity might switch are $x = -1$, $x = 0$ and $x = 1$, which split the number line into four intervals as shown in our sign chart below. We determine the concavity on each. Keep in mind that all we are concerned with is the *sign* of f'' on the interval.

Interval 1, $(-\infty, -1)$: Select a number c in this interval with a large magnitude (for instance, $c = -100$). The denominator of $f''(x)$ will be positive. In the numerator, the (c^2+3) will be positive and the $2c$ term will be negative. Thus the numerator is negative and $f''(c)$ is negative. We conclude f is concave down on $(-\infty, -1)$.

Interval 2, $(-1, 0)$: For any number c in this interval, the term $2c$ in the numerator will be negative, the term (c^2+3) in the numerator will be positive, and the term $(c^2-1)^3$ in the denominator will be negative. Thus $f''(c) > 0$ and f is concave up on this interval.

Interval 3, $(0, 1)$: Any number c in this interval will be positive and "small." Thus the numerator is positive while the denominator is negative. Thus $f''(c) < 0$ and f is concave down on this interval.

Interval 4, $(1, \infty)$: Choose a large value for c. It is evident that $f''(c) > 0$, so we conclude that f is concave up on $(1, \infty)$.

x		-1		0		1	
f''	$-$		$+$		$-$		$+$
f	CD	U	CU	IP	CD	U	CU

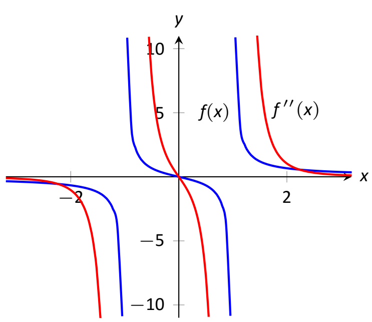


Figure 3.24: A graph of $f(x)$ and $f''(x)$ in Example 3.4.2.

We conclude that f is concave up on $(-1, 0) \cup (1, \infty)$ and concave down on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (0, 1)$. There is only one point of inflection, $(0, 0)$, as f is not defined at $x = \pm 1$. Our work is confirmed by the graph of f in Figure 3.24. Notice how f is concave up whenever f'' is positive, and concave down when f'' is negative.

Notes:

Recall that relative maxima and minima of f are found at critical points of f; that is, they are found when $f'(x) = 0$ or when f' is undefined. Likewise, the relative maxima and minima of f' are found when $f''(x) = 0$ or when f'' is undefined; note that these are the inflection points of f.

What does a "relative maximum of f'" *mean*? The derivative measures the rate of change of f; maximizing f' means finding the where f is increasing the most – where f has the steepest tangent line. A similar statement can be made for minimizing f'; it corresponds to where f has the steepest negatively–sloped tangent line.

We utilize this concept in the next example.

Example 3.4.3 Understanding inflection points

The sales of a certain product over a three-year span are modeled by $S(t) = t^4 - 8t^2 + 20$, where t is the time in years, shown in Figure 3.25. Over the first two years, sales are decreasing. Find the point at which sales are decreasing at their greatest rate.

Solution We want to maximize the rate of decrease, which is to say, we want to find where S' has a minimum. To do this, we find where S'' is 0. We find $S'(t) = 4t^3 - 16t$ and $S''(t) = 12t^2 - 16$. Setting $S''(t) = 0$ and solving, we get $t = 2/\sqrt{3} \approx 1.16$ (we ignore the negative value of t since it does not lie in the domain of our function S).

t	0		$\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}} \approx 1.2$	
f''		$-$		$+$
f		CD	IP	CU

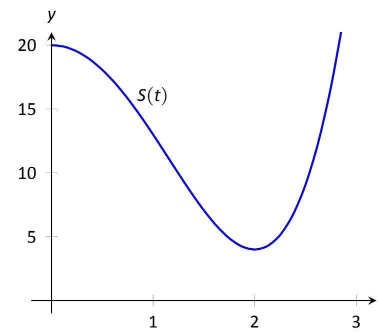


Figure 3.25: A graph of $S(t)$ in Example 3.4.3, modeling the sale of a product over time.

This is both the inflection point and the point of maximum decrease. This is the point at which things first start looking up for the company. After the inflection point, it will still take some time before sales start to increase, but at least sales are not decreasing quite as quickly as they had been.

A graph of $S(t)$ and $S'(t)$ is given in Figure 3.26. When $S'(t) < 0$, sales are decreasing; note how at $t \approx 1.16$, $S'(t)$ is minimized. That is, sales are decreasing at the fastest rate at $t \approx 1.16$. On the interval of $(1.16, 2)$, S is decreasing but concave up, so the decline in sales is "leveling off."

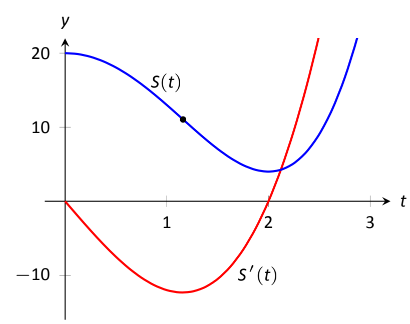


Figure 3.26: A graph of $S(t)$ in Example 3.4.3 along with $S'(t)$.

Not every critical point corresponds to a relative extrema; $f(x) = x^3$ has a critical point at $(0, 0)$ but no relative maximum or minimum. Likewise, just because $f''(x) = 0$ we cannot conclude concavity changes at that point. We were

Notes:

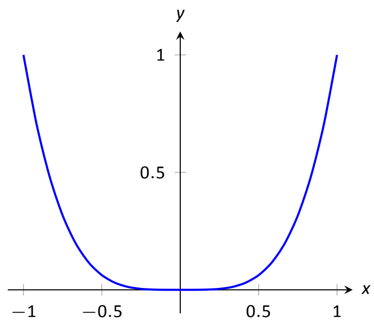


Figure 3.27: A graph of $f(x) = x^4$. Clearly f is always concave up, despite the fact that $f''(x) = 0$ when $x = 0$. It this example, the *possible* point of inflection $(0, 0)$ is not a point of inflection.

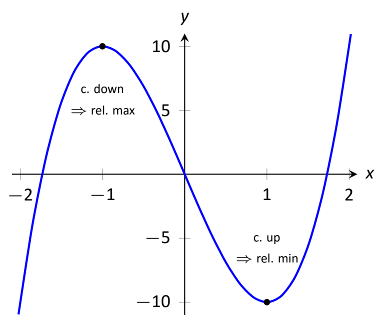


Figure 3.28: Demonstrating the fact that relative maxima occur when the graph is concave down and relative minima occur when the graph is concave up.

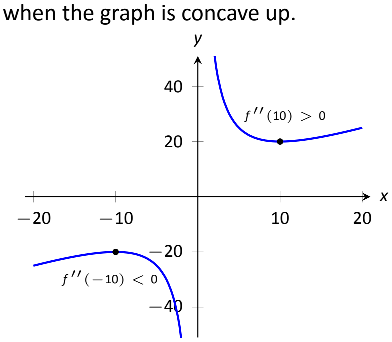


Figure 3.29: A graph of $f(x)$ in Example 3.4.4. The second derivative is evaluated at each critical point. When the graph is concave up, the critical point represents a local minimum; when the graph is concave down, the critical point represents a local maximum.

careful before to use terminology "*possible* point of inflection" since we needed to check to see if the concavity changed. The canonical example of $f''(x) = 0$ *without* concavity changing is $f(x) = x^4$. At $x = 0$, $f''(x) = 0$ but f is always concave up, as shown in Figure 3.27.

The Second Derivative Test

The first derivative of a function gave us a test to find if a critical value corresponded to a relative maximum, minimum, or neither. The second derivative gives us another way to test if a critical point is a local maximum or minimum. The following theorem officially states something that is intuitive: if a critical value occurs in a region where a function f is concave up, then that critical value must correspond to a relative minimum of f, etc. See Figure 3.28 for a visualization of this.

Theorem 30 The Second Derivative Test
Let c be a critical value of f where $f''(c)$ is defined.

1. If $f''(c) > 0$, then f has a local minimum at $(c, f(c))$.
2. If $f''(c) < 0$, then f has a local maximum at $(c, f(c))$.

Note that if $f''(c) = 0$, then the Second Derivative Test is inconclusive. The Second Derivative Test relates to the First Derivative Test in the following way. If $f''(c) > 0$, then the graph is concave up at a critical point c and f' itself is growing. Since $f'(c) = 0$ and f' is growing at c, then it must go from negative to positive at c. This means the function goes from decreasing to increasing, indicating a local minimum at c.

Example 3.4.4 Using the Second Derivative Test
Let $f(x) = 100/x + x$. Find the critical points of f and use the Second Derivative Test to label them as relative maxima or minima.

Solution We find $f'(x) = -100/x^2 + 1$ and $f''(x) = 200/x^3$. We set $f'(x) = 0$ and solve for x to find the critical values (note that f' is not defined at $x = 0$, but neither is f so this is not a critical value.) We find the critical values are $x = \pm 10$. Evaluating f'' at $x = 10$ gives $0.1 > 0$, so there is a local minimum at $x = 10$. Evaluating $f''(-10) = -0.1 < 0$, determining a relative maximum at $x = -10$. These results are confirmed in Figure 3.29.

We have been learning how the first and second derivatives of a function

Notes:

relate information about the graph of that function. We have found intervals of increasing and decreasing, intervals where the graph is concave up and down, along with the locations of relative extrema and inflection points. In chapter 1 we saw how limits explained asymptotic behavior. In the next section we combine all of this information to produce accurate sketches of functions.

Notes:

Exercises 3.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Sketch a graph of a function $f(x)$ that is concave up on $(0,1)$ and is concave down on $(1,2)$.

2. Sketch a graph of a function $f(x)$ that is:

   (a) Increasing, concave up on $(0,1)$,

   (b) increasing, concave down on $(1,2)$,

   (c) decreasing, concave down on $(2,3)$ and

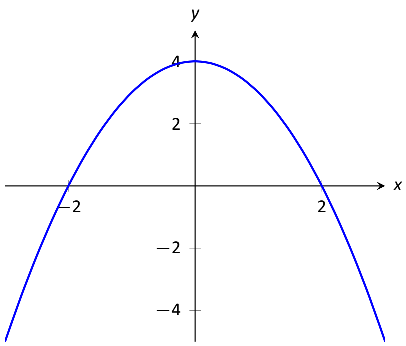
   (d) increasing, concave down on $(3,4)$.

3. Is is possible for a function to be increasing and concave down on $(0,\infty)$ with a horizontal asymptote of $y=1$? If so, give a sketch of such a function.

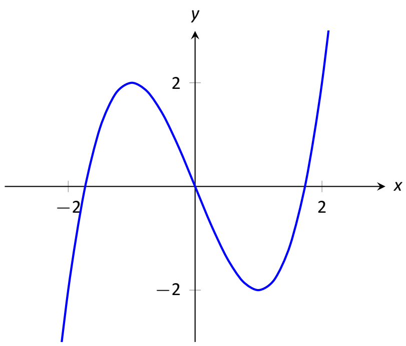
4. Is is possible for a function to be increasing and concave up on $(0,\infty)$ with a horizontal asymptote of $y=1$? If so, give a sketch of such a function.

Problems

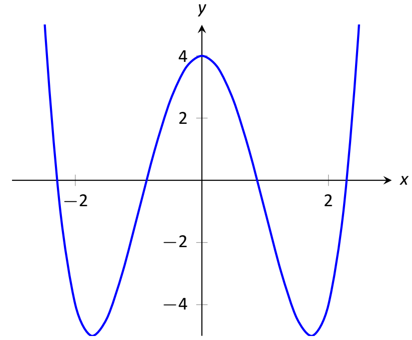
5. Given the graph of f'', identify the concavity of f and its inflection points.



6. Given the graph of f', identify the concavity of f and its inflection points.



7. Given the graph of f, identify the concavity of f and its inflection points.



In Exercises 8 – 18, a function $f(x)$ is given.

(a) Compute $f''(x)$.

(b) Graph f and f'' on the same axes (using technology is permitted) and verify Theorem 28.

8. $f(x)=-7x+3$

9. $f(x)=-4x^2+3x-8$

10. $f(x)=4x^2+3x-8$

11. $f(x)=x^3-3x^2+x-1$

12. $f(x)=-x^3+x^2-2x+5$

13. $f(x)=\cos x$

14. $f(x)=\sin x$

15. $f(x)=\tan x$

16. $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2+1}$

17. $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x}$

18. $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}$

In Exercises 19 – 33, a function $f(x)$ is given.

(a) Find the possible points of inflection of f.

(b) Create a number line to determine the intervals on which f is concave up or concave down.

(c) Find the critical points of f and use the Second Derivative Test, when possible, to determine the relative extrema.

(d) Find the x values where $f'(x)$ has a relative maximum or minimum.

19. $f(x) = x^2 - 2x + 1$

20. $f(x) = -x^2 - 5x + 7$

21. $f(x) = x^3 - x + 1$

22. $f(x) = 2x^3 - 3x^2 + 9x + 5$

23. $f(x) = \dfrac{x^4}{4} + \dfrac{x^3}{3} - 2x + 3$

24. $f(x) = -3x^4 + 8x^3 + 6x^2 - 24x + 2$

25. $f(x) = x^4 - 4x^3 + 6x^2 - 4x + 1$

26. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{x^2 + 1}$

27. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{x^2 - 1}$

28. $f(x) = \sin x + \cos x$ on $(-\pi, \pi)$

29. $f(x) = x^2 e^x$

30. $f(x) = x^2 \ln x$

31. $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$

32. $f(x) = x\sqrt{x + 3}$

33. $f(x) = \cos^2 x - 2\sin x$ on $(0, 2\pi)$

3.5 Curve Sketching

We have been learning how we can understand the behavior of a function based on its first and second derivatives. While we have been treating the properties of a function separately (increasing and decreasing, concave up and concave down, etc.), we combine them here to produce an accurate graph of the function without plotting lots of extraneous points.

Why bother? Graphing utilities are very accessible, whether on a computer, a hand–held calculator, or a smartphone. These resources are usually very fast and accurate. We will see that our method is not particularly fast – it will require time (but it is not *hard*). So again: why bother?

We are attempting to understand the behavior of a function f based on the information given by its derivatives. While all of a function's derivatives relay information about it, it turns out that "most" of the behavior we care about is explained by f' and f''. Understanding the interactions between the graph of f and f' and f'' is important and is illustrated in Figure 3.30. To gain this understanding, one might argue that all that is needed is to look at lots of graphs. This is true to a point, but is somewhat similar to stating that one understands how an engine works after looking only at pictures. It is true that the basic ideas will be conveyed, but "hands–on" access increases understanding.

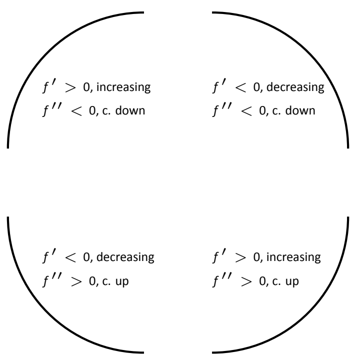


Figure 3.30: Demonstrating the 4 ways that concavity interacts with increasing/decreasing, along with the relationships with the first and second derivatives.

The following Key Idea summarizes what we have learned so far that is applicable to sketching graphs of functions and gives a framework for putting that information together. It is followed by several examples.

Key Idea 6 Curve Sketching

To produce an accurate sketch a given function f, consider the following steps.

1. Find the domain of f. Generally, we assume that the domain is the entire real line then find restrictions, such as where a denominator is 0 or where negatives appear under the radical.

2. Find the location of any vertical asymptotes of f (usually done in conjunction with the previous step).

3. Find the x and y-intercepts of f, and any symmetry.

(continued)

Notes:

Key Idea 6 Curve Sketching — Continued

4. Consider the limits $\lim\limits_{x\to-\infty} f(x)$ and $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x)$ to determine the end behavior of the function.
5. Find the critical values of f.
6. Find the possible points of inflection of f.
7. Create a number line that includes all critical points, possible points of inflection, and locations of vertical asymptotes. For each interval created, determine whether f is increasing or decreasing, concave up or down.
8. Evaluate f at each critical point and possible point of inflection. Plot these points on a set of axes. Connect these points with curves exhibiting the proper concavity. Sketch asymptotes and x and y-intercepts where applicable.

Watch the video:
Summary of Curve Sketching — Example 2, Part 1 of 4 at
`https://youtu.be/DMYUsv8ZaoY`

Example 3.5.1 Curve sketching

Use Key Idea 6 to sketch $f(x) = 3x^3 - 10x^2 + 4x + 10$.

SOLUTION We follow the steps outlined in the Key Idea.

1. The domain of f is the entire real line; there are no values x for which $f(x)$ is not defined.
2. There are no vertical asymptotes.
3. We see that $f(0) = 10$, and f does not appear to factor easily (so we skip finding the roots). It has no symmetry.

Notes:

4. We determine the end behavior using limits as x approaches $\pm$infinity.
$$\lim_{x\to-\infty} f(x) = -\infty \qquad \lim_{x\to\infty} f(x) = \infty.$$
We do not have any horizontal asymptotes.

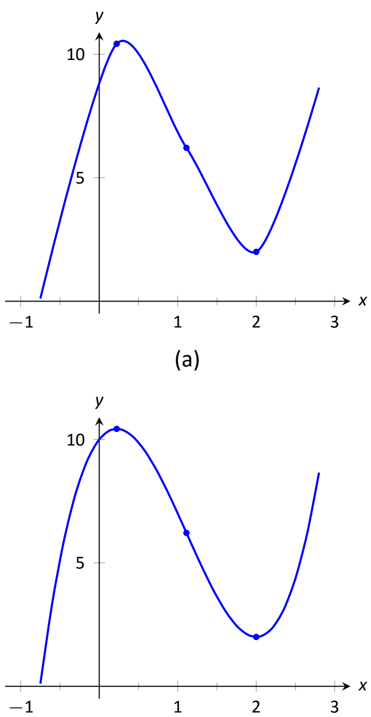
5. Find the critical values of f. We compute $f'(x) = 9x^2 - 20x + 4 = (9x - 2)(x - 2)$, so that $x = \frac{2}{9}, 2$.

6. Find the possible points of inflection of f. We see $f''(x) = 18x - 20$, so that
$$f''(x) = 0 \Rightarrow x = 10/9 \approx 1.111.$$

7. We place the values $x = \frac{2}{9}, \frac{10}{9}, 2$ on a number line. We mark each subinterval as increasing or decreasing, concave up or down, using the techniques used in Sections 3.3 and 3.4.

x		$\frac{2}{9} \approx 0.2$		$\frac{10}{9} \approx 1.1$		2	
f'	$+$		$-$		$-$		$+$
f''	$-$		$-$		$+$		$+$
f	incr CD	max	decr CD	IP	decr CU	min	incr CU

8. We plot the appropriate points on axes as shown in Figure 3.31(a) and connect the points with the proper concavity. Our curve crosses the y axis at $y = 10$ and crosses the x axis near $x = -0.75$. In Figure 3.31(b) we show a graph of f drawn with a computer program, verifying the accuracy of our sketch.



(a)

(b)

Figure 3.31: Sketching f in Example 3.5.1.

Example 3.5.2 Curve sketching

Sketch $f(x) = \dfrac{x^2 - x - 2}{x^2 - x - 6}$.

SOLUTION We again follow the steps outlined in Key Idea 6.

1. In determining the domain, we assume it is all real numbers and look for restrictions. We find that at $x = -2$ and $x = 3$, $f(x)$ is not defined. So the domain of f is $D = \{\text{real numbers } x \mid x \neq -2, 3\}$.

Notes:

2. The vertical asymptotes of f are at $x = -2$ and $x = 3$, the places where f is undefined. We see that $\lim\limits_{x\to -2^-} f(x) = \infty$, $\lim\limits_{x\to -2^+} f(x) = -\infty$, $\lim\limits_{x\to 3^-} f(x) = -\infty$, and $\lim\limits_{x\to 3^+} f(x) = \infty$.

3. We see that $f(0) = \frac{1}{3}$ and that $f(x) = 0$ when $0 = x^2 - x - 2 = (x-2)(x+1)$ so that $x = -1, 2$. There is no symmetry.

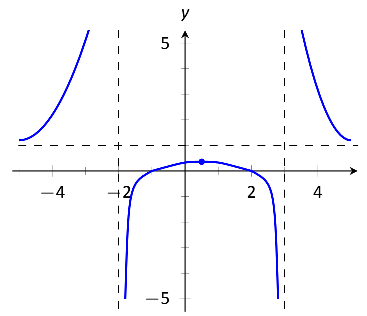
4. There is a horizontal asymptote of $y = 1$, as $\lim\limits_{x\to -\infty} f(x) = 1$ and $\lim\limits_{x\to\infty} f(x) = 1$.

5. To find the critical values of f, we first find $f'(x)$. Using the Quotient Rule, we find
$$f'(x) = \frac{-8x+4}{(x^2+x-6)^2} = \frac{-8x+4}{(x-3)^2(x+2)^2}.$$
$f'(x) = 0$ when $x = 1/2$, and f' is undefined when $x = -2, 3$. Since f' is undefined only when f is, these are not critical values. The only critical value is $x = 1/2$.

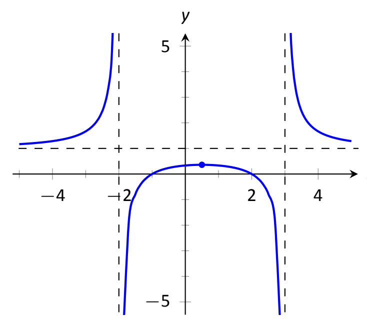
6. To find the possible points of inflection, we find $f''(x)$, again employing the Quotient Rule:
$$f''(x) = \frac{24x^2 - 24x + 56}{(x-3)^3(x+2)^3}.$$
We find that $f''(x)$ is never 0 (setting the numerator equal to 0 and solving for x, we find the only roots to this quadratic are imaginary) and f'' is undefined when $x = -2, 3$. Thus concavity will possibly only change at $x = -2$ and $x = 3$ (although these are not inflection points, since f is not defined there).

7. We place the values $x = 1/2$, $x = -2$ and $x = 3$ on a number line. We mark in each interval whether f is increasing or decreasing, concave up or down. We see that f has a relative maximum at $x = 1/2$; concavity changes only at the vertical asymptotes.

x		-2		$\frac{1}{2}$		3	
f'	$+$		$+$		$-$		$-$
f''	$+$		$-$		$-$		$+$
f	incr CU	U	incr CD	max	decr CD	U	decr CU



(a)



(b)

Figure 3.32: Sketching f in Example 3.5.2.

Notes:

8. In Figure 3.32(a), we plot the points from the number line on a set of axes and connect the points with the appropriate concavity. We also show f crossing the x axis at $x=-1$ and $x=2$. Figure 3.32(b) shows a computer generated graph of f, which verifies the accuracy of our sketch.

Example 3.5.3 Curve sketching

Sketch $f(x)=\dfrac{5(x-2)(x+1)}{x^2+2x+4}$.

Solution We again follow Key Idea 6.

1. We assume that the domain of f is all real numbers and consider restrictions. The only restrictions come when the denominator is 0, but this never occurs. Therefore the domain of f is all real numbers, $\mathbb{R}$.

2. There are no vertical asymptotes.

3. We see that $f(0)=-\dfrac{5}{2}$ and that $f(x)=0$ when $x=-1,2$.

4. We have a horizontal asymptote of $y=5$, as
$$\lim_{x\to\pm\infty} f(x)=\lim_{x\to\pm\infty}\frac{5(1-\frac{2}{x})(1+\frac{1}{x})}{1+\frac{2}{x}+\frac{4}{x^2}}=5.$$

5. We find the critical values of f by setting $f'(x)=0$ and solving for x. We find
$$f'(x)=\frac{15x(x+4)}{(x^2+2x+4)^2}\quad\Rightarrow\quad f'(x)=0 \text{ when } x=-4,0.$$

6. We find the possible points of inflection by solving $f''(x)=0$ for x. We find
$$f''(x)=-\frac{30x^3+180x^2-240}{(x^2+2x+4)^3}.$$
The cubic in the numerator does not factor very "nicely." We instead approximate the roots at $x=-5.759$, $x=-1.305$ and $x=1.064$.

7. We place the critical points and possible inflection points on a number line and mark each interval as increasing/decreasing, concave up/down appropriately.

Notes:

x		-5.8		-4		-1.3		0		1.1	
f'	$+$		$+$		$-$		$-$		$+$		$+$
f''	$+$		$-$		$-$		$+$		$+$		$-$
f	incr CU	IP	incr CD	max	decr CD	IP	decr CU	min	incr CU	IP	incr CD

8. In Figure 3.33(a) we plot the significant points from the number line as well as the two roots of f, $x = -1$ and $x = 2$, and connect the points with the appropriate concavity. Figure 3.33(b) shows a computer generated graph of f, affirming our results (but the top left was slightly off).

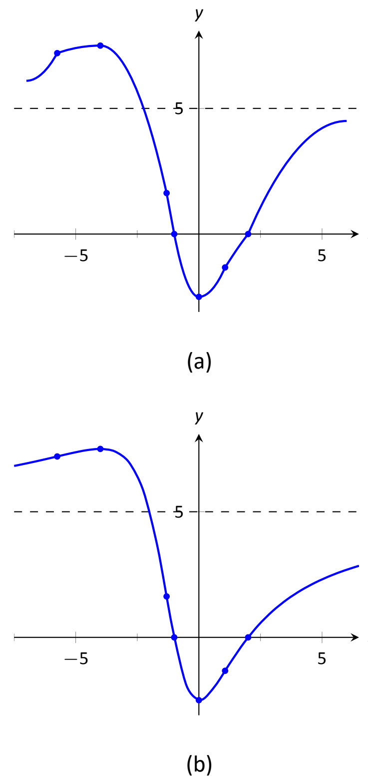


Figure 3.33: Sketching f in Example 3.5.3.

In each of our examples, we found a few, significant points on the graph of f that corresponded to changes in increasing/decreasing or concavity. We connected these points with curves, and finished by showing a very accurate, computer generated graph.

Why are computer graphics so good? It is not because computers are "smarter" than we are. Rather, it is largely because computers are much faster at computing than we are. In general, computers graph functions much like most students do when first learning to draw graphs: they plot equally spaced points, then connect the dots using lines. By using lots of points, the connecting lines are short and the graph looks smooth.

This does a fine job of graphing in most cases (in fact, this is the method used for many graphs in this text). However, in regions where the graph is very "curvy," this can generate noticeable sharp edges on the graph unless a large number of points are used. High quality computer algebra systems, such as *Mathematica*, use special algorithms to plot lots of points only where the graph is "curvy."

In Figure 3.34, a graph of $y = \sin x$ is given, generated by *Mathematica*. The small points represent each of the places *Mathematica* sampled the function. Notice how at the "bends" of $\sin x$, lots of points are used; where $\sin x$ is relatively straight, fewer points are used. (Many points are also used at the endpoints to ensure the "end behavior" is accurate.)

How does *Mathematica* know where the graph is "curvy"? Calculus. When we study *curvature* in a later chapter, we will see how the first and second derivatives of a function work together to provide a measurement of "curviness." *Mathematica* employs algorithms to determine regions of "high curvature" and plots extra points there.

Again, the goal of this section is not "How to graph a function when there is no computer to help." Rather, the goal is "Understand that the shape of the graph of a function is largely determined by understanding the behavior of the

Notes:

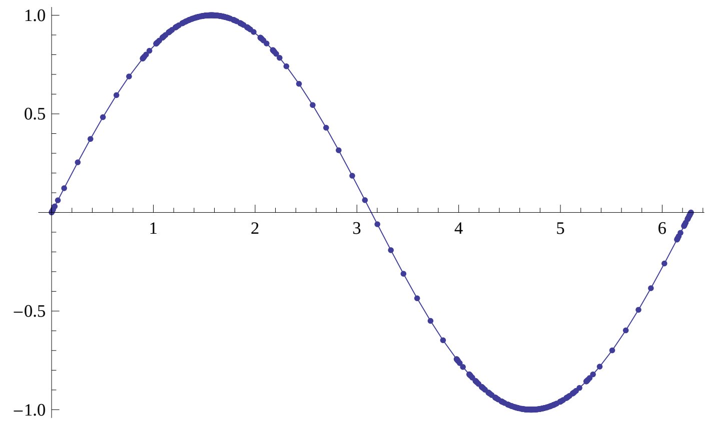


Figure 3.34: A graph of $y = \sin x$ generated by *Mathematica*.

function at a few key places." In Example 3.5.3, we were able to accurately sketch a complicated graph using only 5 points and knowledge of asymptotes!

There are many applications of our understanding of derivatives beyond curve sketching. The next chapter explores some of these applications, demonstrating just a few kinds of problems that can be solved with a basic knowledge of differentiation.

Notes:

Exercises 3.5 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Why is sketching curves by hand beneficial even though technology is readily available?

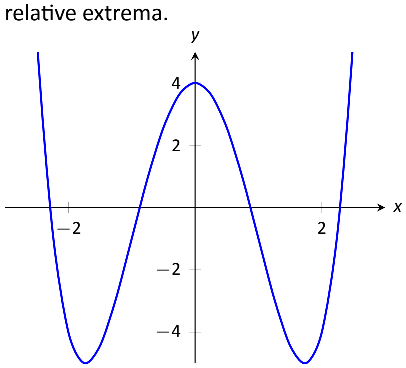
2. T/F: When sketching graphs of functions, it is useful to find the critical points.

3. T/F: When sketching graphs of functions, it is useful to find the possible points of inflection.

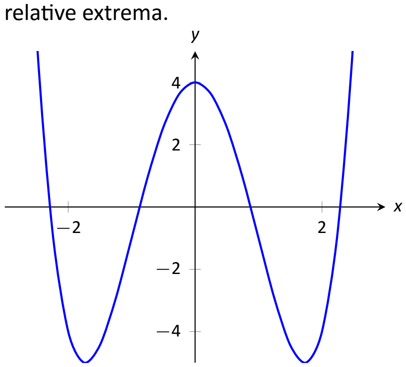
4. T/F: When sketching graphs of functions, it is useful to find the horizontal and vertical asymptotes.

Problems

5. Given the graph of f, identify the concavity of f, its inflection points, its regions of increasing and decreasing, and its relative extrema.



6. Given the graph of f', identify the concavity of f, its inflection points, its regions of increasing and decreasing, and its relative extrema.



7. Sketch the graph of a function that is
concave up on $(-\infty,-1)\cup(1,\infty)$;
concave down on $(-1,1)$;
increasing on $(-\infty,0)$; and
decreasing on $(0,\infty)$.

In Exercises 8 – 13, practice using Key Idea 6 by applying the principles to the given functions with familiar graphs.

8. $f(x)=2x+4$

9. $f(x)=-x^2+1$

10. $f(x)=\sin x$

11. $f(x)=e^x$

12. $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x}$

13. $f(x)=\dfrac{1}{x^2}$

In Exercises 14 – 34, sketch a graph of the given function using Key Idea 6. Show all work; check your answer with technology.

14. $f(x)=x^3-2x^2+4x+1$

15. $f(x)=-x^3+5x^2-3x+2$

16. $f(x)=x^3+3x^2+3x+1$

17. $f(x)=x^3-x^2-x+1$

18. $f(x)=(x-2)\ln(x-2)$

19. $f(x)=(x-2)^2\ln(x-2)$

20. $f(x)=\dfrac{x^2-4}{x^2}$

21. $f(x)=\dfrac{x^2-4x+3}{x^2-6x+8}$

22. $f(x)=x+\sin x$ on $[0,2\pi]$.

23. $f(x)=\dfrac{x^2-2x+1}{x^2-6x+8}$

24. $f(x)=x\sqrt{x+1}$

25. $f(x)=x^2e^x$

26. $f(x)=\sin x\cos x$ on $[-\pi,\pi]$

27. $f(x)=(x-3)^{2/3}+2$

28. $f(x)=\dfrac{(x-1)^{2/3}}{x}$

29. $f(x)=\sqrt{\dfrac{x}{x-5}}$

30. $f(x) = \sec x - 2\cos x$ on $[0, 2\pi]$.

31. $f(x) = x\sqrt{2 - x^2}$

32. $f(x) = \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 - 1}}$

33. $f(x) = x^{5/3} - 5x^{2/3}$

34. $f(x) = \dfrac{\sin x}{2 + \cos x}$ on $[0, 2\pi]$.

In Exercises 35 – 37, a function with the parameters a and b are given. Describe the critical points and possible points of inflection of f in terms of a and b.

35. $f(x) = \dfrac{a}{x^2 + b^2}$

36. $f(x) = \sin(ax + b)$

37. $f(x) = (x - a)(x - b)$

38. Given $x^2 + y^2 = 1$, use implicit differentiation to find $\dfrac{dy}{dx}$ and $\dfrac{d^2y}{dx^2}$. Use this information to justify the sketch of the unit circle.

4: Applications of the Derivative

In chapter 3, we learned how the first and second derivatives of a function influence its graph. In this chapter we explore other applications of the derivative.

4.1 Related Rates

When two quantities are related by an equation, knowing the value of one quantity can determine the value of the other. For instance, the circumference and radius of a circle are related by $C = 2\pi r$; knowing that $C = 6\pi$ in determines the radius must be 3 in.

The topic of **related rates** takes this one step further: knowing the *rate* at which one quantity is changing can determine the *rate* at which the other changes.

Watch the video:
Related Rates #6 — Rate at Which the Circumference of a Circle is Changing at
`https://youtu.be/tZl5h7590go`

We demonstrate the concepts of related rates through examples.

Note: This section relies heavily on implicit differentiation, so referring back to Section 2.6 may help.

Example 4.1.1 Understanding related rates

The radius of a circle is growing at a rate of 5 in/hr. At what rate is the circumference growing?

Solution The circumference and radius of a circle are related by $C = 2\pi r$. We are given information about how the length of r changes with respect to time; that is, we are told $\frac{dr}{dt} = 5$ in/hr. We want to know how the length of C changes with respect to time, i.e., we want to know $\frac{dC}{dt}$.

Implicitly differentiate both sides of $C = 2\pi r$ with respect to t:

$$\begin{aligned} C &= 2\pi r \\ \frac{d}{dt}\big(C\big) &= \frac{d}{dt}\big(2\pi r\big) \\ \frac{dC}{dt} &= 2\pi\frac{dr}{dt}. \end{aligned}$$

As we know $\frac{dr}{dt} = 5$ in/hr, we know

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = 2\pi 5 = 10\pi \text{ in/hr.}$$

Before we look at another example, we'll state a few ideas on approaching these problems.

Key Idea 7 Solving Related Rates Problems

1. Understand the problem. Clearly identify what quantities are given and what are to be found. Make a sketch if helpful.
2. Assign mathematical notation to all quantities, including those that are functions of time.
3. Create an equation relevant to the context of the problem, using the information given.
4. Substitute constant quantities and if necessary, use the given information to eliminate other variables.
5. Use the Chain Rule to differentiate both sides of the equation.
6. Substitute the known quantities, and solve for the unknown rate.

The important thing to remember is that you must differentiate before you substitute varying values. Otherwise, you'll substitute a constant for what should be a variable, and it's derivative will be zero. Consider another example.

Example 4.1.2 Finding related rates

Water streams out of a faucet at a rate of 2 in^3/s onto a flat surface at a constant rate, forming a circular puddle that is $1/8$ in deep.

1. At what rate is the area of the puddle growing?
2. At what rate is the radius of the circle growing?

Solution

1. We can answer this question two ways: using "common sense" or related rates. The common sense method states that the volume of the puddle is

Notes:

growing by 2 in^3/s, where

$$\text{volume of puddle} = \text{area of circle} \times \text{depth}.$$

Since the depth is constant at $1/8$ in, the area must be growing by 16in^2/s.

This approach reveals the underlying related–rates principle. Let V and A represent the Volume and Area of the puddle. We know $V = A \times \frac{1}{8}$. Take the derivative of both sides with respect to t, employing implicit differentiation.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{1}{8}A \\ \frac{d}{dt}(V) &= \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{1}{8}A\right) \\ \frac{dV}{dt} &= \frac{1}{8}\frac{dA}{dt} \end{aligned}$$

As $\frac{dV}{dt} = 2$, we know $2 = \frac{1}{8}\frac{dA}{dt}$, and hence $\frac{dA}{dt} = 16$. Thus the area is growing by 16 in^2/s.

2. To start, we need an equation that relates what we know to the radius. We know that $V = \pi r^2 h = \frac{\pi}{8}r^2$. Implicitly derive both sides with respect to t:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \frac{\pi}{8}r^2 \\ \frac{d}{dt}(V) &= \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{\pi}{8}r^2\right) \\ \frac{dV}{dt} &= \frac{\pi}{8}\cdot 2r\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{\pi}{4}r\frac{dr}{dt} \end{aligned}$$

Solving for $\frac{dr}{dt}$, we have $\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{\frac{dV}{dt}}{\frac{\pi}{4}r} = \frac{2}{\frac{\pi}{4}r} = \frac{8}{\pi r}$.

Note how our answer is not a number, but rather a function of r. In other words, *the rate at which the radius is growing depends on how big the circle already is.* If the circle is very large, adding 2 in^3 of water will not make the circle much bigger at all. If the circle is dime–sized, adding the same amount of water will make a radical change in the radius of the circle.

In some ways, our problem was (intentionally) ill–posed. We need to specify a current radius in order to know a rate of change. When the puddle has a radius of 10 in, the radius is growing at a rate of

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = \frac{8}{10\pi} = \frac{4}{5\pi} \approx 0.25 \text{ in/s}.$$

Notes:

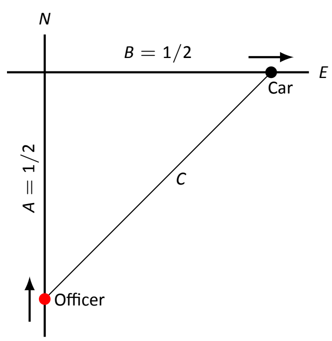


Figure 4.1: A sketch of a police car (at bottom) attempting to measure the speed of a car (at right) in Example 4.1.3.

Note: Example 4.1.3 is both interesting and impractical. It highlights the difficulty in using radar in a non–linear fashion, and explains why "in real life" the police officer would follow the other driver to determine their speed, and not pull out pencil and paper.

The principles here are important, though. Many automated vehicles make judgments about other moving objects based on perceived distances, radar–like measurements and the concepts of related rates.

Example 4.1.3 Studying related rates

Radar guns measure the rate of distance change between the gun and the object it is measuring. For instance, a reading of "55 mph" means the object is moving away from the gun at a rate of 55 miles per hour, whereas a measurement of "-25 mph" would mean that the object is approaching the gun at a rate of 25 miles per hour.

If the radar gun is moving (say, attached to a police car) then radar readouts are only immediately understandable if the gun and the object are moving along the same line. If a police officer is traveling 60 mph and gets a readout of 15 mph, he knows that the car ahead of him is moving away at a rate of 15 miles an hour, meaning the car is traveling 75 mph. (This straight–line principle is one reason officers park on the side of the highway and try to shoot straight back down the road. It gives the most accurate reading.)

Suppose an officer is driving due north at 30 mph and sees a car moving due east, as shown in Figure 4.1. Using his radar gun, he measures a reading of 20 mph. By using landmarks, he believes both he and the other car are about 1/2 mile from the intersection of their two roads.

If the speed limit on the other road is 55 mph, is the other driver speeding?

Solution Using the diagram in Figure 4.1, let's label what we know about the situation. As both the police officer and other driver are 1/2 mile from the intersection, we have $A = 1/2$, $B = 1/2$, and through the Pythagorean Theorem, $C = 1/\sqrt{2} \approx 0.707$.

We know the police officer is traveling at 30 mph; that is, $\frac{dA}{dt} = -30$. The reason this rate of change is negative is that A is getting smaller; the distance between the officer and the intersection is shrinking. The radar measurement is $\frac{dC}{dt} = 20$. We want to find $\frac{dB}{dt}$.

We need an equation that relates B to A and/or C. The Pythagorean Theorem is a good choice: $A^2 + B^2 = C^2$. Differentiate both sides with respect to t:

$$\begin{aligned} A^2 + B^2 &= C^2 \\ \frac{d}{dt}\left(A^2 + B^2\right) &= \frac{d}{dt}\left(C^2\right) \\ 2A\frac{dA}{dt} + 2B\frac{dB}{dt} &= 2C\frac{dC}{dt} \end{aligned}$$

We have values for everything except $\frac{dB}{dt}$. Solving for this we have

$$\frac{dB}{dt} = \frac{C\frac{dC}{dt} - A\frac{dA}{dt}}{B} \approx 58.28 \text{ mph}.$$

The other driver appears to be speeding slightly.

Notes:

Example 4.1.4 Studying related rates

A camera is placed on a tripod 10 ft from the side of a road. The camera is to turn to track a car that is to drive by at 100 mph for a promotional video. The video's planners want to know what kind of motor the tripod should be equipped with in order to properly track the car as it passes by. Figure 4.2 shows the proposed setup.

How fast must the camera be able to turn to track the car?

Solution We seek information about how fast the camera is to *turn*; therefore, we need an equation that will relate an angle θ to the position of the camera and the speed and position of the car.

Figure 4.2 suggests we use a trigonometric equation. Letting x represent the distance the car is from the point on the road directly in front of the camera, we have

$$\tan\theta = \frac{x}{10}. \tag{4.1}$$

As the car is moving at 100 mph, we have $\frac{dx}{dt} = -100$ mph (as in the last example, since x is getting smaller as the car travels, $\frac{dx}{dt}$ is negative). We need to convert the measurements so they use the same units; rewrite -100 mph in terms of ft/s:

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = -100\frac{\text{m}}{\text{hr}} = -100\frac{\text{m}}{\text{hr}}\cdot 5280\frac{\text{ft}}{\text{m}}\cdot\frac{1}{3600}\frac{\text{hr}}{\text{s}} = -146.\overline{6}\text{ ft/s}.$$

Now take the derivative of both sides of Equation (4.1) using implicit differentiation:

$$\begin{aligned} \tan\theta &= \frac{x}{10} \\ \frac{d}{dt}\big(\tan\theta\big) &= \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{x}{10}\right) \\ \sec^2\theta\,\frac{d\theta}{dt} &= \frac{1}{10}\frac{dx}{dt} \\ \frac{d\theta}{dt} &= \frac{\cos^2\theta}{10}\frac{dx}{dt} \end{aligned} \tag{4.2}$$

We want to know the fastest the camera has to turn. Common sense tells us this is when the car is directly in front of the camera (i.e., when $\theta = 0$). Our mathematics bears this out. In Equation (4.2) we see this is when $\cos^2\theta$ is largest; this is when $\cos\theta = 1$, or when $\theta = 0$.

With $\frac{dx}{dt} \approx -146.67$ ft/s, we have

$$\frac{d\theta}{dt} = -\frac{1\text{ rad}}{10\text{ ft}}146.67\text{ ft/s} = -14.667\text{ radians/s}.$$

We find that $\frac{d\theta}{dt}$ is negative; this matches our diagram in Figure 4.2 for θ is getting smaller as the car approaches the camera.

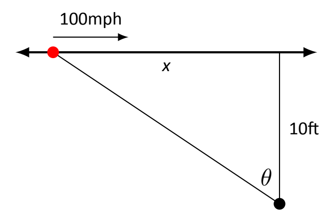


Figure 4.2: Tracking a speeding car (at left) with a rotating camera.

Notes:

What is the practical meaning of -14.667 radians/s? Recall that 1 circular revolution goes through 2π radians, thus 14.667 rad/s means 14.667$/(2\pi) \approx$ 2.33 revolutions per second. The negative sign indicates the camera is rotating in a clockwise fashion.

We introduced the derivative as a function that gives the slopes of tangent lines of functions. This section stresses the "rate of change" aspect of the derivative to find a relationship between the rates of change of two related quantities. In the next section we use Extreme Value concepts to *optimize* quantities.

Notes:

Exercises 4.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: Implicit differentiation is often used when solving "related rates" type problems.

2. T/F: A study of related rates is part of the standard police officer training.

Problems

3. Water flows onto a flat surface at a rate of 5cm^3/s forming a circular puddle 10mm deep. How fast is the radius growing when the radius is:

   (a) 1 cm?

   (b) 10 cm?

   (c) 100 cm?

4. A circular balloon is inflated with air flowing at a rate of 10cm^3/s. How fast is the radius of the balloon increasing when the radius is:

   (a) 1 cm?

   (b) 10 cm?

   (c) 100 cm?

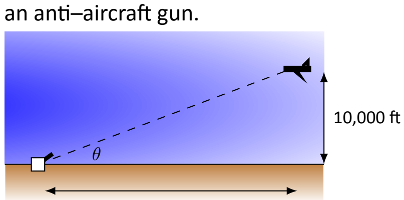
5. Consider the traffic situation introduced in Example 4.1.3. How fast is the "other car" traveling if the officer and the other car are each 1/2 mile from the intersection, the other car is traveling *due west*, the officer is traveling north at 50mph, and the radar reading is -80mph?

6. Consider the traffic situation introduced in Example 4.1.3. Calculate how fast the "other car" is traveling in each of the following situations.

   (a) The officer is traveling due north at 50mph and is 1/2 mile from the intersection, while the other car is 1 mile from the intersection traveling west and the radar reading is -80mph?

   (b) The officer is traveling due north at 50mph and is 1 mile from the intersection, while the other car is 1/2 mile from the intersection traveling west and the radar reading is -80mph?

7. An F-22 aircraft is flying at 500mph with an elevation of 10,000ft on a straight–line path that will take it directly over an anti–aircraft gun.



   How fast must the gun be able to turn to accurately track the aircraft when the plane is:

   (a) 1 mile away?

   (b) 1/5 mile away?

   (c) Directly overhead?

8. An F-22 aircraft is flying at 500mph with an elevation of 100ft on a straight–line path that will take it directly over an anti–aircraft gun as in Exercise 7 (note the lower elevation here).

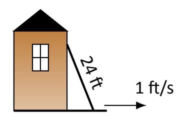
   How fast must the gun be able to turn to accurately track the aircraft when the plane is:

   (a) 1000 feet away?

   (b) 100 feet away?

   (c) Directly overhead?

9. A 24ft. ladder is leaning against a house while the base is pulled away at a constant rate of 1ft/s.



   At what rate is the top of the ladder sliding down the side of the house when the base is:

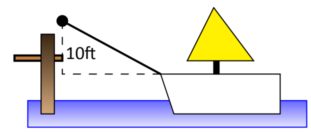
   (a) 1 foot from the house?

   (b) 10 feet from the house?

   (c) 23 feet from the house?

   (d) 24 feet from the house?

10. A boat is being pulled into a dock at a constant rate of 30ft/min by a winch located 10ft above the deck of the boat.



   At what rate is the boat approaching the dock when the boat is:

   (a) 50 feet out?

   (b) 15 feet out?

   (c) 1 foot from the dock?

   (d) What happens when the length of rope pulling in the boat is less than 10 feet long?

11. An inverted cylindrical cone, 20ft deep and 10ft across at the top, is being filled with water at a rate of 10ft^3/min. At what rate is the water rising in the tank when the depth of the water is:

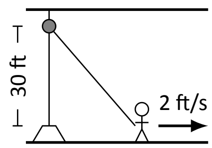
   (a) 1 foot?

   (b) 10 feet?

   (c) 19 feet?

   How long will the tank take to fill when starting at empty?

12. A rope, attached to a weight, goes up through a pulley at the ceiling and back down to a worker. The man holds the rope at the same height as the connection point between rope and weight.



Suppose the man stands directly next to the weight (i.e., a total rope length of 60 ft) and begins to walk away at a rate of 2ft/s. How fast is the weight rising when the man has walked:

   (a) 10 feet?

   (b) 40 feet?

   How far must the man walk to raise the weight all the way to the pulley?

13. Consider the situation described in Exercise 12. Suppose the man starts 40ft from the weight and begins to walk away at a rate of 2ft/s.

   (a) How long is the rope?

   (b) How fast is the weight rising after the man has walked 10 feet?

   (c) How fast is the weight rising after the man has walked 40 feet?

   (d) How far must the man walk to raise the weight all the way to the pulley?

14. A hot air balloon lifts off from ground rising vertically. From 100 feet away, a 5' woman tracks the path of the balloon. When her sightline with the balloon makes a 45° angle with the horizontal, she notes the angle is increasing at about 5°/min.

   (a) What is the elevation of the balloon?

   (b) How fast is it rising?

15. A company that produces landscaping materials is dumping sand into a conical pile. The sand is being poured at a rate of 5ft^3/sec; the physical properties of the sand, in conjunction with gravity, ensure that the cone's height is roughly 2/3 the length of the diameter of the circular base.

   How fast is the cone rising when it has a height of 30 feet?

4.2 Optimization

In Section 3.1 we learned about extreme values – the largest and smallest values a function attains on an interval. We motivated our interest in such values by discussing how it made sense to want to know the highest/lowest values of a stock, or the fastest/slowest an object was moving. In this section we apply the concepts of extreme values to solve "word problems," i.e., problems stated in terms of situations that require us to create the appropriate mathematical framework in which to solve the problem.

Watch the video:
Optimization Problem #7 — Minimizing the Area of Two Squares With Total Perimeter of Fixed Length at
`https://youtu.be/BbTwa4Dbmmo`

We start with a classic example which is followed by a discussion of the topic of optimization.

Example 4.2.1 Optimization: perimeter and area

A man has 100 feet of fencing, a large yard, and a small dog. He wants to create a rectangular enclosure for his dog with the fencing that provides the maximal area. What dimensions provide the maximal area?

Solution One can likely guess the correct answer – that is great. We will proceed to show how calculus can provide this answer in a context that proves this answer is correct.

It helps to make a sketch of the situation. Our enclosure is sketched twice in Figure 4.3, either with green grass and nice fence boards or as a simple rectangle. Either way, drawing a rectangle forces us to realize that we need to know the dimensions of this rectangle so we can create an area function – after all, we are trying to maximize the area.

We let x and y denote the lengths of the sides of the rectangle. Clearly,

$$\text{Area} = xy.$$

We do not yet know how to handle functions with 2 variables; we need to reduce this down to a single variable. We know more about the situation: the man has 100 feet of fencing. By knowing the perimeter of the rectangle must be 100, we can create another equation:

$$\text{Perimeter} = 100 = 2x + 2y.$$

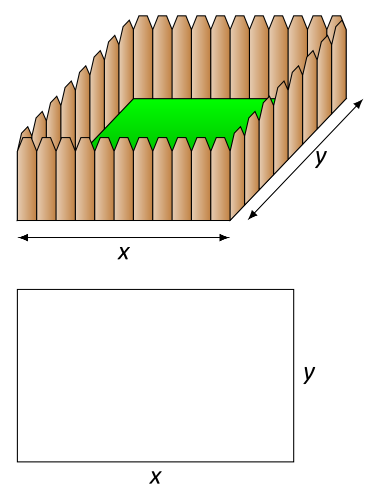


Figure 4.3: A sketch of the enclosure in Example 4.2.1.

Notes:

We now have 2 equations and 2 unknowns. In the latter equation, we solve for y:

$$y = 50 - x.$$

Now substitute this expression for y in the area equation:

$$\text{Area} = A(x) = x(50 - x).$$

Note we now have an equation of one variable; we can truly call the Area a function of x.

This function only makes sense when $0 \leq x \leq 50$, otherwise we get negative values of area. So we find the extreme values of $A(x)$ on the interval $[0, 50]$.

To find the critical points, we take the derivative of $A(x)$ and set it equal to 0, then solve for x.

$$\begin{aligned} A(x) &= x(50 - x) \\ &= 50x - x^2 \\ A'(x) &= 50 - 2x \end{aligned}$$

We solve $50 - 2x = 0$ to find $x = 25$; this is the only critical point. We evaluate $A(x)$ at the endpoints of our interval and at this critical point to find the extreme values; in this case, all we care about is the maximum.

Clearly $A(0) = 0$ and $A(50) = 0$, whereas $A(25) = 625$ ft^2. This is the maximum. Since we earlier found $y = 50 - x$, we find that y is also 25. Thus the dimensions of the rectangular enclosure with perimeter of 100 ft. with maximum area is a square, with sides of length 25 ft.

This example is very simplistic and a bit contrived. (After all, most people create a design then buy fencing to meet their needs, and not buy fencing and plan later.) But it models well the necessary process: create equations that describe a situation, reduce an equation to a single variable, then find the needed extreme value.

"In real life," problems are much more complex. The equations are often *not* reducible to a single variable (hence multi–variable calculus is needed) and the equations themselves may be difficult to form. Understanding the principles here will provide a good foundation for the mathematics you will likely encounter later.

We outline here the basic process of solving these optimization problems.

Notes:

Key Idea 8 Solving Optimization Problems

1. Understand the problem. Clearly identify what quantity is to be maximized or minimized. Make a sketch if helpful.
2. Create equations relevant to the context of the problem, using the information given. (One of these should describe the quantity to be optimized. We'll call this the *fundamental equation.*)
3. If the fundamental equation defines the quantity to be optimized as a function of more than one variable, reduce it to a single variable function using substitutions derived from the other equations.
4. Identify the domain of this function, keeping in mind the context of the problem.
5. Find the extreme values of this function on the determined domain.
6. Identify the values of all relevant quantities of the problem.

We will use Key Idea 8 in a variety of examples.

Example 4.2.2 Optimization: perimeter and area

Here is another classic calculus problem: A woman has a 100 feet of fencing, a small dog, and a large yard that contains a stream (that is mostly straight). She wants to create a rectangular enclosure with maximal area that uses the stream as one side. (Apparently her dog won't swim away.) What dimensions provide the maximal area?

Solution We will follow the steps outlined by Key Idea 8.

1. We are maximizing *area*. A sketch of the region will help; Figure 4.4 gives two sketches of the proposed enclosed area. A key feature of the sketches is to acknowledge that one side is not fenced.
2. We want to maximize the area; as in the example before,

$$\text{Area} = xy.$$

This is our fundamental equation. This defines area as a function of two variables, so we need another equation to reduce it to one variable.

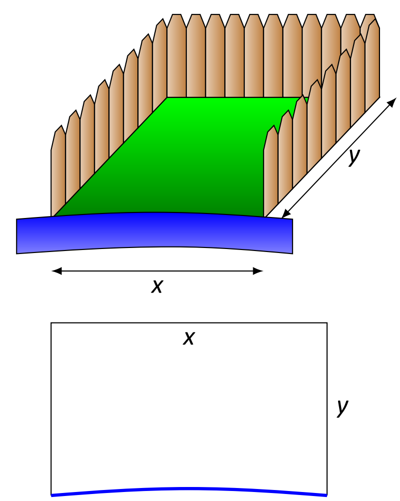


Figure 4.4: A sketch of the enclosure in Example 4.2.2.

Notes:

We again appeal to the perimeter; here the perimeter is

$$\text{Perimeter} = 100 = x + 2y.$$

Note how this is different than in our previous example.

3. We now reduce the fundamental equation to a single variable. In the perimeter equation, solve for y: $y = 50 - x/2$. We can now write Area as

$$\text{Area} = A(x) = x(50 - x/2) = 50x - \frac{1}{2}x^2.$$

Area is now defined as a function of one variable.

4. We want the area to be nonnegative. Since $A(x) = x(50 - x/2)$, we want $x \geq 0$ and $50 - x/2 \geq 0$. The latter inequality implies that $x \leq 100$, so $0 \leq x \leq 100$.

5. We now find the extreme values. At the endpoints, the minimum is found, giving an area of 0.

   Find the critical points. We have $A'(x) = 50 - x$; setting this equal to 0 and solving for x returns $x = 50$. This gives an area of

$$A(50) = 50(25) = 1250.$$

6. We earlier set $y = 50 - x/2$; thus $y = 25$. Thus our rectangle will have two sides of length 25 and one side of length 50, with a total area of 1250 ft^2.

Keep in mind as we do these problems that we are practicing a *process*; that is, we are learning to turn a situation into a system of equations. These equations allow us to write a certain quantity as a function of one variable, which we then optimize.

Example 4.2.3 Optimization: minimizing cost

A power line needs to be run from an power station located on the beach to an offshore facility. Figure 4.5 shows the distances between the power station to the facility.

It costs \$50/ft. to run a power line along the land, and \$130/ft. to run a power line under water. How much of the power line should be run along the land to minimize the overall cost? What is the minimal cost?

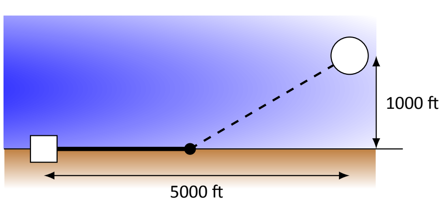


Figure 4.5: Running a power line from the power station to an offshore facility with minimal cost in Example 4.2.3.

Solution We will follow the strategy of Key Idea 8 implicitly, without specifically numbering steps.

Notes:

There are two immediate solutions that we could consider, each of which we will reject through "common sense." First, we could minimize the distance by directly connecting the two locations with a straight line. However, this requires that all the wire be laid underwater, the most costly option. Second, we could minimize the underwater length by running a wire all 5000 ft. along the beach, directly across from the offshore facility. This has the undesired effect of having the longest distance of all, probably ensuring a non–minimal cost.

The optimal solution likely has the line being run along the ground for a while, then underwater, as the figure implies. We need to label our unknown distances – the distance run along the ground and the distance run underwater. Recognizing that the underwater distance can be measured as the hypotenuse of a right triangle, we choose to label the distances as shown in Figure 4.6.

By choosing x as we did, we make the expression under the square root simple. We now create the cost function.

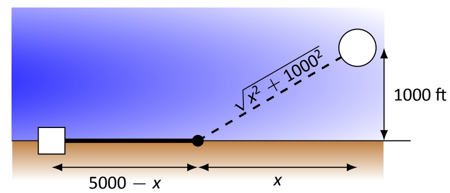


Figure 4.6: Labeling unknown distances in Example 4.2.3.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Cost} &= \text{land cost} + \text{water cost}\\ &= \$50\times\text{land distance} + \$130\times\text{water distance}\\ &= 50(5000-x) + 130\sqrt{x^2+1000^2}.\end{aligned}$$

So we have $c(x) = 50(5000-x)+130\sqrt{x^2+1000^2}$. This function only makes sense on the interval $[0, 5000]$. While we are fairly certain the endpoints will not give a minimal cost, we still evaluate $c(x)$ at each to verify.

$$c(0) = 380,000 \qquad c(5000) \approx 662,873.$$

We now find the critical values of $c(x)$. We compute $c'(x)$ as

$$c'(x) = -50 + \frac{130x}{\sqrt{x^2+1000^2}}.$$

Recognize that this is never undefined. Setting $c'(x)=0$ and solving for x,

Notes:

we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
-50+\frac{130x}{\sqrt{x^2+1000^2}} &= 0\\
\frac{130x}{\sqrt{x^2+1000^2}} &= 50\\
\frac{130^2x^2}{x^2+1000^2} &= 50^2\\
130^2x^2 &= 50^2(x^2+1000^2)\\
130^2x^2-50^2x^2 &= 50^2\cdot 1000^2\\
(130^2-50^2)x^2 &= 50,000^2\\
x^2 &= \frac{50,000^2}{130^2-50^2}\\
x &= \frac{50,000}{\sqrt{130^2-50^2}}\\
x &= \frac{50,000}{120}=\frac{1250}{3}\approx 416.67.
\end{aligned}$$

Evaluating $c(x)$ at $x=416.67$ gives a cost of about \$370,000. The distance the power line is laid along land is $5000-416.67=4583.33$ ft., and the underwater distance is $\sqrt{416.67^2+1000^2}\approx 1083$ ft.

Example 4.2.4 Optimization: Minimizing Surface Area

Design a closed cylindrical can of volume 8 ft^3 so that it uses the least amount of metal. In other words, minimize the surface area of the can.

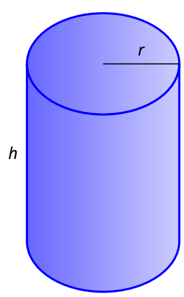


Figure 4.7: A sketch for Example 4.2.4.

Solution

Following the strategy of Key Idea 8, we make a sketch in Figure 4.7 and identify the quantity to be minimized as the surface area of the cylinder. The formula for the surface area is our fundamental equation since it relates all of our relevant quantities.

$$A=\underbrace{\pi r^2}_{\text{Top}}+\underbrace{\pi r^2}_{\text{Bottom}}+\underbrace{2\pi rh}_{\text{Side}}=2\pi r^2+2\pi rh$$

Our surface area is now defined in terms of two variables. To reduce this to a single variable we use the volume of a can, $V=\pi r^2h$. Since the can must have $V=8$ ft^3, we set $\pi r^2 h=8$. Thus $h=\dfrac{8}{\pi r^2}$ and

$$A(r)=2\pi r^2+2\pi r\frac{8}{\pi r^2}=2\pi r^2+\frac{16}{r}$$

Notes:

Next we find the critical values of $A(r)$. We compute

$$A'(r) = 4\pi r - \frac{16}{r^2} = \frac{4\pi r^3 - 16}{r^2}$$

and find that $A'(r) = 0$ when $r^3 = \dfrac{4}{\pi}$, that is, $r = \left(\dfrac{4}{\pi}\right)^{1/3} \approx 1.08$ ft.

Looking back at $A(r)$, we notice that r is not restricted to a closed interval. The radius can take on any positive value making the interval of optimization $(0, \infty)$. Since we do not have endpoints to test in $A(r)$ we consider what happens to $A(r)$ as r approaches the endpoints of $(0, \infty)$. We see that

$$\begin{aligned} &A(r) \to \infty \text{ as } r \to \infty && \text{(because of the } r^2 \text{ term) and} \\ &A(r) \to \infty \text{ as } r \to 0 && \text{(because of the } \tfrac{16}{r} \text{ term)} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the surface area must be minimized at the critical value we found. Finally, we determine the height of the cylinder.

$$h = \frac{8}{\pi r^2} = \frac{8}{\pi} r^{-2} = 2\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^{-2/3} = 2\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)^{1/3} \approx 2.17 \text{ ft.}$$

Notice that the height is twice the length of the radius. This means that the surface area is minimized when the can is as tall as it is wide.

In the exercises you will see a variety of situations that require you to combine problem–solving skills with calculus. Focus on the *process*; learn how to form equations from situations that can be manipulated into what you need. Eschew memorizing how to do "this kind of problem" as opposed to "that kind of problem." Learning a process will benefit one far longer than memorizing a specific technique.

The next section introduces another application of the derivative: *differentials*. Given $y = f(x)$, they offer a method of approximating the change in y after x changes by a small amount.

Notes:

Exercises 4.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: An "optimization problem" is essentially an "extreme values" problem in a "story problem" setting.

2. T/F: This section teaches one to find the extreme values of function that have more than one variable.

Problems

3. Find the maximum product of two numbers (not necessarily integers) that have a sum of 100.

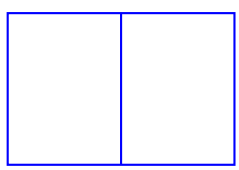
4. Find the minimum sum of two numbers whose product is 500.

5. Find the maximum sum of two numbers whose product is 500.

6. Find the maximum sum of two numbers, each of which is in $[0, 300]$ whose product is 500.

7. Find the maximal area of a right triangle with hypotenuse of length 1.

8. A rancher has 1000 feet of fencing in which to construct adjacent, equally sized rectangular pens. What dimensions should these pens have to maximize the enclosed area?



9. A standard soda can is roughly cylindrical and holds 355cm^3 of liquid. What dimensions should the cylinder be to minimize the material needed to produce the can? Based on your dimensions, determine whether or not the standard can is produced to minimize the material costs.

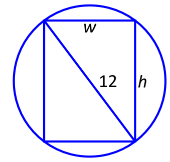
10. Find the dimensions of a cylindrical can with a volume of 206in^3 that minimizes the surface area.

    The "#10 can"is a standard sized can used by the restaurant industry that holds about 206in^3 with a diameter of 6 2/16in and height of 7in. Does it seem these dimensions where chosen with minimization in mind?

11. The United States Postal Service charges more for boxes whose combined length and girth exceeds 108" (the "length" of a package is the length of its longest side; the girth is the perimeter of the cross section, i.e., $2w + 2h$).

    What is the maximum volume of a package with a square cross section ($w = h$) that does not exceed the 108" standard?

12. The strength S of a wooden beam is directly proportional to its cross sectional width w and the square of its height h; that is, $S = kwh^2$ for some constant k.



    Given a circular log with diameter of 12 inches, what sized beam can be cut from the log with maximum strength?

13. A power line is to be run to an offshore facility in the manner described in Example 4.2.3. The offshore facility is 2 miles at sea and 5 miles along the shoreline from the power plant. It costs \$50,000 per mile to lay a power line underground and \$80,000 to run the line underwater.

    How much of the power line should be run underground to minimize the overall costs?

14. A power line is to be run to an offshore facility in the manner described in Example 4.2.3. The offshore facility is 5 miles at sea and 2 miles along the shoreline from the power plant. It costs \$50,000 per mile to lay a power line underground and \$80,000 to run the line underwater.

    How much of the power line should be run underground to minimize the overall costs?

15. A woman throws a stick into a lake for her dog to fetch; the stick is 20 feet down the shore line and 15 feet into the water from there. The dog may jump directly into the water and swim, or run along the shore line to get closer to the stick before swimming. The dog runs about 22ft/s and swims about 1.5ft/s.

    How far along the shore should the dog run to minimize the time it takes to get to the stick? (Hint: the figure from Example 4.2.3 can be useful.)

16. A woman throws a stick into a lake for her dog to fetch; the stick is 15 feet down the shore line and 30 feet into the water from there. The dog may jump directly into the water and swim, or run along the shore line to get closer to the stick before swimming. The dog runs about 22ft/s and swims about 1.5ft/s.

    How far along the shore should the dog run to minimize the time it takes to get to the stick? *(Google "calculus dog" to learn more about a dog's ability to minimize times.)*

17. What are the dimensions of the rectangle with largest area that can be drawn inside the unit circle?

18. Four squares are going to be cut from a larger square piece of paper of side length 10 inches. After the paper is folded into a topless box, what is the largest volume the box could have?

19. The material to make the sides of a box costs 2 ¢/in^2. Making the bottom costs 4 ¢/in^2, while the top costs 1 ¢/in^2. What are the dimensions of the least expensive box with a square base and a volume of 10 in^3?

20. A box needs to have a surface area of 12 in^2 and be twice as long as it is wide. What is the largest volume the box can have?

4.3 Differentials

In Section 2.2 we explored the meaning and use of the derivative. This section starts by revisiting some of those ideas.

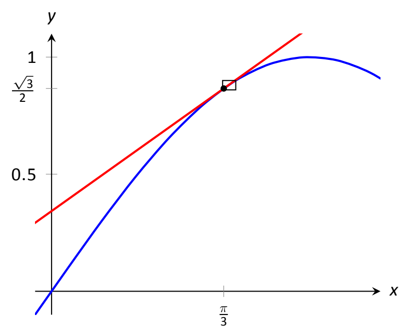
Recall that the derivative of a function f can be used to find the slopes of lines tangent to the graph of f. At $x = c$, the tangent line to the graph of f has equation

$$y = f'(c)(x - c) + f(c).$$

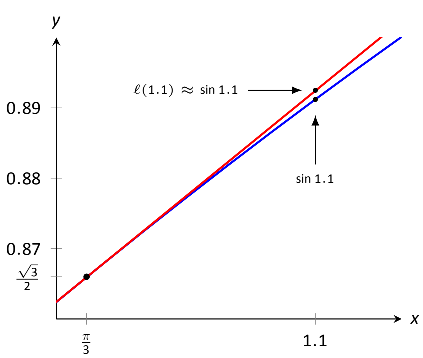
The tangent line can be used to find good approximations of $f(x)$ for values of x near c.

For instance, we can approximate $\sin 1.1$ using the tangent line to the graph of $f(x) = \sin x$ at $x = \pi/3 \approx 1.05$. Recall that $\sin(\pi/3) = \sqrt{3}/2 \approx 0.866$, and $\cos(\pi/3) = 1/2$. Thus the tangent line to $f(x) = \sin x$ at $x = \pi/3$ is:

$$\ell(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x - \pi/3) + 0.866.$$



(a)



(b)

Figure 4.8: Graphing $f(x) = \sin x$ and its tangent line at $x = \pi/3$ in order to estimate $\sin 1.1$.

In Figure 4.8(a), we see a graph of $f(x) = \sin x$ graphed along with its tangent line at $x = \pi/3$. The small rectangle shows the region that is displayed in Figure 4.8(b). In this figure, we see how we are approximating $\sin 1.1$ with the tangent line, evaluated at 1.1. Together, the two figures show how close these values are.

Using this line to approximate $\sin 1.1$, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \ell(1.1) &= \frac{1}{2}(1.1 - \pi/3) + 0.866 \\ &= \frac{1}{2}(0.053) + 0.866 = 0.8925. \end{aligned}$$

(We leave it to the reader to see how good of an approximation this is.)

We now generalize this concept. Given $f(x)$ and an x–value c, the tangent line is $\ell(x) = f'(c)(x-c) + f(c)$. Clearly, $f(c) = \ell(c)$. Let Δx be a small number, representing a small change in x value. We assert that:

$$f(c + \Delta x) \approx \ell(c + \Delta x),$$

since the tangent line to a function approximates well the values of that function near $x = c$.

As the x value changes from c to $c + \Delta x$, the y value of f changes from $f(c)$ to $f(c + \Delta x)$. We call this change of y value Δy. That is:

$$\Delta y = f(c + \Delta x) - f(c).$$

Notes:

Replacing $f(c + \Delta x)$ with its tangent line approximation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta y &\approx \ell(c + \Delta x) - f(c) \\ &= f'(c)\big((c + \Delta x) - c\big) + f(c) - f(c) \\ &= f'(c)\Delta x \end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

This final equation is important; we'll come back to it in Key Idea 9.

We introduce two new variables, dx and dy in the context of a formal definition.

Definition 19 Differentials of x and y.
Let $y = f(x)$ be differentiable. The **differential of** x, denoted dx, is any nonzero real number (usually taken to be a small number). The **differential of** y, denoted dy, is

$$dy = f'(x)dx.$$

We can solve for $f'(x)$ in the above equation: $f'(x) = dy/dx$. This states that the derivative of f with respect to x is the differential of y divided by the differential of x; this is **not** the alternate notation for the derivative, $\frac{dy}{dx}$. This latter notation was chosen because of the fraction–like qualities of the derivative, but again, it is one symbol and not a fraction.

It is helpful to organize our new concepts and notations in one place.

Key Idea 9 Differential Notation
Let $y = f(x)$ be a differentiable function.

1. Δx represents a small, nonzero change in x value.
2. dx represents a small, nonzero change in x value (i.e., $\Delta x = dx$).
3. Δy is the change in y value as x changes by Δx; hence
$$\Delta y = f(x + \Delta x) - f(x).$$
4. $dy = f'(x)dx$ which, by Equation 4.3, is an *approximation* of the change in y value as x changes by Δx; $dy \approx \Delta y$.

What is the value of differentials? Like many mathematical concepts, differentials provide both practical and theoretical benefits. We explore both here.

Notes:

Watch the video:
Differentials 2 at
`https://youtu.be/AvM8-LUdg84`

Example 4.3.1 Finding and using differentials

Consider $f(x) = x^2$. Knowing $f(3) = 9$, approximate $f(3.1)$.

Solution The x value is changing from $x = 3$ to $x = 3.1$; therefore, we see that $dx = 0.1$. If we know how much the y value changes from $f(3)$ to $f(3.1)$ (i.e., if we know Δy), we will know exactly what $f(3.1)$ is (since we already know $f(3)$). We can approximate Δy with dy.

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta y &\approx dy\\ &= f'(3)dx\\ &= 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 0.1 = 0.6.\end{aligned}$$

We expect the y value to change by about 0.6, so we approximate $f(3.1) \approx 9.6$.

We leave it to the reader to verify this, but the preceding discussion links the differential to the tangent line of $f(x)$ at $x = 3$. One can verify that the tangent line, evaluated at $x = 3.1$, also gives $y = 9.6$.

Of course, it is easy to compute the actual answer (by hand or with a calculator): $3.1^2 = 9.61$. (Before we get too cynical and say "Then why bother?", note our approximation is *really* good!)

So why bother?

In "most" real life situations, we do not know the function that describes a particular behavior. Instead, we can only take measurements of how things change – measurements of the derivative.

Imagine water flowing down a winding channel. It is easy to measure the speed and direction (i.e., the *velocity*) of water at any location. It is very hard to create a function that describes the overall flow, hence it is hard to predict where a floating object placed at the beginning of the channel will end up. However, we can *approximate* the path of an object using differentials. Over small intervals, the path taken by a floating object is essentially linear. Differentials allow us to approximate the true path by piecing together lots of short, linear

Notes:

paths. This technique is called Euler's Method, studied in introductory Differential Equations courses.

We use differentials once more to approximate the value of a function. Even though calculators are very accessible, it is neat to see how these techniques can sometimes be used to easily compute something that looks rather hard.

Example 4.3.2 Using differentials to approximate a function value

Approximate $\sqrt{4.5}$.

Solution We expect $\sqrt{4.5} \approx 2$, yet we can do better. Let $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, and let $c = 4$. Thus $f(4) = 2$. We can compute $f'(x) = 1/(2\sqrt{x})$, so $f'(4) = 1/4$.

We approximate the difference between $f(4.5)$ and $f(4)$ using differentials, with $dx = 0.5$:

$$f(4.5) - f(4) = \Delta y \approx dy = f'(4) \cdot dx = 1/4 \cdot 1/2 = 1/8 = 0.125.$$

The approximate change in f from $x = 4$ to $x = 4.5$ is 0.125, so we approximate $\sqrt{4.5} \approx 2.125$.

Differentials are important when we discuss *integration*. When we study that topic, we will use notation such as

$$\int f(x)\,dx$$

quite often. While we don't discuss here what all of that notation means, note the existence of the differential dx. Proper handling of *integrals* comes with proper handling of differentials.

In light of that, we practice finding differentials in general.

Example 4.3.3 Finding differentials

In each of the following, find the differential dy.

1. $y = \sin x$ 2. $y = e^x(x^2 + 2)$ 3. $y = \sqrt{x^2 + 3x - 1}$

Solution

1. $y = \sin x$: As $f(x) = \sin x$, $f'(x) = \cos x$. Thus

$$dy = \cos(x)dx.$$

Notes:

2. $y = e^x(x^2+2)$: Let $f(x) = e^x(x^2+2)$. We need $f'(x)$, requiring the Product Rule.

   We have $f'(x) = e^x(x^2+2) + 2xe^x$, so

$$dy = \big(e^x(x^2+2) + 2xe^x\big)dx.$$

3. $y = \sqrt{x^2+3x-1}$: Let $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2+3x-1}$; we need $f'(x)$, requiring the Chain Rule.

   We have $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{2}(x^2+3x-1)^{-\frac{1}{2}}(2x+3) = \dfrac{2x+3}{2\sqrt{x^2+3x-1}}$. Thus

$$dy = \frac{(2x+3)dx}{2\sqrt{x^2+3x-1}}.$$

Finding the differential dy of $y = f(x)$ is really no harder than finding the derivative of f; we just *multiply* $f'(x)$ by dx. It is important to remember that we are not simply adding the symbol "dx" at the end.

We have seen a practical use of differentials as they offer a good method of making certain approximations. Another use is *error propagation.* Suppose a length is measured to be x, although the actual value is $x + \Delta x$ (where we hope Δx is small). This measurement of x may be used to compute some other value; we can think of this as $f(x)$ for some function f. As the true length is $x + \Delta x$, one really should have computed $f(x+\Delta x)$. The difference between $f(x)$ and $f(x+\Delta x)$ is the propagated error.

How close are $f(x)$ and $f(x+\Delta x)$? This is a difference in "y" values;

$$f(x+\Delta x) - f(x) = \Delta y \approx dy.$$

We can approximate the propagated error using differentials.

Example 4.3.4 Using differentials to approximate propagated error

A steel ball bearing is to be manufactured with a diameter of 2cm. The manufacturing process has a tolerance of ± 0.1mm in the diameter. Given that the density of steel is about 7.85g/cm^3, estimate the propagated error in the mass of the ball bearing.

Solution The mass of a ball bearing is found using the equation "mass = volume $\times$ density." In this situation the mass function is a product of the radius of the ball bearing, hence it is $m = 7.85\frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$. The differential of the mass is

$$dm = 31.4\pi r^2 dr.$$

Notes:

The radius is to be 1cm; the manufacturing tolerance in the radius is ± 0.05mm, or ± 0.005cm. The propagated error is approximately:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta m &\approx dm \\ &= 31.4\pi(1)^2(\pm 0.005) \\ &= \pm 0.493\text{g}\end{aligned}$$

Is this error significant? It certainly depends on the application, but we can get an idea by computing the *relative error*. The ratio between amount of error to the total mass is

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dm}{m} &= \pm\frac{0.493}{7.85\frac{4}{3}\pi} \\ &= \pm\frac{0.493}{32.88} \\ &= \pm 0.015,\end{aligned}$$

or $\pm 1.5\%$.

We leave it to the reader to confirm this, but if the diameter of the ball was supposed to be 10cm, the same manufacturing tolerance would give a propagated error in mass of ± 12.33g, which corresponds to a *percent error* of $\pm 0.188\%$. While the amount of error is much greater ($12.33 > 0.493$), the percent error is much lower.

Notes:

Exercises 4.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: Given a differentiable function $y = f(x)$, we are generally free to choose a value for dx, which then determines the value of dy.

2. T/F: The symbols "dx" and "Δx" represent the same concept.

3. T/F: The symbols "dy" and "Δy" represent the same concept.

4. T/F: Differentials are important in the study of integration.

5. How are differentials and tangent lines related?

Problems

In Exercises 6 – 17, use differentials to approximate the given value by hand.

6. 2.05^2

7. 5.93^2

8. 5.1^3

9. 6.8^3

10. $\sqrt{16.5}$

11. $\sqrt{24}$

12. $\sqrt[3]{63}$

13. $\sqrt[3]{8.5}$

14. $\sin 3$

15. $\cos 1.5$

16. $e^{0.1}$

In Exercises 17 – 29, compute the differential dy.

17. $y = x^2 + 3x - 5$

18. $y = x^7 - x^5$

19. $y = \dfrac{1}{4x^2}$

20. $y = (2x + \sin x)^2$

21. $y = x^2 e^{3x}$

22. $y = \dfrac{4}{x^4}$

23. $y = \dfrac{2x}{\tan x + 1}$

24. $y = \ln(5x)$

25. $y = e^x \sin x$

26. $y = \cos(\sin x)$

27. $y = \dfrac{x+1}{x+2}$

28. $y = 3^x \ln x$

29. $y = x \ln x - x$

30. A set of plastic spheres are to be made with a diameter of 1cm. If the manufacturing process is accurate to 1mm, what is the propagated error in volume of the spheres?

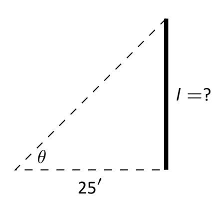
31. The distance, in feet, a stone drops in t seconds is given by $d(t) = 16t^2$. The depth of a hole is to be approximated by dropping a rock and listening for it to hit the bottom. What is the propagated error if the time measurement is accurate to $2/10^{\text{ths}}$ of a second and the measured time is:
    (a) 2 seconds?
    (b) 5 seconds?

32. What is the propagated error in the measurement of the cross sectional area of a circular log if the diameter is measured at $15''$, accurate to $1/4''$?

33. A wall is to be painted that is $8'$ high and is measured to be $10',\ 7''$ long. Find the propagated error in the measurement of the wall's surface area if the measurement is accurate to $1/2''$.

Exercises 34 – 38 explore some issues related to surveying in which distances are approximated using other measured distances and measured angles. *(Hint: Convert all angles to radians before computing.)*

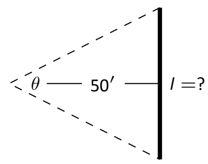
34. The length l of a long wall is to be approximated. The angle θ, as shown in the diagram (not to scale), is measured to be 85.2°, accurate to 1°. Assume that the triangle formed is a right triangle.



    (a) What is the measured length l of the wall?
    (b) What is the propagated error?
    (c) What is the percent error?

35. Answer the questions of Exercise 34, but with a measured angle of 71.5°, accurate to 1°, measured from a point $100'$ from the wall.

36. The length l of a long wall is to be calculated by measuring the angle θ shown in the diagram (not to scale). Assume the formed triangle is an isosceles triangle. The measured angle is 143°, accurate to 1°.



(a) What is the measured length of the wall?

(b) What is the propagated error?

(c) What is the percent error?

37. The length of the walls in Exercises 34 – 36 are essentially the same. Which setup gives the most accurate result?

38. Consider the setup in Exercises 36. This time, assume the angle measurement of 143° is exact but the measured $50'$ from the wall is accurate to $6''$. What is the approximate percent error?

4.4 Newton's Method

Solving equations is one of the most important things we do in mathematics, yet we are surprisingly limited in what we can solve analytically. For instance, equations as simple as $x^5 + x + 1 = 0$ or $\cos x = x$ cannot be solved by algebraic methods in terms of familiar functions. Fortunately, there are methods that can give us *approximate* solutions to equations like these. These methods can usually give an approximation correct to as many decimal places as we like. In Section 1.6 we learned about the Bisection Method. This section focuses on another technique (which generally works faster), called Newton's Method.

Newton's Method is built around tangent lines. The main idea is that if x is sufficiently close to a root of $f(x)$, then the tangent line to the graph at $(x, f(x))$ will cross the x-axis at a point closer to the root than x.

We start Newton's Method with an initial guess about roughly where the root is. Call this x_0. (See Figure 4.9(a).) Draw the tangent line to the graph at $(x_0, f(x_0))$ and see where it meets the x-axis. Call this point x_1. Then repeat the process – draw the tangent line to the graph at $(x_1, f(x_1))$ and see where it meets the x-axis. (See Figure 4.9(b).) Call this point x_2. Repeat the process again to get x_3, x_4, etc. This sequence of points will often converge rather quickly to a root of f.

We can use this *geometric* process to create an *algebraic* process. Let's look at how we found x_1. We started with the tangent line to the graph at $(x_0, f(x_0))$. The slope of this tangent line is $f'(x_0)$ and the equation of the line is

$$y = f'(x_0)(x - x_0) + f(x_0).$$

This line crosses the x-axis when $y = 0$, and the x–value where it crosses is what we called x_1. So let $y = 0$ and replace x with x_1, giving the equation:

$$0 = f'(x_0)(x_1 - x_0) + f(x_0).$$

Now solve for x_1:

$$x_1 = x_0 - \frac{f(x_0)}{f'(x_0)}.$$

Since we repeat the same geometric process to find x_2 from x_1, we have

$$x_2 = x_1 - \frac{f(x_1)}{f'(x_1)}.$$

In general, given an approximation x_n, we can find the next approximation, x_{n+1} as follows:

$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}.$$

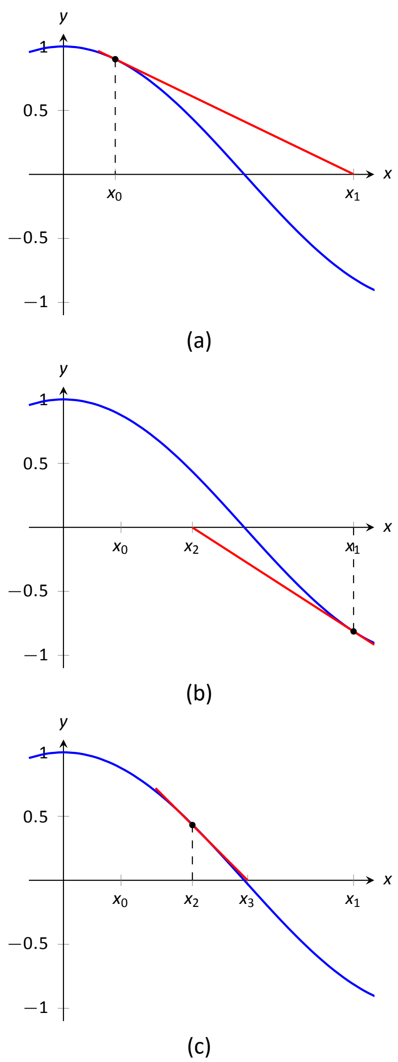


Figure 4.9: Demonstrating the geometric concept behind Newton's Method.

Notes:

We summarize this process as follows.

Key Idea 10 Newton's Method

Let f be a differentiable function on an interval I with a root in I. To approximate the value of the root, accurate to d decimal places:

1. Choose a value x_0 as an initial approximation of the root. (This is often done by looking at a graph of f.)
2. Create successive approximations iteratively; given an approximation x_n, compute the next approximation x_{n+1} as
$$x_{n+1} = x_n - \frac{f(x_n)}{f'(x_n)}.$$
3. Stop the iterations when successive approximations do not differ in the first d places after the decimal point.

Watch the video:
Newton's Method at
`http://patrickjmt.com/newtons-method/`

Note: Newton's Method is not infallible. The sequence of approximate values may not converge, or it may converge so slowly that one is "tricked" into thinking a certain approximation is better than it actually is. These issues will be discussed at the end of the section.

Let's practice Newton's Method with a concrete example.

Example 4.4.1 Using Newton's Method

Approximate the real root of $x^3 - x^2 - 1 = 0$, accurate to the first 3 places after the decimal, using Newton's Method and an initial approximation of $x_0 = 1$.

Solution To begin, we compute $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 2x$. Then we apply the Newton's Method algorithm, outlined in Key Idea 10.

$$x_1 = 1 - \frac{f(1)}{f'(1)} = 1 - \frac{1^3 - 1^2 - 1}{3 \cdot 1^2 - 2 \cdot 1} = 2,$$
$$x_2 = 2 - \frac{f(2)}{f'(2)} = 2 - \frac{2^3 - 2^2 - 1}{3 \cdot 2^2 - 2 \cdot 2} = 1.625,$$

Notes:

$$x_3 = 1.625 - \frac{f(1.625)}{f'(1.625)} = 1.625 - \frac{1.625^3 - 1.625^2 - 1}{3 \cdot 1.625^2 - 2 \cdot 1.625} \approx 1.48579,$$

$$x_4 = 1.48579 - \frac{f(1.48579)}{f'(1.48579)} \approx 1.46596,$$

$$x_5 = 1.46596 - \frac{f(1.46596)}{f'(1.46596)} \approx 1.46557$$

We performed 5 iterations of Newton's Method to find a root accurate to the first 3 places after the decimal; our final approximation is 1.465. The exact value of the root, to six decimal places, is 1.465571; It turns out that our x_5 is accurate to more than just 3 decimal places.

A graph of $f(x)$ is given in Figure 4.10. We can see from the graph that our initial approximation of $x_0 = 1$ was not particularly accurate; a closer guess would have been $x_0 = 1.5$. Our choice was based on ease of initial calculation, and shows that Newton's Method can be robust enough that we do not have to make a very accurate initial approximation.

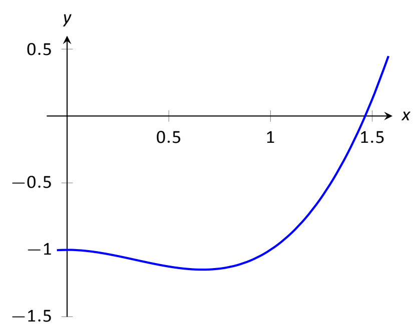


Figure 4.10: A graph of $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 1$ in Example 4.4.1.

We can automate this process on a calculator that has an `Ans` key that returns the result of the previous calculation. Start by pressing `1` and then `Enter`. (We have just entered our initial guess, $x_0 = 1$.) Now compute

$$\texttt{Ans} - \frac{f(\texttt{Ans})}{f'(\texttt{Ans})}$$

by entering the following and repeatedly press the `Enter` key:

```
Ans-(Ans^3-Ans^2-1)/(3*Ans^2-2*Ans)
```

Each time we press the `Enter` key, we are finding the successive approximations, x_1, x_2, …, and each one is getting closer to the root. In fact, once we get past around x_7 or so, the approximations don't appear to be changing. They actually are changing, but the change is far enough to the right of the decimal point that it doesn't show up on the calculator's display. When this happens, we can be pretty confident that we have found an accurate approximation.

We can use a similar approach in most spreadsheet programs, which intelligently copy formulas. Start by entering `1` in cell A1. Then in cell A2, enter:

```
A1-(A1^3-A1^2-1)/(3*A1^2-2*A1)
```

Copy this cell, and paste it into A3. The spreadsheet will automatically change A1 to A2, giving you the next approximation. Continue pasting this into A4, A5, and so on. Each time we paste the formula, we are finding the successive approximations, and each one is getting closer to the root.

Notes:

Using a calculator in this manner makes the calculations simple; many iterations can be computed very quickly.

Example 4.4.2 Using Newton's Method to find where functions intersect

Use Newton's Method to approximate a solution to $\cos x = x$, accurate to 5 places after the decimal.

Solution Newton's Method provides a method of solving $f(x) = 0$; it is not (directly) a method for solving equations like $f(x) = g(x)$. However, this is not a problem; we can rewrite the latter equation as $f(x) - g(x) = 0$ and then use Newton's Method.

So we rewrite $\cos x = x$ as $\cos x - x = 0$. Written this way, we are finding a root of $f(x) = \cos x - x$. We compute $f'(x) = -\sin x - 1$. Next we need a starting value, x_0. Consider Figure 4.11, where $f(x) = \cos x - x$ is graphed. It seems that $x_0 = 0.75$ is pretty close to the root, so we will use that as our x_0. (The figure also shows the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = x$, drawn with dashed lines. Note how they intersect at the same x value as when $f(x) = 0$.)

We now compute x_1, x_2, etc. The formula for x_1 is

$$x_1 = 0.75 - \frac{\cos(0.75) - 0.75}{-\sin(0.75) - 1} \approx 0.7391111388.$$

Apply Newton's Method again to find x_2:

$$x_2 = 0.7391111388 - \frac{\cos(0.7391111388) - 0.7391111388}{-\sin(0.7391111388) - 1} \approx 0.7390851334.$$

We can continue this way, but it is really best to automate this process. On a calculator with an Ans key, we would start by pressing 0.75, then `Enter`, inputting our initial approximation. We then enter:

```
Ans - (cos(Ans)-Ans)/(-sin(Ans)-1).
```

(In a spreadsheet, we would enter `A1-(cos(A1)-A1)/(-sin(A1)-1)` in A2.)

Repeatedly pressing the `Enter` key gives successive approximations. We quickly find:

$$\begin{aligned} x_3 &= 0.7390851332 \\ x_4 &= 0.7390851332. \end{aligned}$$

Our approximations x_2 and x_3 did not differ for at least the first 5 places after the decimal, so we could have stopped. However, using our calculator in the manner described is easy, so finding x_4 was not hard. It is interesting to see how we found an approximation, accurate to as many decimal places as our calculator displays, in just 4 iterations.

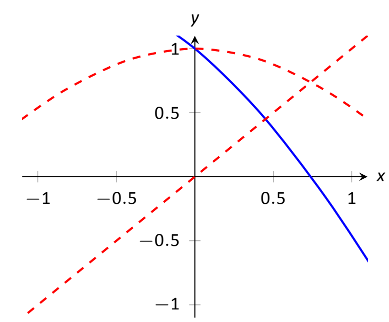


Figure 4.11: A graph of $f(x) = \cos x - x$ used to find an initial approximation of its root.

Notes:

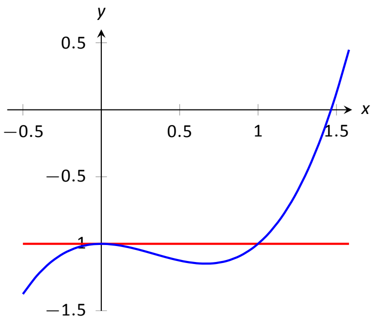


Figure 4.12: A graph of $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 1$, showing why an initial approximation of $x_0 = 0$ with Newton's Method fails.

If you know how to program, you can translate the following pseudocode into your favorite language to perform the computation in this problem.

```
x = .75
while true
    oldx = x
    x = x - (cos(x)-x)/(-sin(x)-1)
    print x
    if abs(x-oldx) < .0000000001
        break
```

This code calculates x_1, x_2, etc., storing each result in the variable `x`. The previous approximation is stored in the variable `oldx`. We continue looping until the difference between two successive approximations, `abs(x-oldx)`, is less than some small tolerance, in this case, `.0000000001`.

Convergence of Newton's Method

What should one use for the initial guess, x_0? Generally, the closer to the actual root the initial guess is, the better. However, some initial guesses should be avoided. For instance, consider Example 4.4.1 where we sought the root to $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 1$. Choosing $x_0 = 0$ would have been a particularly poor choice. Consider Figure 4.12, where $f(x)$ is graphed along with its tangent line at $x = 0$. Since $f'(0) = 0$, the tangent line is horizontal and does not intersect the x–axis. Graphically, we see that Newton's Method fails.

We can also see analytically that it fails. Since

$$x_1 = 0 - \frac{f(0)}{f'(0)}$$

and $f'(0) = 0$, we see that x_1 is not well defined.

This problem can also occur if, for instance, it turns out that $f'(x_5) = 0$. Adjusting the initial approximation x_0 by a very small amount will likely fix the problem.

It is also possible for Newton's Method to not converge while each successive approximation is well defined. Consider $f(x) = x^{1/3}$, as shown in Figure 4.13. It is clear that the root is $x = 0$, but let's approximate this with $x_0 = 0.1$. Figure 4.13(a) shows graphically the calculation of x_1; notice how it is farther from the root than x_0. Figures 4.13(b) and (c) show the calculation of x_2 and x_3, which are even farther away; our successive approximations are getting worse. (It turns out that in this particular example, each successive approximation is twice as far from the true answer as the previous approximation.)

There is no "fix" to this problem; Newton's Method simply will not work and another method must be used.

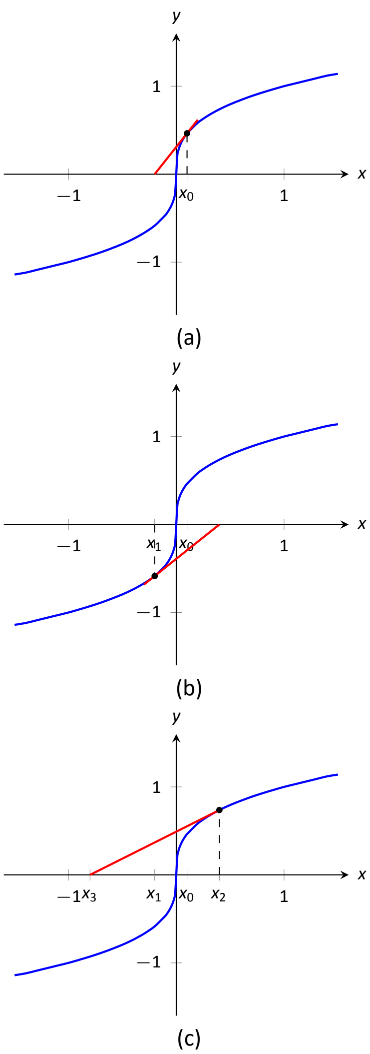


Figure 4.13: Newton's Method fails to find a root of $f(x) = x^{1/3}$, regardless of the choice of x_0.

Notes:

While Newton's Method does not always work, it does work "most of the time," and it is generally very fast. Once the approximations get close to the root, Newton's Method can as much as double the number of correct decimal places with each successive approximation. A course in Numerical Analysis will introduce the reader to more iterative root finding methods, as well as give greater detail about the strengths and weaknesses of Newton's Method.

We first learned of the derivative in the context of instantaneous rates of change and slopes of tangent lines. We furthered our understanding of the power of the derivative by studying how it relates to the graph of a function (leading to ideas of increasing/decreasing and concavity). This chapter has put the derivative to yet more uses:

- Related Rates (furthering our use of the derivative to find instantaneous rates of change)
- Optimization (applied extreme values), and
- Differentials (useful for various approximations and for something called integration).
- Equation solving (Newton's Method)

In the next chapters, we will consider the "reverse" problem to computing the derivative: given a function f, can we find a function whose derivative is f? Be able to do so opens up an incredible world of mathematics and applications.

Notes:

Exercises 4.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: Given a function $f(x)$, Newton's Method produces an exact solution to $f(x) = 0$.

2. T/F: In order to get a solution to $f(x) = 0$ accurate to d places after the decimal, at least $d + 1$ iterations of Newtons' Method must be used.

Problems

In Exercises 3 – 7, the roots of $f(x)$ are known or are easily found. Use 5 iterations of Newton's Method with the given initial approximation to approximate the root. Compare it to the known value of the root.

3. $f(x) = \cos x$, $x_0 = 1.5$

4. $f(x) = \sin x$, $x_0 = 1$

5. $f(x) = x^2 + x - 2$, $x_0 = 0$

6. $f(x) = x^2 - 2$, $x_0 = 1.5$

7. $f(x) = \ln x$, $x_0 = 2$

In Exercises 8 – 11, use Newton's Method to approximate all roots of the given functions accurate to 3 places after the decimal. If an interval is given, find only the roots that lie in that interval. Use technology to obtain good initial approximations.

8. $f(x) = x^3 + 5x^2 - x - 1$

9. $f(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 - 7x^2 - x + 5$

10. $f(x) = x^{17} - 2x^{13} - 10x^8 + 10$ on $(-2, 2)$

11. $f(x) = x^2 \cos x + (x - 1) \sin x$ on $(-3, 3)$

In Exercises 12 – 15, use Newton's Method to approximate when the given functions are equal, accurate to 3 places after the decimal. Use technology to obtain good initial approximations.

12. $f(x) = x^2$, $g(x) = \cos x$

13. $f(x) = x^2 - 1$, $g(x) = \sin x$

14. $f(x) = e^{x^2}$, $g(x) = \cos x$

15. $f(x) = x$, $g(x) = \tan x$ on $[-6, 6]$

16. Why does Newton's Method fail in finding a root of $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + x + 3$ when $x_0 = 1$?

17. Why does Newton's Method fail in finding a root of $f(x) = -17x^4 + 130x^3 - 301x^2 + 156x + 156$ when $x_0 = 1$?

In Exercises 18 – 21, use Newton's Method to approximate the given value.

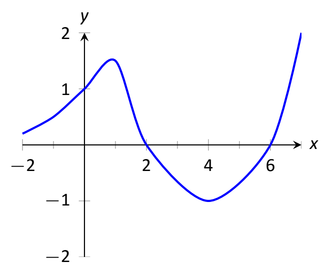
18. $\sqrt{16.5}$.

19. $\sqrt{24}$.

20. $\sqrt[3]{63}$.

21. $\sqrt[3]{8.5}$.

22. Show graphically what happens when Newton's Method is used at different x_0 for the function shown. (a) $x_0 = 0$ (b) $x_0 = 1$ (c) $x_0 = 3$ (d) $x_0 = 4$ (e) $x_0 = 5$



5: Integration

We have spent considerable time considering the derivatives of a function and their applications. In the following chapters, we are going to starting thinking in "the other direction." That is, given a function $f(x)$, we are going to consider functions $F(x)$ such that $F'(x) = f(x)$. There are numerous reasons this will prove to be useful: these functions will help us compute areas, volumes, mass, force, pressure, work, and much more.

5.1 Antiderivatives and Indefinite Integration

Given a function $y = f(x)$, a *differential equation* is one that incorporates y, x, and the derivatives of y. For instance, a simple differential equation is:

$$y' = 2x.$$

Solving a differential equation amounts to finding a function y that satisfies the given equation. Take a moment and consider that equation; can you find a function y such that $y' = 2x$?

Can you find another?

And yet another?

Hopefully one was able to come up with at least one solution: $y = x^2$. "Finding another" may have seemed impossible until one realizes that a function like $y = x^2 + 1$ also has a derivative of $2x$. Once that discovery is made, finding "yet another" is not difficult; the function $y = x^2 + 123{,}456{,}789$ also has a derivative of $2x$. The differential equation $y' = 2x$ has many solutions. This leads us to some definitions.

Definition 20 Antiderivatives
Let a function $f(x)$ be given. An **antiderivative** of $f(x)$ is a function $F(x)$ such that $F'(x) = f(x)$.

We refer to *an* antiderivative of f, as opposed to *the* antiderivative of f, since antiderivatives are not unique. We often use upper-case letters to denote antiderivatives.

Theorem 31 Antiderivative Forms
Let $F(x)$ and $G(x)$ be antiderivatives of $f(x)$. Then there exists a constant C such that
$$G(x) = F(x) + C.$$

Given a function f and one of its antiderivatives F, we know *all* antiderivatives of f have the form $F(x) + C$ for some constant C.

Definition 21 Indefinite Integrals
The set of all antiderivatives of $f(x)$ is the **indefinite integral of** f, denoted by
$$\int f(x)\ dx.$$

Using Definitions 20 and 21, we can say that
$$\int f(x)\ dx = F(x) + C.$$

Let's analyze this indefinite integral notation.

Integration symbol   Differential of x Constant of integration

$$\int f(x)\ dx = F(x) + C$$

Integrand   One antiderivative

The integration symbol, $\int$, is in reality an "elongated S," representing "take the sum." We will later see how *sums* and *antiderivatives* are related.

The function we want to find an antiderivative of is called the *integrand*. It contains the differential of the variable we are integrating with respect to. The $\int$ symbol and the differential dx are not "bookends" with a function sandwiched in between; rather, the symbol $\int$ means "find all antiderivatives of what follows," and the function $f(x)$ and dx are multiplied together; the dx does not "just sit there."

Let's practice using this notation.

Notes:

Example 5.1.1 Evaluating indefinite integrals

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \sin x\, dx$.

Solution We are asked to find all functions $F(x)$ such that $F'(x) = \sin x$. Some thought will lead us to one solution: $F(x) = -\cos x$, because $\frac{d}{dx}(-\cos x) = \sin x$.

The indefinite integral of $\sin x$ is thus $-\cos x$, plus a constant of integration. So:

$$\int \sin x\, dx = -\cos x + C.$$

A commonly asked question is "What happened to the *dx*?" The unenlightened response is "Don't worry about it. It just goes away." A full understanding includes the following.

This process of *antidifferentiation* is really solving a *differential* question. The integral

$$\int \sin x\, dx$$

presents us with a differential, $dy = \sin x\, dx$. It is asking: "What is y?" We found lots of solutions, all of the form $y = -\cos x + C$.

Letting $dy = \sin x\, dx$, rewrite

$$\int \sin x\, dx \quad \text{as} \quad \int dy.$$

This is asking: "What functions have a differential of the form dy?" The answer is "Functions of the form $y + C$, where C is a constant." What is y? We have lots of choices, all differing by a constant; the simplest choice is $y = -\cos x$.

Understanding all of this is more important later as we try to find antiderivatives of more complicated functions. In this section, we will simply explore the rules of indefinite integration, and one can succeed for now with answering "What happened to the *dx*?" with "It went away."

Let's practice once more before stating integration rules.

Note: Recall from Definition 19 that dx is any nonzero real number and $dy = f'(x)dx$.

Example 5.1.2 Evaluating indefinite integrals

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int (3x^2 + 4x + 5)\, dx$.

Solution We seek a function $F(x)$ whose derivative is $3x^2 + 4x + 5$. When taking derivatives, we can consider functions term–by–term, so we can likely do that here.

What functions have a derivative of $3x^2$? Some thought will lead us to a cubic, specifically $x^3 + C_1$, where C_1 is a constant.

Notes:

What functions have a derivative of $4x$? Here the x term is raised to the first power, so we likely seek a quadratic. Some thought should lead us to $2x^2 + C_2$, where C_2 is a constant.

Finally, what functions have a derivative of 5? Functions of the form $5x + C_3$, where C_3 is a constant.

Our answer appears to be

$$\int (3x^2 + 4x + 5)\ dx = x^3 + C_1 + 2x^2 + C_2 + 5x + C_3.$$

We do not need three separate constants of integration; combine them as one constant, giving the final answer of

$$\int (3x^2 + 4x + 5)\ dx = x^3 + 2x^2 + 5x + C.$$

It is easy to verify our answer; take the derivative of $x^3 + 2x^3 + 5x + C$ and see we indeed get $3x^2 + 4x + 5$.

This final step of "verifying our answer" is important both practically and theoretically. In general, taking derivatives is easier than finding antiderivatives so checking our work is easy and vital as we learn.

We also see that taking the derivative of our answer returns the function in the integrand. Thus we can say that:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\int f(x)\ dx\right) = f(x).$$

Differentiation "undoes" the work done by antidifferentiation.

Theorem 21 gave a list of the derivatives of common functions we had learned at that point. We restate part of that list here to stress the relationship between derivatives and antiderivatives. This list will also be useful as a glossary of common antiderivatives as we learn.

Theorem 32 Derivatives and Antiderivatives

Common Differentiation Rules	Common Indefinite Integral Rules
1. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(cf(x)\big) = c \cdot f'(x)$	1. $\int c \cdot f(x)\ dx = c \cdot \int f(x)\ dx$
2. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(f(x) \pm g(x)\big) = f'(x) \pm g'(x)$	2. $\int \big(f(x) \pm g(x)\big)\ dx = \int f(x)\ dx \pm \int g(x)\ dx$
3. $\frac{d}{dx}\big(C\big) = 0$	3. $\int 0\ dx = C$

Notes:

We highlight a few important points from Theorem 32:

- Rule #1 states $\int c \cdot f(x)\ dx = c \cdot \int f(x)\ dx$. This is the Constant Multiple Rule: we can temporarily ignore constants when finding antiderivatives, just as we did when computing derivatives (i.e., $\frac{d}{dx}\big(3x^2\big)$ is just as easy to compute as $\frac{d}{dx}\big(x^2\big)$). An example:

$$\int 5\cos x\ dx = 5 \cdot \int \cos x\ dx = 5 \cdot (\sin x + C) = 5\sin x + C.$$

  In the last step we can consider the constant as also being multiplied by 5, but "5 times a constant" is still a constant, so we just write "C".

- Rule #2 is the Sum/Difference Rule: we can split integrals apart when the integrand contains terms that are added/subtracted, as we did in Example 5.1.2. So:

$$\begin{aligned}\int (3x^2 + 4x + 5)\ dx &= \int 3x^2\ dx + \int 4x\ dx + \int 5\ dx\\ &= 3\int x^2\ dx + 4\int x\ dx + \int 5\ dx\\ &= 3 \cdot \frac{1}{3}x^3 + 4 \cdot \frac{1}{2}x^2 + 5x + C\\ &= x^3 + 2x^2 + 5x + C\end{aligned}$$

  In practice we generally do not write out all these steps, but we demonstrate them here for completeness.

Notes:

Theorem 33 Derivatives and Antiderivatives

Common Derivatives	Common Indefinite Integrals
4. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(x^n\right) = n \cdot x^{n-1}$	4. $\int x^n\,dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C \quad (n \neq -1)$
5. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\ln \lvert x \rvert\right) = \frac{1}{x}$	5. $\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \ln \lvert x \rvert + C$
6. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(e^x\right) = e^x$	6. $\int e^x\,dx = e^x + C$
7. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\sin x\right) = \cos x$	7. $\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x + C$
8. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\cos x\right) = -\sin x$	8. $\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x + C$
9. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\tan x\right) = \sec^2 x$	9. $\int \sec^2 x\,dx = \tan x + C$
10. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\cot x\right) = -\csc^2 x$	10. $\int \csc^2 x\,dx = -\cot x + C$
11. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\sec x\right) = \sec x \tan x$	11. $\int \sec x \tan x\,dx = \sec x + C$
12. $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\csc x\right) = -\csc x \cot x$	12. $\int \csc x \cot x\,dx = -\csc x + C$

- Rule #4 is the Power Rule of indefinite integration. There are two important things to keep in mind:

  1. Notice the restriction that $n \neq -1$. This is important: $\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx \neq$ "$\frac{1}{0}x^0 + C$"; rather, see Rule #5.
  2. We are presenting antidifferentiation as the "inverse operation" of differentiation. Here is a useful quote to remember:

     > "Inverse operations do the opposite things in the opposite order."

     When taking a derivative using the Power Rule, we **first** *multiply* by the power, then **second** *subtract* 1 from the power. To find the antiderivative, do the opposite things in the opposite order: **first** *add* one to the power, then **second** *divide* by the power.

- Note that Rule #5 incorporates the absolute value of x. The exercises will work the reader through why this is the case; for now, know the absolute value is important and cannot be ignored.

Notes:

Initial Value Problems

In Section 2.3 we saw that the derivative of a position function gave a velocity function, and the derivative of a velocity function describes acceleration. We can now go "the other way:" the antiderivative of an acceleration function gives a velocity function, etc. While there is just one derivative of a given function, there are infinite antiderivatives. Therefore we cannot ask "What is *the* velocity of an object whose acceleration is -32ft/s^2?", since there is more than one answer.

Watch the video:
Antiderivatives: Acceleration, Velocity, Position Functions — A Word Problem at
`https://youtu.be/brNADtx8Qu8`

We can find *the* answer if we provide more information with the question, as done in the following example. Often the additional information comes in the form of an *initial value*, a value of the function that one knows beforehand.

Example 5.1.3 Solving initial value problems

The acceleration due to gravity of a falling object is -32 ft/s^2. At time $t = 3$, a falling object had a velocity of -10 ft/s. Find the equation of the object's velocity.

Solution We want to know a velocity function, $v(t)$. We know two things:

- The acceleration, i.e., $v'(t) = -32$, and
- the velocity at a specific time, i.e., $v(3) = -10$.

Using the first piece of information, we know that $v(t)$ is an antiderivative of $v'(t) = -32$. So we begin by finding the indefinite integral of -32:

$$v(t) = \int (-32)\, dt = -32t + C.$$

Now we use the fact that $v(3) = -10$ to find C:

$$\begin{aligned} v(t) &= -32t + C \\ v(3) &= -10 \\ -32(3) + C &= -10 \\ C &= 86 \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Thus $v(t) = -32t + 86$. We can use this equation to understand the motion of the object: when $t = 0$, the object had a velocity of $v(0) = 86$ ft/s. Since the velocity is positive, the object was moving upward.

When did the object begin moving down? Immediately after $v(t) = 0$:

$$-32t + 86 = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t = \frac{43}{16} \approx 2.69\text{s}.$$

Recognize that we are able to determine quite a bit about the path of the object knowing just its acceleration and its velocity at a single point in time.

Example 5.1.4 Solving initial value problems

Find $f(t)$, given that $f''(t) = \cos t$, $f'(0) = 3$ and $f(0) = 5$.

Solution We start by finding $f'(t)$, which is an antiderivative of $f''(t)$:

$$f'(t) = \int f''(t)\,dt = \int \cos t\,dt = \sin t + C.$$

So $f'(t) = \sin t + C$ for the correct value of C. We are given that $f'(0) = 3$, so:

$$f'(0) = 3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \sin 0 + C = 3 \quad \Rightarrow \quad C = 3.$$

Using the initial value, we have found $f'(t) = \sin t + 3$.

We now find $f(t)$ by integrating again.

$$f(t) = \int f'(t)\,dt = \int (\sin t + 3)\,dt = -\cos t + 3t + C.$$

We are given that $f(0) = 5$, so

$$\begin{aligned} -\cos 0 + 3(0) + C &= 5 \\ -1 + C &= 5 \\ C &= 6 \end{aligned}$$

Thus $f(t) = -\cos t + 3t + 6$.

This section introduced antiderivatives and the indefinite integral. We found they are needed when finding a function given information about its derivative(s). For instance, we found a position function given a velocity function.

In the next section, we will see how position and velocity are unexpectedly related by the areas of certain regions on a graph of the velocity function. Then, in Section 5.4, we will see how areas and antiderivatives are closely tied together.

Notes:

Exercises 5.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Define the term “antiderivative” in your own words.

2. Is it more accurate to refer to “the” antiderivative of $f(x)$ or “an” antiderivative of $f(x)$?

3. Use your own words to define the indefinite integral of $f(x)$.

4. Fill in the blanks: “Inverse operations do the ________ things in the ________ order.”

5. What is an “initial value problem”?

6. The derivative of a position function is a ________ function.

7. The antiderivative of an acceleration function is a ________ function.

Problems

In Exercises 8 – 30, evaluate the given indefinite integral.

8. $\displaystyle\int 3x^3\,dx$

9. $\displaystyle\int x^8\,dx$

10. $\displaystyle\int (10x^2-2)\,dx$

11. $\displaystyle\int dt$

12. $\displaystyle\int 1\,ds$

13. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{3t^2}\,dt$

14. $\displaystyle\int \frac{3}{t^2}\,dt$

15. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

16. $\displaystyle\int \sec^2\theta\,d\theta$

17. $\displaystyle\int \sin\theta\,d\theta$

18. $\displaystyle\int (\sec x\tan x+\csc x\cot x)\,dx$

19. $\displaystyle\int 5e^\theta\,d\theta$

20. $\displaystyle\int 3^t\,dt$

21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{5^t}{2}\,dt$

22. $\displaystyle\int (2t+3)^2\,dt$

23. $\displaystyle\int (t^2+3)(t^3-2t)\,dt$

24. $\displaystyle\int x^2x^3\,dx$

25. $\displaystyle\int e^\pi\,dx$

26. $\displaystyle\int a\,dx$

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{3}{x^4}\,dx$

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{4x^5-7}{x^3}\,dx$

29. $\displaystyle\int \sqrt{x^7}\,dx$

30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3-7x}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

31. This problem investigates why Theorem 32 states that $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx=\ln|x|+C$.
    (a) What is the domain of $y=\ln x$?
    (b) Find $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\ln x\big)$.
    (c) What is the domain of $y=\ln(-x)$?
    (d) Find $\frac{d}{dx}\big(\ln(-x)\big)$.
    (e) You should find that $1/x$ has two types of antiderivatives, depending on whether $x>0$ or $x<0$. In one expression, give a formula for $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx$ that takes these different domains into account, and explain your answer.

In Exercises 32 – 44, find $f(x)$ described by the given initial value problem.

32. $f'(x)=\sin x$ and $f(0)=2$

33. $f'(x)=5e^x$ and $f(0)=10$

34. $f'(x)=4x^3-3x^2$ and $f(-1)=9$

35. $f'(x) = \sec^2 x$ and $f(\pi/4) = 5$

36. $f'(x) = 7^x$ and $f(2) = 1$

37. $f''(x) = 5$ and $f'(0) = 7, f(0) = 3$

38. $f''(x) = 7x$ and $f'(1) = -1, f(1) = 10$

39. $f''(x) = 5e^x$ and $f'(0) = 3, f(0) = 5$

40. $f''(\theta) = \sin\theta$ and $f'(\pi) = 2, f(\pi) = 4$

41. $f''(x) = 24x^2 + 2^x - \cos x$ and $f'(0) = 5, f(0) = 0$

42. $f''(x) = 0$ and $f'(1) = 3, f(1) = 1$

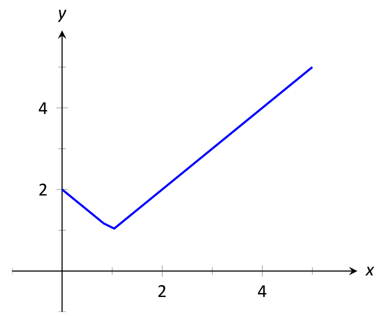
43. $f'(x) = \dfrac{-2}{x^3}$ and $f(1) = 2$

44. $f'(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$ and $f(4) = 0$

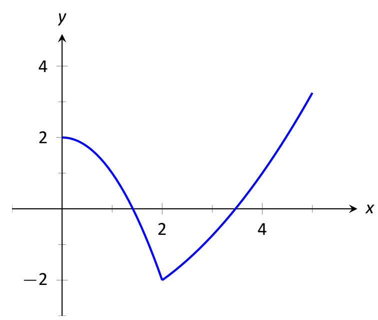
45. An object is moving so that its velocity at time t is given by $v(t) = 3\sqrt{t}$. If the object was at the origin at time $t = 0$, find it's position $s(t)$ at time t.

46. A nickel dropped from the top of the North Dakota State Capital Building has acceleration $a(t) = -32$ ft/sec^2 (ignoring air resistance), initial velocity $v(0) = 0$, and initial height $s(0) = 241.67$ ft. How long will it take the nickel to hit the ground?

47. Given the graph of f below, sketch the graph of the antiderivative F of f that passes through the origin. What do the graphs of the other antiderivatives of f look like?



48. Given the graph of f below, sketch the graph of the antiderivative F of f that passes through the origin. What do the graphs of the other antiderivatives of f look like?



Review

49. Use information gained from the first and second derivatives to sketch $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{e^x + 1}$.

50. Given $y = x^2 e^x \cos x$, find dy.

5.2 The Definite Integral

We start with an easy problem. An object travels in a straight line at a constant velocity of 5 ft/s for 10 seconds. How far away from its starting point is the object?

We approach this problem with the familiar "Distance $=$ Rate $\times$ Time" equation. In this case, Distance = 5ft/s $\times$ 10s $=$ 50 feet.

It is interesting to note that this solution of 50 feet can be represented graphically. Consider Figure 5.1, where the constant velocity of 5ft/s is graphed on the axes. Shading the area under the line from $t = 0$ to $t = 10$ gives a rectangle with an area of 50 square units; when one considers the units of the axes, we can say this area represents 50 ft.

Now consider a slightly harder situation (and not particularly realistic): an object travels in a straight line with a constant velocity of 5ft/s for 10 seconds, then instantly reverses course at a rate of 2ft/s for 4 seconds. (Since the object is traveling in the opposite direction when reversing course, we say the velocity is a constant -2ft/s.) How far away from the starting point is the object – what is its *displacement*?

Here we use "Distance $=$ Rate$_1$ $\times$ Time$_1$ + Rate$_2$ $\times$ Time$_2$," which is

$$\text{Distance} \quad = 5 \cdot 10 + (-2) \cdot 4 = 42 \text{ ft.}$$

Hence the object is 42 feet from its starting location.

We can again depict this situation graphically. In Figure 5.2 we have the velocities graphed as straight lines on $[0, 10]$ and $[10, 14]$, respectively. The displacement of the object is

$$\text{"Area above the } t\text{–axis} \quad - \quad \text{Area below the } t\text{–axis,"}$$

which is easy to calculate as $50 - 8 = 42$ feet.

Now consider a more difficult problem.

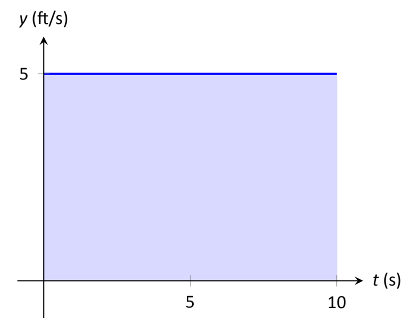


Figure 5.1: The area under a constant velocity function corresponds to distance traveled.

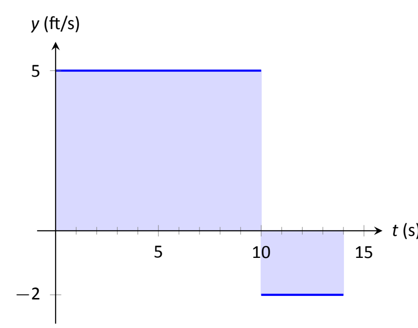


Figure 5.2: The total displacement is the area above the t–axis minus the area below the t–axis.

Example 5.2.1 Finding position using velocity

The velocity of an object moving straight up/down under the acceleration of gravity is given as $v(t) = -32t+48$, where time t is given in seconds and velocity is in ft/s. When $t = 0$, the object had a height of 0 ft.

1. What was the initial velocity of the object?
2. What was the maximum height of the object?
3. What was the height of the object at time $t = 2$?

Solution It is straightforward to find the initial velocity; at time $t = 0$, $v(0) = -32 \cdot 0 + 48 = 48$ ft/s.

Notes:

To answer questions about the height of the object, we need to find the object's position function $s(t)$. This is an initial value problem, which we studied in the previous section. We are told the initial height is 0, i.e., $s(0) = 0$. We know $s'(t) = v(t) = -32t + 48$. To find s, we find the indefinite integral of $v(t)$:

$$s(t) = \int v(t)\,dt = \int (-32t + 48)\,dt = -16t^2 + 48t + C.$$

Since $s(0) = 0$, we conclude that $C = 0$ and $s(t) = -16t^2 + 48t$.

To find the maximum height of the object, we need to find the maximum of s. Recalling our work finding extreme values, we find the critical points of s by setting its derivative equal to 0 and solving for t:

$$s'(t) = -32t + 48 = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad t = 48/32 = 1.5\text{s}.$$

(Notice how we ended up just finding when the velocity was 0ft/s!) The first derivative test shows this is a maximum, so the maximum height of the object is found at

$$s(1.5) = -16(1.5)^2 + 48(1.5) = 36\text{ft}.$$

The height at time $t = 2$ is now straightforward to compute: it is $s(2) = 32$ft.

While we have answered all three questions, let's look at them again graphically, using the concepts of area that we explored earlier.

Figure 5.3 shows a graph of $v(t)$ on axes from $t = 0$ to $t = 3$. It is again straightforward to find $v(0)$. How can we use the graph to find the maximum height of the object?

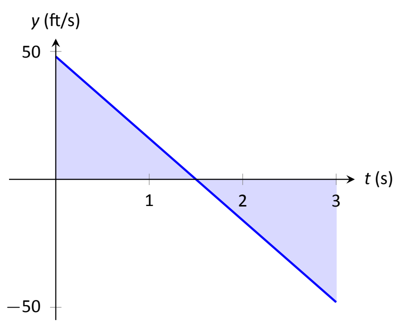


Figure 5.3: A graph of $v(t) = -32t + 48$; the shaded areas help determine displacement.

Recall how in our previous work that the displacement of the object (in this case, its height) was found as the area under the velocity curve, as shaded in the figure. Moreover, the area between the curve and the t–axis that is below the t–axis counted as "negative" area. That is, it represents the object coming back toward its starting position. So to find the maximum distance from the starting point – the maximum height – we find the area under the velocity line that is above the t–axis, i.e., from $t = 0$ to $t = 1.5$. This region is a triangle; its area is

$$\text{Area } = \frac{1}{2}\text{Base} \times \text{Height} = \frac{1}{2} \times 1.5\text{s} \times 48\text{ft/s} = 36\text{ft},$$

which matches our previous calculation of the maximum height.

Finally, we find the total *signed* area under the velocity function from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$ to find the $s(2)$, the height at $t = 2$, which is a displacement, the distance from the current position to the starting position. That is,

$$\text{Displacement = Area above the } t\text{–axis} - \text{Area below } t\text{–axis}.$$

Notes:

The regions are triangles, and we find

$$\text{Displacement} = \frac{1}{2}(1.5\text{s})(48\text{ft/s}) - \frac{1}{2}(.5\text{s})(16\text{ft/s}) = 32\text{ft}.$$

This also matches our previous calculation of the height at $t = 2$.

Notice how we answered each question in this example in two ways. Our first method was to manipulate equations using our understanding of antiderivatives and derivatives. Our second method was geometric: we answered questions looking at a graph and finding the areas of certain regions of this graph.

The above example does not *prove* a relationship between area under a velocity function and displacement, but it does indicate that there may be a relationship. Section 5.4 will fully establish fact that the area under a velocity function is displacement.

Given a graph of a continuous function $y = f(x)$, we will find that there is great use in computing the area between the curve $y = f(x)$ and the x-axis. Because of this, we need to define some terms. The **total signed area** from $x = a$ to $x = b$ under a continuous function f is

$$\begin{aligned}&(\text{area under } f \text{ and above the } x\text{–axis on } [a, b]) - \\ &\quad(\text{area above } f \text{ and under the } x\text{–axis on } [a, b]).\end{aligned}$$

Definition 22 The Definite Integral

Let $y = f(x)$ be continuous on a closed interval $[a, b]$. The **definite integral of f on** $[a, b]$ is the total signed area of f on $[a, b]$, denoted

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx,$$

where a and b are the **bounds of integration.**

By our definition, the definite integral gives the "signed area under f." We usually drop the word "signed" when talking about the definite integral, and simply say the definite integral gives "the area under f" or, more commonly, "the area under the curve."

The previous section introduced the indefinite integral, which is related to antiderivatives. We have now defined the definite integral, which relates to areas under a curve. The two are very much related, as we'll see when we learn the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus in Section 5.4. Recall that earlier we said that the "$\int$" symbol was an "elongated S" that represented finding a "sum." In

Notes:

the context of the definite integral, this notation makes a bit more sense, as we are adding up areas under the function f.

We practice using this notation.

Example 5.2.2 Evaluating definite integrals

Consider the function f given in Figure 5.4. Find:

1. $\displaystyle\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx$
2. $\displaystyle\int_3^5 f(x)\,dx$
3. $\displaystyle\int_0^5 f(x)\,dx$
4. $\displaystyle\int_0^3 5f(x)\,dx$
5. $\displaystyle\int_1^1 f(x)\,dx$

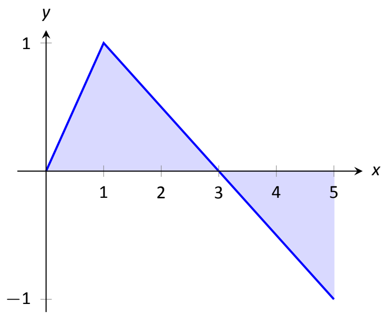


Figure 5.4: A graph of $f(x)$ in Example 5.2.2.

Solution

1. $\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx$ is the area under f on the interval $[0,3]$. This region is a triangle, so the area is $\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx = \frac{1}{2}(3)(1) = 1.5$.
2. $\int_3^5 f(x)\,dx$ represents the area of the triangle found under the x–axis on $[3,5]$. The area is $\frac{1}{2}(2)(1) = 1$; since it is found *under* the x–axis, this is "negative area." Therefore $\int_3^5 f(x)\,dx = -1$.
3. $\int_0^5 f(x)\,dx$ is the total signed area under f on $[0,5]$. This is $1.5+(-1) = 0.5$.
4. $\int_0^3 5f(x)\,dx$ is the area under $5f$ on $[0,3]$. This is sketched in Figure 5.5. Again, the region is a triangle, with height 5 times that of the height of the original triangle. Thus the area is $\int_0^3 5f(x)\,dx = 15/2 = 7.5$.
5. $\int_1^1 f(x)\,dx$ is the area under f on the "interval" $[1,1]$. This describes a line segment, not a region; it has no width. Therefore the area is 0.

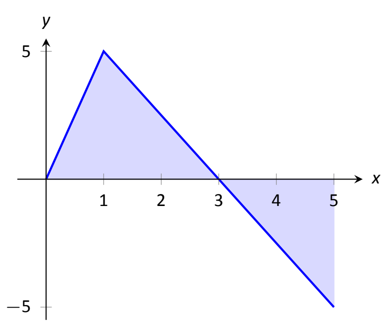


Figure 5.5: A graph of $5f$ in Example 5.2.2. (Yes, it looks just like the graph of f in Figure 5.4, just with a different y-scale.)

This example illustrates some of the properties of the definite integral, given in Theorem 34.

So far, when we have computed a definite integral $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$, we have required that $a \leq b$. In practice, it is sometimes convenient to be able to compute $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ for $a > b$. To do so, we introduce the convention that for any a and b, $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$. It will be clear why this makes sense after we introduce Riemann sums.

Notes:

Theorem 34 Properties of the Definite Integral

Let f and g be continuous on a closed interval I that contains the values a, b, and c, and let k be a constant. The following hold:

1. $\displaystyle\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = 0$

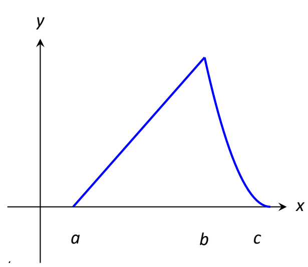
2. $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = -\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$

3. $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \int_b^c f(x)\,dx = \int_a^c f(x)\,dx$

4. $\displaystyle\int_a^b \big(f(x) \pm g(x)\big)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx \pm \int_a^b g(x)\,dx$

5. $\displaystyle\int_a^b k\cdot f(x)\,dx = k\cdot\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$

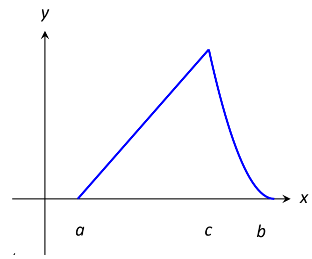
We will justify these properties after introducing Riemann sums. For now, we note that properties 1 and 5 are illustrated in Example 5.2.2 and property 2 is our convention from above. To see why property 3 makes sense geometrically, consider the figure below:



Property 3 says that the total area under this curve should be the sum of the area under the curve from a to b and the area under the curve from b to c.

What if the picture were like the following?

Notes:



Then we have

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \int_a^c f(x)\,dx + \int_c^b f(x)\,dx$$

and we can apply property 2.

$$\int_a^c f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx - \int_c^b f(x)\,dx, \qquad \text{so property 2 yields}$$
$$\int_a^c f(x)\,dx = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \int_b^c f(x)\,dx$$

Example 5.2.3 Evaluating definite integrals using Theorem 34.

Consider the graph of a function $f(x)$ shown in Figure 5.6. Answer the following:

1. Which value is greater: $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ or $\displaystyle\int_b^c f(x)\,dx$?
2. Is $\displaystyle\int_a^c f(x)\,dx$ greater or less than 0?
3. Which value is greater: $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ or $\displaystyle\int_c^b f(x)\,dx$?

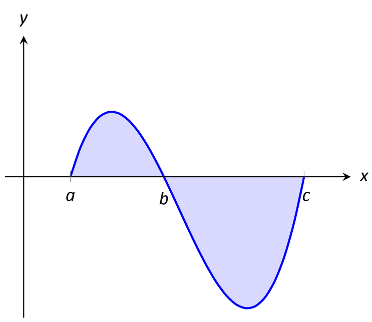


Figure 5.6: A graph of a function in Example 5.2.3.

Solution

1. $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ has a positive value (since the area is above the x–axis) whereas $\int_b^c f(x)\,dx$ has a negative value. Hence $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ is bigger.
2. $\int_a^c f(x)\,dx$ is the total signed area under f between $x = a$ and $x = c$. Since the region below the x–axis looks to be larger than the region above, we conclude that the definite integral has a value less than 0.
3. Note how the second integral has the bounds "reversed." Therefore $\int_c^b f(x)\,dx$ represents a positive number, greater than the area described by the first definite integral. Hence $\int_c^b f(x)\,dx$ is greater.

Notes:

The area definition of the definite integral allows us to use geometry to compute the definite integral of some simple functions.

Example 5.2.4 Evaluating definite integrals using geometry

Evaluate the following definite integrals:

1. $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{5}(2x-4)\,dx$
2. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{3}\sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx.$

Solution

1. It is useful to sketch the function in the integrand, as shown in Figure 5.7(a). We see we need to compute the areas of two regions, which we have labeled R_1 and R_2. Both are triangles, so the area computation is straightforward:

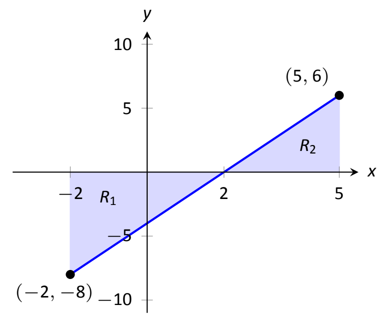
$$R_1:\frac{1}{2}(4)(8)=16 \qquad R_2:\frac{1}{2}(3)6=9.$$

Region R_1 lies under the x–axis, hence it is counted as negative area (we can think of the triangle's height as being "-8"), so

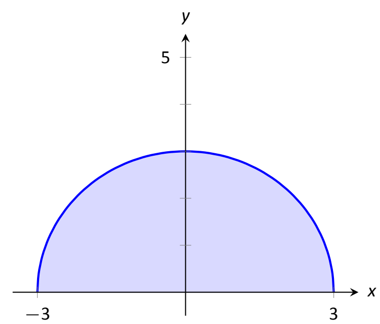
$$\int_{-2}^{5}(2x-4)\,dx=-16+9=-7.$$

2. Recognize that the integrand of this definite integral describes a half circle, as sketched in Figure 5.7(b), with radius 3. Thus the area is:

$$\int_{-3}^{3}\sqrt{9-x^2}\,dx=\frac{1}{2}\pi r^2=\frac{9}{2}\pi.$$



(a)



(b)

Figure 5.7: A graph of $f(x)=2x-4$ in (a) and $f(x)=\sqrt{9-x^2}$ in (b), from Example 5.2.4.

Example 5.2.5 Understanding motion given velocity

Consider the graph of a velocity function of an object moving in a straight line, given in Figure 5.8, where the numbers in the given regions gives the area of that region. Assume that the definite integral of a velocity function gives displacement. Find the maximum speed of the object and its maximum displacement from its starting position.

Solution Since the graph gives velocity, finding the maximum speed is simple: it looks to be 15ft/s.

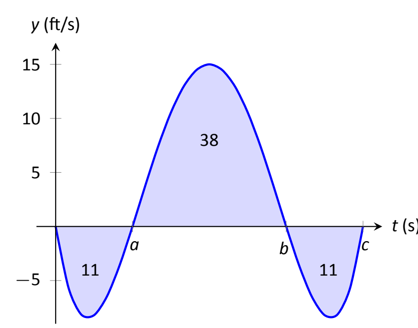


Figure 5.8: A graph of a velocity in Example 5.2.5.

Notes:

At time $t = 0$, the displacement is 0; the object is at its starting position. At time $t = a$, the object has moved backward 11 feet. Between times $t = a$ and $t = b$, the object moves forward 38 feet, bringing it into a position 27 feet forward of its starting position. From $t = b$ to $t = c$ the object is moving backwards again, hence its maximum displacement is 27 feet from its starting position.

Note: The *displacement* of the object is different from the distance traveled since the object moves backwards and forwards at different times in this example. The displacement measures how far the object is from where it started, without regard for how far it actually traveled to get there.

Watch the video:
Definite Integral as Area 2 — Breaking Up the Region
at
`https://youtu.be/Z7uyQjcFSy4`

In our examples, we have either found the areas of regions that have nice geometric shapes (such as rectangles, triangles and circles) or the areas were given to us. Consider Figure 5.9, where a region below $y = x^2$ is shaded. What is its area? The function $y = x^2$ is relatively simple, yet the shape it defines has an area that is not simple to find geometrically.

In the next section we will explore how to find the areas of such regions.

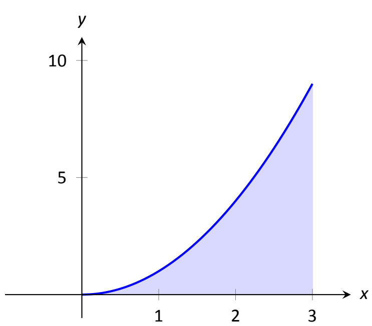


Figure 5.9: What is the area below $y = x^2$ on $[0, 3]$? The region is not a usual geometric shape.

Notes:

Exercises 5.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What is "total signed area"?

2. What is "displacement"?

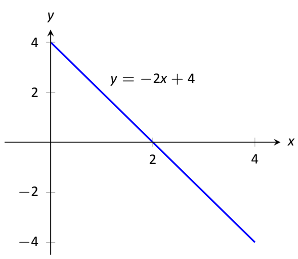
3. What is $\int_3^3 \sin x\, dx$?

4. Give a single definite integral that has the same value as

$$\int_0^1 (2x+3)\, dx + \int_1^2 (2x+3)\, dx.$$

Problems

In Exercises 5 – 9, a graph of a function $f(x)$ is given. Using the geometry of the graph, evaluate the definite integrals.

5. 

(a) $\int_0^1 (-2x+4)\, dx$

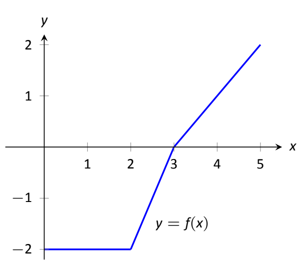
(b) $\int_0^2 (-2x+4)\, dx$

(c) $\int_0^3 (-2x+4)\, dx$

(d) $\int_1^3 (-2x+4)\, dx$

(e) $\int_2^4 (-2x+4)\, dx$

(f) $\int_0^1 (-6x+12)\, dx$

6. 

(a) $\int_0^2 f(x)\, dx$

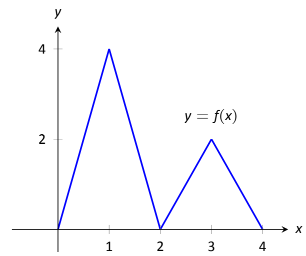
(b) $\int_0^3 f(x)\, dx$

(c) $\int_0^5 f(x)\, dx$

(d) $\int_2^5 f(x)\, dx$

(e) $\int_5^3 f(x)\, dx$

(f) $\int_0^3 -2f(x)\, dx$

7. 

(a) $\int_0^2 f(x)\, dx$

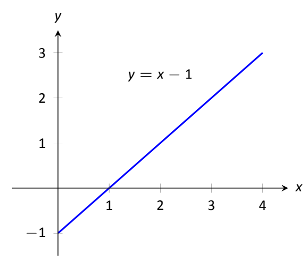
(b) $\int_2^4 f(x)\, dx$

(c) $\int_2^4 2f(x)\, dx$

(d) $\int_0^1 4x\, dx$

(e) $\int_2^3 (2x-4)\, dx$

(f) $\int_2^3 (4x-8)\, dx$

8. 

(a) $\int_0^1 (x-1)\, dx$

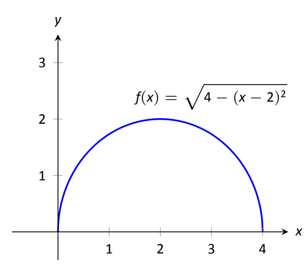
(b) $\int_0^2 (x-1)\, dx$

(c) $\int_0^3 (x-1)\, dx$

(d) $\int_2^3 (x-1)\, dx$

(e) $\int_1^4 (x-1)\, dx$

(f) $\int_1^4 \big((x-1)+1\big)\, dx$

9. 

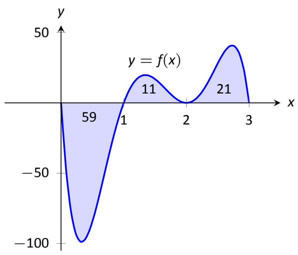
(a) $\int_0^2 f(x)\, dx$

(b) $\int_2^4 f(x)\, dx$

(c) $\int_0^4 f(x)\, dx$

(d) $\int_0^4 5f(x)\, dx$

In Exercises 10 – 14, a graph of a function $f(x)$ is given; the numbers inside the shaded regions give the area of that region. Evaluate the definite integrals using this area information.

10. 

(a) $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$

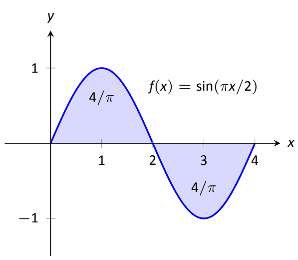
(b) $\int_0^2 f(x)\,dx$

(c) $\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx$

(d) $\int_1^2 -3f(x)\,dx$

(e) $\int_0^2 |f(x)|\,dx$

(f) $\int_0^3 |f(x)|\,dx$

11. 

(a) $\int_0^2 f(x)\,dx$

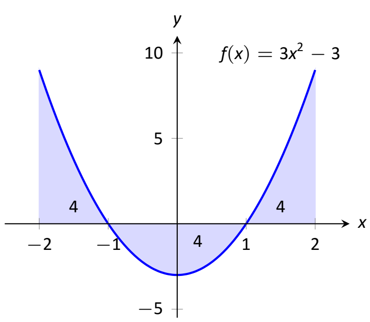
(b) $\int_2^4 f(x)\,dx$

(c) $\int_0^4 f(x)\,dx$

(d) $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$

(e) $\int_0^2 |f(x)|\,dx$

(f) $\int_0^4 |f(x)|\,dx$

12. 

(a) $\int_{-2}^{-1} f(x)\,dx$

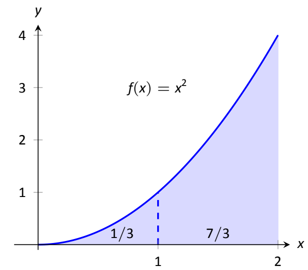
(b) $\int_1^2 f(x)\,dx$

(c) $\int_{-1}^1 f(x)\,dx$

(d) $\int_0^1 f(x)\,dx$

(e) $\int_0^2 |f(x)|\,dx$

(f) $\int_0^1 |f(x)|\,dx$

13. 

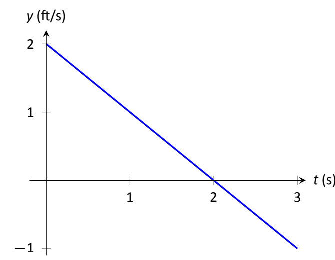
(a) $\int_0^2 5x^2\,dx$

(b) $\int_0^2 (x^2+3)\,dx$

(c) $\int_1^3 (x-1)^2\,dx$

(d) $\int_2^4 \left((x-2)^2+5\right)\,dx$

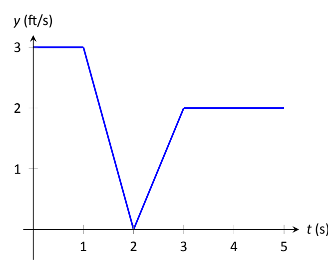
In Exercises 14 – 15, a graph of the velocity function of an object moving in a straight line is given. Answer the questions based on that graph.

14. 

(a) What is the object's maximum velocity?

(b) What is the object's maximum displacement?

(c) What is the object's total displacement on $[0, 3]$?

15. 

(a) What is the object's maximum velocity?

(b) What is the object's maximum displacement?

(c) What is the object's total displacement on $[0, 5]$?

16. An object is thrown straight up with a velocity, in ft/s, given by $v(t) = -32t + 64$, where t is in seconds, from a height of 48 feet.

(a) What is the object's maximum velocity?

(b) What is the object's maximum displacement?

(c) When does the maximum displacement occur?

(d) When will the object reach a height of 0? (Hint: find when the displacement is -48ft.)

17. An object is thrown straight up with a velocity, in ft/s, given by $v(t) = -32t + 96$, where t is in seconds, from a height of 64 feet.

    (a) What is the object's initial velocity?

    (b) When is the object's displacement 0?

    (c) How long does it take for the object to return to its initial height?

    (d) When will the object reach a height of 210 feet?

In Exercises 18 – 21, let

- $\int_0^2 f(x)\,dx = 5$,
- $\int_0^3 f(x)\,dx = 7$,
- $\int_0^2 g(x)\,dx = -3$, **and**
- $\int_2^3 g(x)\,dx = 5$.

Use these values to evaluate the given definite integrals.

18. $\int_0^2 \big(f(x) + g(x)\big)\,dx$

19. $\int_0^3 \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\,dx$

20. $\int_2^3 \big(3f(x) + 2g(x)\big)\,dx$

21. Find values for a and b such that $\int_0^3 \big(af(x) + bg(x)\big)\,dx = 0$

In Exercises 22 – 25, let

- $\int_0^3 s(t)\,dt = 10$,
- $\int_3^5 s(t)\,dt = 8$,
- $\int_3^5 r(t)\,dt = -1$, **and**
- $\int_0^5 r(t)\,dt = 11$.

Use these values to evaluate the given definite integrals.

22. $\int_0^3 \big(s(t) + r(t)\big)\,dt$

23. $\int_5^0 \big(s(t) - r(t)\big)\,dt$

24. $\int_3^3 \big(\pi s(t) - 7r(t)\big)\,dt$

25. Find values for a and b such that $\int_0^5 \big(ar(t) + bs(t)\big)\,dt = 0$

Review

In Exercises 26 – 29, evaluate the given indefinite integral.

26. $\int \big(x^3 - 2x^2 + 7x - 9\big)\,dx$

27. $\int \big(\sin x - \cos x + \sec^2 x\big)\,dx$

28. $\int \big(\sqrt[3]{t} + \frac{1}{t^2} + 2^t\big)\,dt$

29. $\int \left(\frac{1}{x} - \csc x \cot x\right)\,dx$

5.3 Riemann Sums

In the previous section we defined the definite integral of a function on $[a, b]$ to be the signed area between the curve and the x–axis. Some areas were simple to compute; we ended the section with a region whose area was not simple to compute. In this section we develop a technique to find such areas.

A fundamental calculus technique is to first answer a given problem with an approximation, then refine that approximation to make it better, then use limits in the refining process to find the exact answer. That is exactly what we will do here.

Consider the region given in Figure 5.10, which is the area under $y = 4x - x^2$ on $[0, 4]$. What is the signed area of this region – i.e., what is $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$?

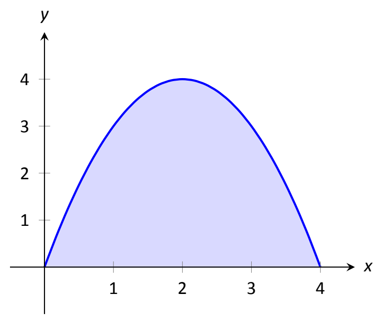


Figure 5.10: A graph of $f(x) = 4x - x^2$. What is the area of the shaded region?

We start by approximating. We can surround the region with a rectangle with height and width of 4 and find the area is approximately 16 square units. This is obviously an *over–approximation*; we are including area in the rectangle that is not under the parabola.

We have an approximation of the area, using one rectangle. How can we refine our approximation to make it better? The key to this section is this answer: *use more rectangles.*

Let's use 4 rectangles of equal width of 1. This *partitions* the interval $[0, 4]$ into 4 *subintervals*, $[0, 1]$, $[1, 2]$, $[2, 3]$ and $[3, 4]$. On each subinterval we will draw a rectangle.

There are three common ways to determine the height of these rectangles: the **Left Hand Rule**, the **Right Hand Rule**, and the **Midpoint Rule**. The **Left Hand Rule** says to evaluate the function at the left–hand endpoint of the subinterval and make the rectangle that height. In Figure 5.11, the rectangle drawn on the interval $[2, 3]$ has height determined by the Left Hand Rule; it has a height of $f(2)$. (The rectangle is labeled "LHR.")

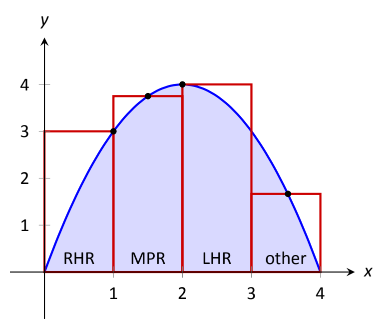


Figure 5.11: Approximating $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$ using rectangles. The heights of the rectangles are determined using different rules.

The **Right Hand Rule** says the opposite: on each subinterval, evaluate the function at the right endpoint and make the rectangle that height. In the figure, the rectangle drawn on $[0, 1]$ is drawn using $f(1)$ as its height; this rectangle is labeled "RHR.".

The **Midpoint Rule** says that on each subinterval, evaluate the function at the midpoint and make the rectangle that height. The rectangle drawn on $[1, 2]$ was made using the Midpoint Rule, with a height of $f(1.5)$. That rectangle is labeled "MPR."

These are the three most common rules for determining the heights of approximating rectangles, but one is not forced to use one of these three methods. The rectangle on $[3, 4]$ has a height of approximately $f(3.53)$, very close to the Midpoint Rule. It was chosen so that the area of the rectangle is *exactly* the area of the region under f on $[3, 4]$. (Later you'll be able to figure how to do this, too.)

The following example will approximate the value of $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$ using

Notes:

these rules.

Example 5.3.1 Using the Left Hand, Right Hand and Midpoint Rules
Approximate the value of $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx$ using the Left Hand Rule, the Right Hand Rule, and the Midpoint Rule, using 4 equally spaced subintervals.

Solution We break the interval $[0, 4]$ into four subintervals as before. In Figure 5.12 we first see 4 rectangles drawn on $f(x) = 4x - x^2$ using the Left Hand Rule. (The areas of the rectangles are given in each figure.)

Note how in the first subinterval, $[0, 1]$, the rectangle has height $f(0) = 0$. We add up the areas of each rectangle (height$\times$ width) for our Left Hand Rule approximation:

$$f(0)\cdot 1 + f(1)\cdot 1 + f(2)\cdot 1 + f(3)\cdot 1 = \\ 0 + 3 + 4 + 3 = 10.$$

Figure 5.12 next shows 4 rectangles drawn under f using the Right Hand Rule; note how the $[3, 4]$ subinterval has a rectangle of height 0.

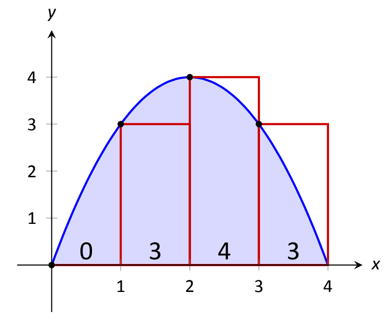
These rectangle seem to be the mirror image of those found with the Left Hand Rule. (This is because of the symmetry of our shaded region.) Our approximation gives the same answer as before, though calculated a different way:

$$f(1)\cdot 1 + f(2)\cdot 1 + f(3)\cdot 1 + f(4)\cdot 1 = \\ 3 + 4 + 3 + 0 = 10.$$

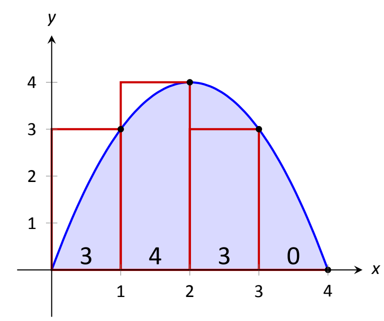
Figure 5.12 last shows 4 rectangles drawn under f using the Midpoint Rule. This gives an approximation of $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx$ as:

$$f(0.5)\cdot 1 + f(1.5)\cdot 1 + f(2.5)\cdot 1 + f(3.5)\cdot 1 = \\ 1.75 + 3.75 + 3.75 + 1.75 = 11.$$

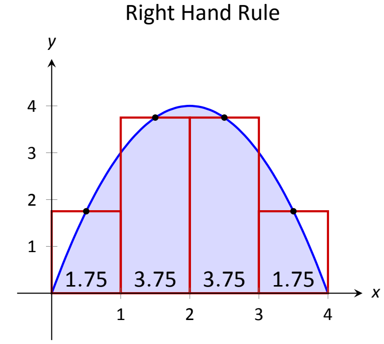
Our three methods provide two approximations of $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx$: 10 and 11.



Left Hand Rule



Right Hand Rule



Midpoint Rule

Figure 5.12: Approximating $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx$ in Example 5.3.1.

Summation Notation

It is hard to tell at this moment which is a better approximation: 10 or 11? We can continue to refine our approximation by using more rectangles. The notation can become unwieldy, though, as we add up longer and longer lists of numbers. We introduce **summation notation** to ameliorate this problem.

Suppose we wish to add up a list of numbers a_1, a_2, a_3, …, a_9. Instead of writing

$$a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 + a_5 + a_6 + a_7 + a_8 + a_9,$$

Notes:

we use summation notation and write

$$\sum_{i=1}^{9} a_i$$

Lets analyze this notation.

upper bound

summand

$$\sum_{i=1}^{9} a_i.$$

i=index of summation

lower bound

Figure 5.13: Understanding summation notation.

The upper case sigma, $\sum$, represents the term "sum." The index of summation in this example is i; any symbol can be used. By convention, the index takes on only the integer values between (and including) the lower and upper bounds.

Let's practice using this notation.

Example 5.3.2 Using summation notation

Let the numbers $\{a_i\}$ be defined as $a_i = 2i - 1$ for integers i, where $i \geq 1$. So $a_1 = 1$, $a_2 = 3$, $a_3 = 5$, etc. (The output is the positive odd integers). Evaluate the following summations:

1. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{6} a_i$
2. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=3}^{7} (3a_i - 4)$
3. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{4} (a_i)^2$

Solution

1.

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^{6} a_i &= a_1 + a_2 + a_3 + a_4 + a_5 + a_6\\ &= 1 + 3 + 5 + 7 + 9 + 11\\ &= 36.\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

2. Note the starting value is different than 1:

$$\sum_{i=3}^{7}(3a_i-4) = (3a_3-4)+(3a_4-4)+(3a_5-4)+(3a_6-4)+(3a_7-4)$$
$$= 11+17+23+29+35$$
$$= 115.$$

3.

$$\sum_{i=1}^{4}(a_i)^2 = (a_1)^2+(a_2)^2+(a_3)^2+(a_4)^2$$
$$= 1^2+3^2+5^2+7^2$$
$$= 84$$

It might seem odd to stress a new, concise way of writing summations only to write each term out as we add them up. It is. The following theorem gives some of the properties of summations that allow us to work with them without writing individual terms. Examples will follow.

Theorem 35 Properties of Summations

1. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{n} c = c\cdot n$, where c is a constant.
2. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=m}^{n}(a_i \pm b_i) = \sum_{i=m}^{n} a_i \pm \sum_{i=m}^{n} b_i$
3. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=m}^{n} c\cdot a_i = c\cdot\sum_{i=m}^{n} a_i$
4. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=m}^{j} a_i + \sum_{i=j+1}^{n} a_i = \sum_{i=m}^{n} a_i$
5. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$
6. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$
7. $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^3 = \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right)^2$

Note: In practice we will sometimes need variations on formulas 5, 6, and 7

Notes:

above. For example, we note that

$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} i = 0+1+2+\cdots+n = 0+\sum_{i=1}^{n} i = 0+\frac{n(n+1)}{2} = \frac{n(n+1)}{2},$$

so we see that

$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}.$$

Similarly, we find that

$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} i^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}, \quad \text{and}$$
$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} i^3 = \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right)^2$$

Example 5.3.3 Evaluating summations using Theorem 35

Revisit Example 5.3.2 and, using Theorem 35, evaluate

$$\sum_{i=1}^{6} a_i = \sum_{i=1}^{6}(2i-1).$$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=1}^{6}(2i-1) &= \sum_{i=1}^{6} 2i - \sum_{i=1}^{6}(1) && \text{(Theorem 35(2))}\\
&= \left(2\sum_{i=1}^{6} i\right) - \sum_{i=1}^{6}(1) && \text{(Theorem 35(3))}\\
&= 2\left(\frac{6(6+1)}{2}\right) - 6 && \text{(Theorem 35(1,5))}\\
&= 2(21) - 6 = 36
\end{aligned}$$

We obtained the same answer without writing out all six terms. When dealing with small sizes of n, it may be faster to write the terms out by hand. However, Theorem 35 is incredibly important when dealing with large sums as we'll soon see.

Notes:

Riemann Sums

Consider again $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$. We will approximate this definite integral using 16 equally spaced subintervals and the Right Hand Rule in Example 5.3.4. Before doing so, it will pay to do some careful preparation.

Figure 5.14 shows a number line of $[0, 4]$ subdivided into 16 equally spaced subintervals. We denote 0 as x_0; we have marked the values of x_4, x_8, x_{12}, and x_{16}. We could mark them all, but the figure would get crowded. While it is easy to figure that $x_9 = 2.25$, in general, we want a method of determining the value of x_i without consulting the figure. Consider:

number of subintervals between x_0 and x_i

$$x_i = x_0 + i\Delta x$$

starting value   subinterval size

So $x_9 = x_0 + 9(4/16) = 9/4 = 2.25$.

If we had partitioned $[0, 4]$ into 100 equally spaced subintervals, each subinterval would have length $\Delta x = 4/100 = 0.04$. We could compute x_{31} as

$$x_{31} = x_0 + 31(4/100) = 124/100 = 1.24.$$

(That was far faster than creating a sketch first.)

Given any subdivision of $[0, 4]$, the first subinterval is $[x_0, x_1]$; the second is $[x_1, x_2]$; the i^{th} subinterval is $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$.
When using the Left Hand Rule, the height of the i^{th} rectangle will be $f(x_{i-1})$.
When using the Right Hand Rule, the height of the i^{th} rectangle will be $f(x_i)$.
When using the Midpoint Rule, the height of the i^{th} rectangle will be $f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)$.

Thus approximating $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$ with 16 equally spaced subintervals can be expressed as follows, where $\Delta x = 4/16 = 1/4$:

Left Hand Rule: $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{16} f(x_{i-1})\Delta x$

Right Hand Rule: $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{16} f(x_i)\Delta x$

Midpoint Rule: $\displaystyle\sum_{i=1}^{16} f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)\Delta x$

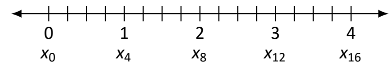


Figure 5.14: Dividing $[0, 4]$ into 16 equally spaced subintervals.

Notes:

Watch the video:
Calculating a Definite Integral Using Riemann Sums — Part 1 at
https://youtu.be/gFpHHTxsDkI

We use these formulas in the next two examples. The following example lets us practice using the Left Hand Rule and the summation formulas introduced in Theorem 35.

Example 5.3.4 Approximating definite integrals using sums
Approximate $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$ using the Right Hand Rule and summation formulas with 16 and 1000 equally spaced intervals.

Solution Using the formula derived before, using 16 equally spaced intervals and the Right Hand Rule, we can approximate the definite integral as

$$\sum_{i=1}^{16} f(x_i)\Delta x.$$

We have $\Delta x = 4/16 = 0.25$, $x_i = 0 + i\Delta x = i\Delta x$, and $f(x_i) = f(i\Delta x) = 4i\Delta x - i^2\Delta x^2$. Using the summation formulas, we see:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx &\approx \sum_{i=1}^{16} f(x_i)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{16} f(i\Delta x)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{16} (4i\Delta x - i^2(\Delta x)^2)\Delta x && \text{(from above)} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{16} (4i(\Delta x)^2 - i^2(\Delta x)^3) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{16} 4i(\Delta x)^2 - \sum_{i=1}^{16} i^2(\Delta x)^3 && \text{(Theorem 35(2))}
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

$$= 4(\Delta x)^2 \sum_{i=1}^{16} i - (\Delta x)^3 \sum_{i=1}^{16} i^2 \qquad (*) \qquad \text{(Theorem 35(3))}$$

$$= 4\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^2 \left(\frac{(16)(17)}{2}\right) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^3 \left(\frac{(16)(17)(33)}{6}\right) \qquad \text{(Theorem 35(5,6))}$$

$$= 34 - \frac{187}{8} = \frac{85}{8} = 10.625$$

We were able to sum up the areas of 16 rectangles with very little computation. In Figure 5.15 the function and the 16 rectangles are graphed. While some rectangles over-approximate the area, others under-approximate the area by about the same amount. Thus our approximate area of 10.625 is likely a fairly good approximation.

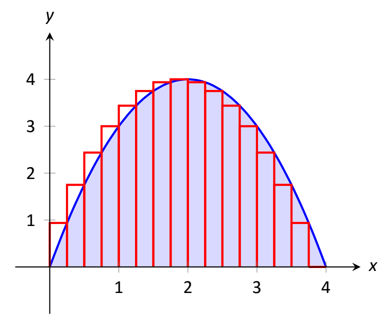


Figure 5.15: Approximating $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$ with the Right Hand Rule and 16 evenly spaced subintervals.

Notice Equation (*); by changing the 16's to 1000's and changing the value of Δx to $4/1000 = 0.004$, we can use the equation to sum up the areas of 1000 rectangles. We do so here, skipping from the original summand to the equivalent of Equation (*) to save space.

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx \approx \sum_{i=1}^{1000} f(x_i)\Delta x$$

$$= 4(\Delta x)^2 \sum_{i=1}^{1000} i - (\Delta x)^3 \sum_{i=1}^{1000} i^2$$

$$= 4(.004)^2 \left(\frac{(1000)(1001)}{2}\right) - (0.004)^3 \left(\frac{(1000)(1001)(2001)}{6}\right)$$

$$= 10.666656$$

Using many, many rectangles, we likely have a good approximation of $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$. That is,

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx \approx 10.666656.$$

Before the above example, we stated what the summations for the Left Hand, Right Hand and Midpoint Rules looked like. Each had the same basic structure, which was:

1. each rectangle has the same width, which we referred to as Δx, and

2. each rectangle's height is determined by evaluating f at a particular point in each subinterval. For instance, the Left Hand Rule states that each rectangle's height is determined by evaluating f at the left hand endpoint of the subinterval the rectangle lives on.

Notes:

One could partition an interval $[a, b]$ with subintervals that did not have the same size. We refer to the length of the first subinterval as Δx_1, the length of the second subinterval as Δx_2, and so on, giving the length of the i^{th} subinterval as Δx_i. Also, one could determine each rectangle's height by evaluating f at *any* point in the i^{th} subinterval. We refer to the point picked in the first subinterval as c_1, the point picked in the second subinterval as c_2, and so on, with c_i representing the point picked in the i^{th} subinterval. Thus the height of the i^{th} subinterval would be $f(c_i)$, and the area of the i^{th} rectangle would be $f(c_i)\Delta x_i$.

Summations of rectangles with area $f(c_i)\Delta x_i$ are named after mathematician Georg Friedrich Bernhard Riemann, as given in the following definition.

Definition 23 Riemann Sum

Let f be defined on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and let Δx be a partition of $[a, b]$, with

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < \ldots < x_{n-1} < x_n = b.$$

Let Δx_i denote the length of the i^{th} subinterval $[x_{i-1}, x_i]$ and let c_i denote any value in the i^{th} subinterval. The sum

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x_i$$

is a **Riemann sum** of f on $[a, b]$.

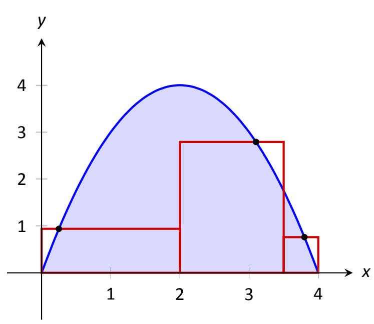


Figure 5.16: An example of a general Riemann sum to approximate $\int_0^4 (4x-x^2)\,dx$.

Figure 5.16 shows the approximating rectangles of a Riemann sum of $\int_0^4 (4x-x^2)\,dx$. While the rectangles in this example do not approximate well the shaded area, they demonstrate that the subinterval widths may vary and the heights of the rectangles can be determined without following a particular rule.

Usually, Riemann sums are calculated using one of the three methods we have introduced. The uniformity of construction makes computations easier. We have $\Delta x_i = \Delta x = \dfrac{b-a}{n}$ and the i^{th} term of the partition is $x_i = a + i\Delta x$. Then the Left Hand Rule uses $c_i = x_{i-1}$, the Right Hand Rule uses $c_i = x_i$, and the Midpoint Rule uses $c_i = \dfrac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}$.

Let's do another example.

Example 5.3.5 Approximating definite integrals with sums

Approximate $\int_{-2}^{3} (5x+2)\,dx$ using the Midpoint Rule and 10 equally spaced intervals.

Notes:

Solution We see that

$$\Delta x = \frac{3-(-2)}{10} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad x_i = (-2) + \frac{1}{2}i = \frac{i}{2} - 2.$$

As we are using the Midpoint Rule, we will also need x_{i-1} and $\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}$. Since $x_i = \frac{i}{2} - \frac{5}{2}$, $x_{i-1} = \frac{i-1}{2} - 2 = \frac{i}{2} - \frac{5}{2}$. This gives

$$\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2} = \frac{(\frac{i}{2}-\frac{5}{2}) + (\frac{i}{2}-2)}{2} = \frac{i-\frac{9}{2}}{2} = \frac{i}{2} - \frac{9}{4}.$$

We now construct the Riemann sum and compute its value using summation formulas.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{-2}^{3} (5x+2)\,dx &\approx \sum_{i=1}^{10} f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{10} f\left(\frac{i}{2}-\frac{9}{4}\right)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{10} \left(5\left(\frac{i}{2}-\frac{9}{4}\right)+2\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{10} \left(\frac{5i}{4}-\frac{37}{8}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{5}{4}\sum_{i=1}^{10}(i) - \sum_{i=1}^{10}\left(\frac{37}{8}\right)\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{5}{4}\cdot\frac{(10)(11)}{2} - 10\cdot\frac{37}{8}\right) \\
&= \frac{45}{2} = 22.5
\end{aligned}$$

Note the graph of $f(x) = 5x+2$ in Figure 5.17. The regions whose area is computed by the definite integral are triangles, meaning we can find the exact answer without summation techniques. We find that the exact answer is indeed 22.5. One of the strengths of the Midpoint Rule is that often each rectangle includes area that should not be counted, but misses other area that should. When Δx is small, these two amounts are about equal and these errors almost "subtract each other out." In this example, since our function is a line, these errors are exactly equal and they do subtract each other out, giving us the exact answer.

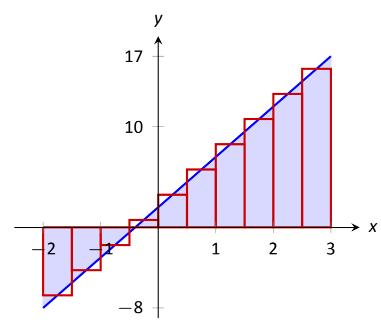


Figure 5.17: Approximating $\int_{-2}^{3}(5x+2)\,dx$ using the Midpoint Rule and 10 evenly spaced subintervals in Example 5.3.5.

Notes:

Note too that when the function is negative, the rectangles have a "negative" height. When we compute the area of the rectangle, we use $f(c_i)\Delta x$; when f is negative, the area is counted as negative.

Notice in the previous example that while we used 10 equally spaced intervals, the number "10" didn't play a big role in the calculations until the very end. Mathematicians love to abstract ideas; let's approximate the area of another region using n subintervals, where we do not specify a value of n until the very end.

Example 5.3.6 Approximating definite integrals with a sum formula
Revisit $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\ dx$ yet again. Approximate this definite integral using the Right Hand Rule with n equally spaced subintervals.

SOLUTION We see that $\Delta x = \dfrac{4-0}{n} = \dfrac{4}{n}$. We also find $x_i = 0 + \Delta x i = \dfrac{4i}{n}$.

We construct the Right Hand Rule Riemann sum as follows. Be sure to follow each step carefully. If you get stuck, and do not understand how one line proceeds to the next, you may skip to the result and consider how this result is used. You should come back, though, and work through each step for full understanding.

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\ dx &\approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f\left(\frac{4i}{n}\right)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left[4\frac{4i}{n} - \left(\frac{4i}{n}\right)^2\right]\frac{4}{n} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{64}{n^2}\right) i - \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(\frac{64}{n^3}\right) i^2 \\
&= \left(\frac{64}{n^2}\right)\sum_{i=1}^{n} i - \left(\frac{64}{n^3}\right)\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2 \\
&= \left(\frac{64}{n^2}\right)\cdot\frac{n(n+1)}{2} - \left(\frac{64}{n^3}\right)\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

$$= \frac{32(n+1)}{n} - \frac{32(n+1)(2n+1)}{3n^2} \qquad \text{(now simplify)}$$
$$= \frac{32}{3}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)$$

The result is an amazing, easy to use formula. To approximate the definite integral with 10 equally spaced subintervals and the Right Hand Rule, set $n = 10$ and compute

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx \approx \frac{32}{3}\left(1 - \frac{1}{10^2}\right) = 10.56.$$

Recall how earlier we approximated the definite integral with 4 subintervals; with $n = 4$, the formula gives 10, our answer as before.

It is now easy to approximate the integral with 1,000,000 subintervals! Handheld calculators will round off the answer a bit prematurely giving an answer of 10.66666667. (The actual answer is 10.666666666656.)

We now take an important leap. Up to this point, our mathematics has been limited to geometry and algebra (finding areas and manipulating expressions). Now we apply *calculus*. For any *finite n*, we know that

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx \approx \frac{32}{3}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right).$$

Both common sense and high–level mathematics tell us that as n gets large, the approximation gets better. In fact, if we take the *limit* as $n \to \infty$, we get the *exact area* described by $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx$. That is,

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\, dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{32}{3}\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right)\\ &= \frac{32}{3}(1 - 0)\\ &= \frac{32}{3} = 10.\overline{6}\end{aligned}$$

This is a fantastic result. By considering n equally–spaced subintervals, we obtained a formula for an approximation of the definite integral that involved our variable n. As n grows large – without bound – the error shrinks to zero and we obtain the exact area.

This section started with a fundamental calculus technique: make an approximation, refine the approximation to make it better, then use limits in the refining process to get an exact answer. That is precisely what we just did.

Let's practice this again.

Notes:

Example 5.3.7 Approximating definite integrals with a sum formula

Find a formula that approximates $\int_{-1}^{5} x^3\,dx$ using the Right Hand Rule and n equally spaced subintervals, then take the limit as $n \to \infty$ to find the exact area.

Solution We see that $\Delta x = \frac{5-(-1)}{n} = \frac{6}{n}$ and $x_i = (-1) + i\Delta x = -1 + \frac{6i}{n}$.

The Riemann sum corresponding to the Right Hand Rule is (followed by simplifications):

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_{-1}^{5} x^3\,dx &\approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(-1 + i\Delta x)\Delta x \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left(-1 + i\frac{6}{n}\right)^3 \frac{6}{n} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{1296i^3}{n^4} - \frac{648i^2}{n^3} + \frac{108i}{n^2} - \frac{6}{n} \\
&= \frac{1296}{n^4}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^3 - \frac{648}{n^3}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2 + \frac{108}{n^2}\sum_{i=1}^{n} i - \sum_{i=1}^{n} \frac{6}{n} \\
&= \frac{1296}{n^4}\left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{648}{n^3}\frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} + \frac{108}{n^2}\frac{n(n+1)}{2} - 6 \\
&= 156 + \frac{378}{n} + \frac{216}{n^2} \qquad \text{(after a sizable amount of algebra)}
\end{aligned}$$

Once again, we have found a compact formula for approximating the definite integral with n equally spaced subintervals and the Right Hand Rule. Using 10 subintervals, we have an approximation of 195.96 (these rectangles are shown in Figure 5.18). Using $n = 100$ gives an approximation of 159.802.

Now find the exact answer using a limit:

$$\int_{-1}^{5} x^3\,dx = \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(156 - \frac{378}{n} + \frac{216}{n^2}\right) = 156.$$

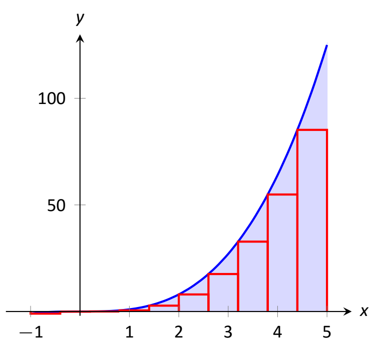


Figure 5.18: Approximating $\int_{-1}^{5} x^3\,dx$ using the Left Hand Rule and 10 evenly spaced subintervals.

Limits of Riemann Sums

We have used limits to find the exact value of certain definite integrals. Will this always work? We will show, given not–very–restrictive conditions, that yes, it will always work.

Notes:

The previous two examples demonstrated how an expression such as

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x$$

can be rewritten as an expression explicitly involving n, such as $\frac{32}{3}(1-\frac{1}{n^2})$.

Viewed in this manner, we can think of the summation as a function of n. An n value is given (where n is a positive integer), and the sum of areas of n equally spaced rectangles is returned, using the Left Hand, Right Hand, or Midpoint Rules.

Given a definite integral $\int_a^b f(x)\ dx$, let:

- $S_L(n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_{i-1})\Delta x$, the sum of equally spaced rectangles formed using the Left Hand Rule,
- $S_R(n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(x_i)\Delta x$, the sum of equally spaced rectangles formed using the Right Hand Rule, and
- $S_M(n) = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f\left(\frac{x_{i-1}+x_i}{2}\right)\Delta x$, the sum of equally spaced rectangles formed using the Midpoint Rule.

Recall the definition of a limit as $n \to \infty$: $\lim\limits_{n\to\infty} S_L(n) = K$ if, given any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $N > 0$ such that

$$|S_L(n) - K| < \varepsilon \quad \text{when} \quad n \geq N.$$

The following theorem states that we can use any of our three rules to find the exact value of a definite integral $\int_a^b f(x)\ dx$. It also goes two steps further. The theorem states that the height of each rectangle doesn't have to be determined following a specific rule, but could be $f(c_i)$, where c_i is any point in the i^{th} subinterval, as discussed before Riemann Sums where defined in Definition 23.

The theorem goes on to state that the rectangles do not need to be of the same width. Using the notation of Definition 23, let Δx_i denote the length of the i^{th} subinterval in a partition of $[a, b]$. Now let $||\Delta x||$ represent the length of the largest subinterval in the partition: that is, $||\Delta x||$ is the largest of all the Δx_i's (this is sometimes called the *size* of the partition). If $||\Delta x||$ is small, then $[a, b]$ must be partitioned into many subintervals, since all subintervals must have small lengths. "Taking the limit as $||\Delta x||$ goes to zero" implies that the number

---

Notes:

n of subintervals in the partition is growing to infinity, as the largest subinterval length is becoming arbitrarily small. We then interpret the expression

$$\lim_{\|\Delta x\|\to 0} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x_i$$

as "the limit of the sum of rectangles, where the width of each rectangle can be different but getting small, and the height of each rectangle is not necessarily determined by a particular rule." The theorem states that this Riemann Sum also gives the value of the definite integral of f over $[a, b]$.

Theorem 36 Definite Integrals and the Limit of Riemann Sums
Let f be continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$ and let $S_L(n)$, $S_R(n)$ and $S_M(n)$ be defined as before. Then:

1. $\displaystyle \lim_{n\to\infty} S_L(n) = \lim_{n\to\infty} S_R(n) = \lim_{n\to\infty} S_M(n) = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x$,
2. $\displaystyle \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$, and
3. $\displaystyle \lim_{\|\Delta x\|\to 0} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x_i = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

Now that we have more tools to work with, we can justify the remaining properties in Theorem 34.

Proof

1. To see why this property holds note that for any Riemann sum we have $\Delta x = 0$, from which we see that:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x \quad \text{(by Theorem 36(2))}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty} 0\\ &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

2. Applying Theorem 36(2), we have:

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x.$$

When we compute $\int_b^a f(x)\,dx$, we can use the same partitions and the same points c_i, so the heights $f(c_i)$ will remain the same. Since we want to start at $x = b$ and finish at $x = a$, we use $\widetilde{\Delta} x = \frac{a-b}{n} = -\Delta x$. We now have:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_b^a f(x)\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\widetilde{\Delta} x && \text{(Theorem 36(2))}\\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)(-\Delta x)\\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} -\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x\right) && \text{(using Theorem 35(3))}\\
&= -\lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x\\
&= -\int_a^b f(x)\,dx && \text{(Theorem 36(2))}
\end{aligned}$$

3. This property was justified previously.

4. To see why this property holds, we again use Theorems 35 and 36. In this case we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_a^b (f(x)+g(x))\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty}(f(c_i)+g(c_i))\Delta x\\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n}(f(c_i)\Delta x + g(c_i)\Delta x)\\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} g(c_i)\Delta x\right)\\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x + \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} g(c_i)\Delta x\\
&= \int_a^b f(x)\,dx + \int_a^b g(x)\,dx
\end{aligned}$$

5. The justification of this property is left as an exercise. $\square$

Notes:

Theorem 37 Further Properties of the Definite Integral
Let f be continuous on the interval $[a, b]$ and let k, m, and M be constants. The following hold:

1. $\displaystyle\int_a^b k\,dx = k(b-a).$
2. If $m \leq f(x)$ for all x in $[a, b]$, then $\displaystyle m(b-a) \leq \int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$
3. If $f(x) \leq M$ for all x in $[a, b]$, then $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \leq M(b-a).$

Proof
Before justifying these properties, note that for any subdivision of $[a, b]$ we have:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} \Delta x = n\frac{b-a}{n} = b-a.$$

To see why (a) holds, let k be a constant. We apply Theorem 36 to see that:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_a^b k\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} k\Delta x \\
&= \lim_{n\to\infty} k\left(\sum_{i=1}^{n} \Delta x\right) && \text{(using Theorem 35)} \\
&= k\left(\lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \Delta x\right) \\
&= k\left(\lim_{n\to\infty} (b-a)\right) \\
&= k(b-a)
\end{aligned}$$

We can now use this property to see why (b) holds. Let f and m be as given.

Notes:

Then we have:

$$\begin{aligned} m(b-a) &= \int_a^b m\,dx \\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} m\Delta x && \text{(Theorem 36)} \\ &\leq \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x \\ &= \int_a^b f(x)\,dx && \text{(Theorem 36)} \end{aligned}$$

Justifying property (c) is similar and is left as an exercise. □

We summarize what we have learned over the past few sections here.

- Knowing the "area under the curve" can be useful. One common example is: the area under a velocity curve is displacement.
- We have defined the definite integral, $\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$, to be the signed area under f on the interval $[a, b]$.
- While we can approximate a definite integral many ways, we have focused on using rectangles whose heights can be determined using: the Left Hand Rule, the Right Hand Rule and the Midpoint Rule.
- Sums of rectangles of this type are called Riemann sums.
- The exact value of the definite integral can be computed using the limit of a Riemann sum. We generally use one of the above methods as it makes the algebra simpler.

We first learned of derivatives through limits then learned rules that made the process simpler. We know of a way to evaluate a definite integral using limits; in the next section we will see how the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus makes the process simpler. The key feature of this theorem is its connection between the indefinite integral and the definite integral.

Notes:

Exercises 5.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. A fundamental calculus technique is to use _________ to refine approximations to get an exact answer.

2. What is the upper bound in the summation $\sum_{i=7}^{14}(48i - 201)$?

3. This section approximates definite integrals using what geometric shape?

4. T/F: A sum using the Right Hand Rule is an example of a Riemann Sum.

Problems

In Exercises 5 – 11, write out each term of the summation and compute the sum.

5. $\sum_{i=2}^{4} i^2$

6. $\sum_{i=-1}^{3} (4i - 2)$

7. $\sum_{i=-2}^{2} \sin(\pi i/2)$

8. $\sum_{i=1}^{5} \frac{1}{i}$

9. $\sum_{i=1}^{6} (-1)^i i$

10. $\sum_{i=1}^{4} \left(\frac{1}{i} - \frac{1}{i+1}\right)$

11. $\sum_{i=0}^{5} (-1)^i \cos(\pi i)$

In Exercises 12 – 15, write each sum in summation notation.

12. $3 + 6 + 9 + 12 + 15$

13. $-1 + 0 + 3 + 8 + 15 + 24 + 35 + 48 + 63$

14. $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{4}{5}$

15. $1 - e + e^2 - e^3 + e^4$

In Exercises 16 – 22, evaluate the summation using Theorem 35.

16. $\sum_{i=1}^{25} i$

17. $\sum_{i=1}^{10} (3i^2 - 2i)$

18. $\sum_{i=1}^{15} (2i^3 - 10)$

19. $\sum_{i=1}^{10} (-4i^3 + 10i^2 - 7i + 11)$

20. $\sum_{i=1}^{10} (i^3 - 3i^2 + 2i + 7)$

21. $1 + 2 + 3 + \ldots + 99 + 100$

22. $1 + 4 + 9 + \ldots + 361 + 400$

Theorem 35 states

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i = \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i + \sum_{i=k+1}^{n} a_i \text{, so}$$

$$\sum_{i=k+1}^{n} a_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i - \sum_{i=1}^{k} a_i .$$

Use this fact, along with other parts of Theorem 35, to evaluate the summations given in Exercises 23 – 26.

23. $\sum_{i=11}^{20} i$

24. $\sum_{i=16}^{25} i^3$

25. $\sum_{i=7}^{12} 4$

26. $\sum_{i=5}^{10} 4i^3$

In Exercises 27 – 32, a definite integral $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ is given.

(a) Graph $f(x)$ on $[a,b]$.

(b) Add to the sketch rectangles using the provided rule.

(c) Approximate $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ by summing the areas of the rectangles.

27. $\displaystyle\int_{-3}^{3} x^2\,dx$, with 6 rectangles using the Left Hand Rule.

28. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{2} (5-x^2)\,dx$, with 4 rectangles using the Midpoint Rule.

29. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x\,dx$, with 6 rectangles using the Right Hand Rule.

30. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{3} \sqrt{10-x^2}\,dx$ with 4 rectangles using the Right Hand Rule.

31. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{2} \ln x\,dx$, with 3 rectangles using the Midpoint Rule.

32. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{9} \frac{1}{x}\,dx$, with 4 rectangles using the Right Hand Rule.

In Exercises 33 – 38, a definite integral $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ is given. As demonstrated in Examples 5.3.6 and 5.3.7, do the following.

(a) Find a formula to approximate $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ using n subintervals and the provided rule.

(b) Evaluate the formula using $n = 10$, 100 and $1,000$.

(c) Find the limit of the formula, as $n\to\infty$, to find the exact value of $\displaystyle\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$.

33. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} x^3\,dx$, using the Right Hand Rule.

34. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{1} 3x^2\,dx$, using the Left Hand Rule.

35. $\displaystyle\int_{-1}^{3} (3x-1)\,dx$, using the Midpoint Rule.

36. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{4} (2x^2-3)\,dx$, using the Left Hand Rule.

37. $\displaystyle\int_{-10}^{10} (5-x)\,dx$, using the Right Hand Rule.

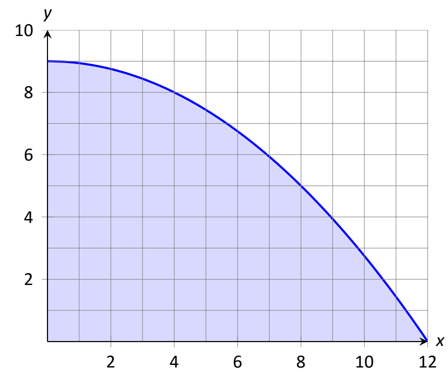
38. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{1} (x^3-x^2)\,dx$, using the Right Hand Rule.

39. Use six rectangles to approximate the area under the given graph of f from $x=0$ to $x=12$, using:

    (a) The Left Hand Rule,

    (b) The Right Hand Rule,

    (c) The Midpoint Rule.



40. A car accelerates from 0 to 40 mph in 30 seconds. The speedometer reading at each 5 second interval during this time is given in the table below. Estimate how far the car travels during this 30 second period using the velocities at:

    (a) The beginning of each time interval.

    (b) The end of each time interval.

t (sec)	0	5	10	15	20	25	30
v (mph)	0	6	14	23	30	36	40

41. Use Theorems 35 and 36 to justify the remaining property in Theorem 34:
$$\int_a^b k\cdot f(x)\,dx = k\int_a^b f(x)\,dx$$

42. Use Theorems 35 and 36 to justify the remaining property in Theorem 37: If $f(x)\leq M$ for all x in $[a,b]$, then
$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \leq M(b-a).$$

Review

In Exercises 43 – 48, find an antiderivative of the given function.

43. $f(x) = 5\sec^2 x$

44. $f(x) = \dfrac{7}{x}$

45. $g(t) = 4t^5 - 5t^3 + 8$

46. $g(t) = \cos t + \sin t$

47. $f(x) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$

5.4 The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

In this section we will find connections between differential calculus (derivatives and antiderivatives) and integral calculus (definite integrals). These connections between the major ideas of calculus are important enough to be called the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. These connections will also explain why we use the term indefinite integral for the set of all antiderivatives, and why we use such similar notations for antiderivatives and definite integrals.

Let $f(t)$ be a continuous function defined on $[a, b]$. The definite integral $\int_a^b f(x)\, dx$ is the "area under f" on $[a, b]$. We can turn this concept into a function by letting the upper (or lower) bound vary.

Let $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\, dt$. It computes the area under f on $[a, x]$ as illustrated in Figure 5.19. We can study this function using our knowledge of the definite integral. For instance, $F(a) = 0$ since $\int_a^a f(t)\, dt = 0$.

The first part of the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus tells us how to find derivatives of these kinds of functions.

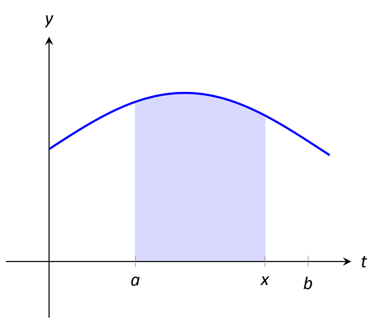


Figure 5.19: The area of the shaded region is $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\, dt$.

Theorem 38 The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, Part 1
Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$ and let $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\, dt$. Then F is a differentiable function on (a, b), and

$$F'(x) = f(x).$$

Proof
In order to see why this is true, we must compute $\lim_{h\to 0} \dfrac{F(x+h) - F(x)}{h}$. Suppose x and $x + h$ are in $[a, b]$. Theorem 34 implies that

$$\int_a^{x+h} f(t)\, dt = \int_a^x f(t)\, dt + \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt,$$

which we can rewrite as

$$\int_x^{x+h} f(t)\, dt = \int_a^{x+h} f(t)\, dt - \int_a^x f(t)\, dt.$$

This allows us to simplify the denominator of the difference quotient in our limit

Notes:

as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} F(x+h)-F(x) &= \int_a^{x+h} f(t)\,dt - \int_a^x f(t)\,dt \quad \text{(by the definition of } F\text{)} \\ &= \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt, \end{aligned}$$

so we see that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{F(x+h)-F(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt.$$

Assume for the moment that $h>0$. Since x and $x+h$ are both in $[a,b]$ and f is continuous on $[a,b]$, f is also continuous on $[x,x+h]$. Applying the Extreme Value Theorem (Theorem 22), we know that f must have an absolute minimum value $f(u)=m$ and an absolute maximum value $f(v)=M$ on this interval. In other words, $m\le f(t)\le M$ whenever $x\le t\le x+h$. Using the Comparison Properties of Integrals, we can now say that

$$\int_x^{x+h} m\,dt \le \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \le \int_x^{x+h} M\,dt.$$

Computing the outer integrals, this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} m(x+h-x) &\le \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \le M(x+h-x), \quad \text{or} \\ mh &\le \int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \le Mh. \end{aligned}$$

Since $h>0$, we may divide by h to obtain

$$f(u)=m\le \frac{1}{h}\int_x^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \le M = f(v).$$

Now suppose that $h<0$. Preceding as before, we know that f has an absolute minimum value $f(u)=m$ and an absolute maximum value $f(v)=M$ on the interval $[x+h,x]$. We know that $m\le f(t)\le M$ whenever $x+h\le t\le x$, so we have

$$\int_{x+h}^{x} m\,dt \le \int_{x+h}^{x} f(t)\,dt \le \int_{x+h}^{x} M\,dt.$$

Once again we compute to obtain

$$-mh \le \int_{x+h}^{x} f(t)\,dt \le -Mh.$$

Notes:

Since $-h > 0$, we can divide by $-h$ to obtain:

$$m \leq -\frac{1}{h}\int_{x+h}^{x} f(t)\,dt \leq M$$
$$f(u) = m \leq \frac{1}{h}\int_{x}^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \leq M = f(v) \quad \text{(using Theorem 34(2))}$$

We are now ready to compute the desired limit,

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{F(x+h)-F(x)}{h} = \lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\int_{x}^{x+h} f(t)\,dt.$$

Whether $h > 0$ or $h < 0$, we know that

$$f(u) \leq \frac{1}{h}\int_{x}^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \leq f(v),$$

where u and v are both between x and $x+h$. Note that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}(x+h) = x \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h\to 0} x = x,$$

so the Squeeze Theorem (Theorem 5) says that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} u = x \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h\to 0} v = x.$$

Since f is continuous at x, we know that

$$\lim_{h\to 0} f(u) = f(x) \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h\to 0} f(v) = f(x).$$

Finally, we know that

$$f(u) \leq \frac{1}{h}\int_{x}^{x+h} f(t)\,dt \leq f(v),$$

so applying the Squeeze Theorem again tells us that

$$\lim_{h\to 0}\frac{1}{h}\int_{x}^{x+h} f(t)\,dt = f(x).$$

Therefore $F'(x) = f(x)$ as desired. □

Notes:

Watch the video:
Fundamental Theorem of Calculus Part 1 at
https://youtu.be/PGmVvIglZx8

Initially this seems simple, as demonstrated in the following example.

Example 5.4.1 Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, Part 1

Let $F(x) = \displaystyle\int_{-5}^{x} (t^2 + \sin t)\, dt$. What is $F'(x)$?

SOLUTION Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, we have $F'(x) = x^2 + \sin x$.

This simple example reveals something incredible: $F(x)$ is an antiderivative of $x^2 + \sin x$. Therefore, $F(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^3 - \cos x + C$ for some value of C. (We can find C, but generally we do not care. We know that $F(-5) = 0$, which allows us to compute C. In this case, $C = \cos(-5) + \frac{125}{3}$.)

We have done more than found a complicated way of computing an antiderivative. Consider a function f defined on an open interval containing a, b and c. Suppose we want to compute $\int_a^b f(t)\, dt$. First, let $F(x) = \int_c^x f(t)\, dt$. Using the properties of the definite integral found in Theorem 34, we know

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_a^b f(t)\, dt &= \int_a^c f(t)\, dt + \int_c^b f(t)\, dt \\
&= -\int_c^a f(t)\, dt + \int_c^b f(t)\, dt \\
&= -F(a) + F(b) \\
&= F(b) - F(a).
\end{aligned}$$

We now see how indefinite integrals and definite integrals are related: we can evaluate a definite integral using antiderivatives! This proves the second part of the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus.

Notes:

Theorem 39 The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, Part 2
Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$ and let F be *any* antiderivative of f. Then

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a).$$

Watch the video:
The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. Part 2 at
`https://youtu.be/nHnZVFeQvNQ`

Example 5.4.2 Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, Part 2
We spent a great deal of time in the previous section studying $\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx$. Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, evaluate this definite integral.

Solution We need an antiderivative of $f(x) = 4x - x^2$. All antiderivatives of f have the form $F(x) = 2x^2 - \frac{1}{3}x^3 + C$; for simplicity, choose $C = 0$.

The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus states

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx = F(4) - F(0) = \left(2(4)^2 - \frac{1}{3}4^3\right) - \left(0 - 0\right) = 32 - \frac{64}{3} = 32/3.$$

This is the same answer we obtained using limits in the previous section, just with much less work.

Notation: A special notation is often used in the process of evaluating definite integrals using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. Instead of explicitly writing $F(b) - F(a)$, the notation $F(x)\Big|_a^b$ is used. Thus the solution to Example 5.4.2 would be written as:

$$\int_0^4 (4x - x^2)\,dx = \left(2x^2 - \frac{1}{3}x^3\right)\Bigg|_0^4 = \left(2(4)^2 - \frac{1}{3}4^3\right) - \left(0 - 0\right) = 32/3.$$

The Constant C: *Any* antiderivative $F(x)$ can be chosen when using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus to evaluate a definite integral, meaning any value

Notes:

of C can be picked. The constant *always* subtracts out of the expression when evaluating $F(b) - F(a)$, so it does not matter what value is picked. This being the case, we might as well let $C = 0$.

Example 5.4.3 Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, Part 2

Evaluate the following definite integrals.

1. $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{2} x^3\,dx$ 2. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x\,dx$ 3. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{5} e^t\,dt$ 4. $\displaystyle\int_{4}^{9} \sqrt{u}\,du$ 5. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{5} 2\,dx$

Solution

1. $\displaystyle\int_{-2}^{2} x^3\,dx = \frac{1}{4}x^4\Big|_{-2}^{2} = \left(\frac{1}{4}2^4\right) - \left(\frac{1}{4}(-2)^4\right) = 0.$

2. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{\pi} \sin x\,dx = -\cos x\Big|_{0}^{\pi} = -\cos\pi - \big(-\cos 0\big) = 1 + 1 = 2.$
   (This is interesting; it says that the area under one "hump" of a sine curve is 2.)

3. $\displaystyle\int_{0}^{5} e^t\,dt = e^t\Big|_{0}^{5} = e^5 - e^0 = e^5 - 1 \approx 147.41.$

4. $\displaystyle\int_{4}^{9} \sqrt{u}\,du = \int_{4}^{9} u^{\frac{1}{2}}\,du = \frac{2}{3}u^{\frac{3}{2}}\Big|_{4}^{9} = \frac{2}{3}\left(9^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4^{\frac{3}{2}}\right) = \frac{2}{3}\big(27 - 8\big) = \frac{38}{3}.$

5. $\displaystyle\int_{1}^{5} 2\,dx = 2x\Big|_{1}^{5} = 2(5) - 2 = 2(5 - 1) = 8.$
   This integral is interesting; the integrand is a constant function, hence we are finding the area of a rectangle with width $(5 - 1) = 4$ and height 2. Notice how the evaluation of the definite integral led to $2(4) = 8$.

   In general, if c is a constant, then $\int_a^b c\,dx = c(b - a)$.

The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus and the Chain Rule

Part 1 of the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus (FTC) states that given $F(x) = \displaystyle\int_a^x f(t)\,dt$, $F'(x) = f(x)$. Using other notation, $\dfrac{d}{dx}\big(F(x)\big) = f(x)$. While we have just practiced evaluating definite integrals, sometimes finding antiderivatives is impossible and we need to rely on other techniques to approximate the value

Notes:

of a definite integral. Functions written as $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$ are useful in such situations.

It may be of further use to compose such a function with another. As an example, we may compose $F(x)$ with $g(x)$ to get

$$F\big(g(x)\big) = \int_a^{g(x)} f(t)\,dt.$$

What is the derivative of such a function? The Chain Rule can be employed to state

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(F\big(g(x)\big)\Big) = F'\big(g(x)\big)g'(x) = f\big(g(x)\big)g'(x).$$

An example will help us understand this.

Example 5.4.4 The FTC, Part 1, and the Chain Rule

Find the derivative of $F(x) = \displaystyle\int_2^{x^2} \ln t\,dt$.

Solution We can view $F(x)$ as being the function $G(x) = \displaystyle\int_2^x \ln t\,dt$ composed with $g(x) = x^2$; that is, $F(x) = G\big(g(x)\big)$. The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus states that $G'(x) = \ln x$. The Chain Rule gives us

$$\begin{aligned} F'(x) &= G'\big(g(x)\big)g'(x) \\ &= \ln(g(x))g'(x) \\ &= \ln(x^2)2x \\ &= 2x\ln x^2 \end{aligned}$$

Normally, the steps defining $G(x)$ and $g(x)$ are skipped.

Practice this once more.

Example 5.4.5 The FTC, Part 1, and the Chain Rule

Find the derivative of $F(x) = \displaystyle\int_{\cos x}^{5} t^3\,dt$.

Solution Note that $F(x) = -\displaystyle\int_5^{\cos x} t^3\,dt$. Viewed this way, the derivative of F is straightforward:

$$F'(x) = \sin x\cos^3 x.$$

Notes:

Understanding Motion with the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus

We established, starting with Key Idea 3, that the derivative of a position function is a velocity function, and the derivative of a velocity function is an acceleration function. Now consider definite integrals of velocity and acceleration functions. Specifically, if $v(t)$ is a velocity function, what does $\int_a^b v(t)\,dt$ mean?

The Fundamental Theorem of Calculus states that

$$\int_a^b v(t)\,dt = V(b) - V(a),$$

where $V(t)$ is any antiderivative of $v(t)$. Since $v(t)$ is a velocity function, $V(t)$ must be a position function, and $V(b) - V(a)$ measures a change in position, or **displacement**.

How would we measure total distance traveled? We have to consider the intervals when $v(t) \geq 0$ and when $v(t) \leq 0$. Therefore,

$$\text{total distance traveled} = \int_a^b |v(t)|\,dt.$$

Example 5.4.6 Finding displacement and total distance traveled

A ball is thrown straight up with velocity given by $v(t) = -32t + 20$ft/s, where t is measured in seconds. Find, and interpret,

$$1.\ \int_0^1 v(t)\,dt \qquad \text{and} \qquad 2.\ \int_0^1 |v(t)|\,dt.$$

Solution

1. Using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^1 v(t)\,dt &= \int_0^1 (-32t + 20)\,dt \\ &= -16t^2 + 20t\Big|_0^1 \\ &= 4 \text{ ft.}\end{aligned}$$

Thus if a ball is thrown straight up into the air with velocity $v(t) = -32t + 20$, the height of the ball, 1 second later, will be 4 feet above the initial

Notes:

height. We will see in part 2. that the *distance traveled* is much farther. It has gone up to its peak and is falling down, but the difference between its height at $t = 0$ and $t = 1$ is 4 ft.

2. Here we are trying to find the total distance traveled by the ball. We must first consider where $v(t) > 0$ and $v(t) < 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} v(t) = -32t + 20 &= 0 \\ -32t &= -20 \\ t &= \frac{5}{8} \end{aligned}$$

This means $v(t) > 0$ for $t < \frac{5}{8}$ and $v(t) < 0$ for $t > \frac{5}{8}$ so we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^1 |v(t)|\,dt &= \int_0^{5/8} v(t)\,dt + \int_{5/8}^1 -v(t)\,dt \\ &= \int_0^{5/8} -32t + 20\,dt + \int_{5/8}^1 32t - 20\,dt \\ &= \frac{34}{4} = 8.5 \text{ ft.} \end{aligned}$$

Integrating a rate of change function gives total change. Velocity is the rate of position change; integrating velocity gives the total change of position, i.e., displacement.

Integrating a speed function gives a similar, though different, result. Speed is also the rate of position change, but does not account for direction. So integrating a speed function gives total change of position, without the possibility of "negative position change." Hence the integral of a speed function gives *distance traveled.*

As acceleration is the rate of velocity change, integrating an acceleration function gives total change in velocity. We do not have a simple term for this analogous to displacement. If $a(t) = 5\text{miles/h}^2$ and t is measured in hours, then

$$\int_0^3 a(t)\,dt = 15$$

means the velocity has increased by 15m/h from $t = 0$ to $t = 3$.

The Mean Value Theorem and Average Value

Consider the graph of a function f in Figure 5.20(a) and the area defined by $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$. Three rectangles are then drawn; in (b), the height of the rectan-

Notes:

gle is greater than f on $[1,4]$, hence the area of this rectangle is is greater than $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$.

In (c), the height of the rectangle is smaller than f on $[1,4]$, hence the area of this rectangle is less than $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$.

Finally, in (d) the height of the rectangle is such that the area of the rectangle is *exactly* that of $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$. Since rectangles that are "too big", as in (b), and rectangles that are "too little," as in (c), give areas greater/lesser than $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$, it makes sense that there is a rectangle, whose top intersects $f(x)$ somewhere on $[1,4]$, whose area is *exactly* that of the definite integral.

We state this idea formally in a theorem.

Theorem 40 The Mean Value Theorem of Integration

Let f be continuous on $[a,b]$. There exists a value c in $[a,b]$ such that

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = f(c)(b-a).$$

This is an *existential* statement; c exists, but we do not provide a method of finding it. Theorem 40 is directly connected to the Mean Value Theorem of Differentiation, given as Theorem 24.

Proof

If $a=b$, then $\int_a^a f(x)\,dx = 0 = f(a)(a-a)$. Otherwise, we define the following for x in $[a,b]$:

$$F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt.$$

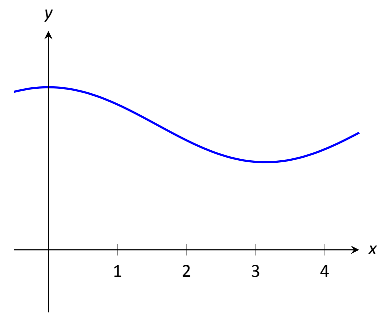
Applying Theorem 38 we know that F is differentiable on $[a,b]$ and that $F'(x) = f(x)$ for any x in $[a,b]$. We may now apply the Mean Value Theorem for Differentiation (Theorem 24) to see that there is a value c in (a,b) such that

$$F'(c) = \frac{F(b)-F(a)}{b-a}.$$

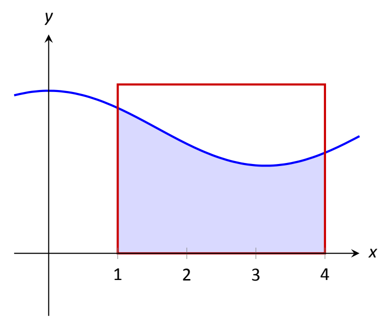
Note that $F'(c) = f(c)$ and that $F(b)-F(a) = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$ by Theorem 39. Therefore we can rewrite our equation as:

$$f(c) = \frac{\int_a^b f(x)\,dx}{b-a}, \text{ or}$$

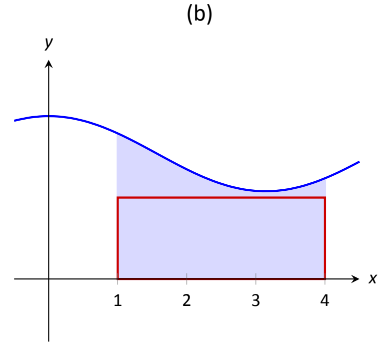
$$f(c)(b-a) = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx. \qquad \square$$



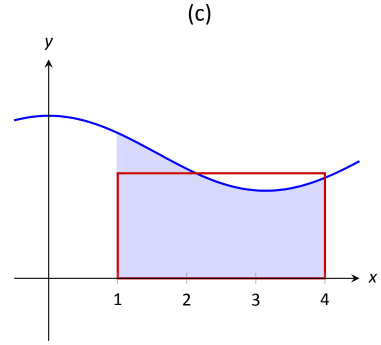
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

Figure 5.20: A graph of a function f to introduce the Mean Value Theorem and differently sized rectangles giving upper and lower bounds on $\int_1^4 f(x)\,dx$; the last rectangle matches the area exactly.

Notes:

We demonstrate the principles involved in this version of the Mean Value Theorem in the following example.

Example 5.4.7 Using the Mean Value Theorem

Consider $\int_0^{\pi} \sin x\, dx$. Find a value c guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

SOLUTION We first need to evaluate $\int_0^{\pi} \sin x\, dx$. (This was previously done in Example 5.4.3.)

$$\int_0^{\pi} \sin x\, dx = -\cos x\Big|_0^{\pi} = 2.$$

Thus we seek a value c in $[0, \pi]$ such that $\pi \sin c = 2$.

$$\pi \sin c = 2 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \sin c = \frac{2}{\pi} \quad \Rightarrow \quad c = \arcsin\left(\frac{2}{\pi}\right) \approx 0.69.$$

In Figure 5.21 $\sin x$ is sketched along with a rectangle with height $\sin(0.69)$. The area of the rectangle is the same as the area under $\sin x$ on $[0, \pi]$.

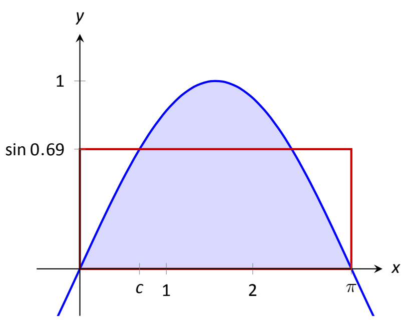


Figure 5.21: A graph of $y = \sin x$ on $[0, \pi]$ and the rectangle guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

Let f be a function on $[a, b]$ with c such that $f(c)(b-a) = \int_a^b f(x)\, dx$. Consider $\int_a^b \big(f(x) - f(c)\big)\, dx$:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b \big(f(x) - f(c)\big)\, dx &= \int_a^b f(x) - \int_a^b f(c)\, dx \\ &= f(c)(b-a) - f(c)(b-a) \\ &= 0.\end{aligned}$$

When $f(x)$ is shifted by $-f(c)$, the amount of area under f above the x–axis on $[a, b]$ is the same as the amount of area below the x–axis above f; see Figure 5.22 for an illustration of this. In this sense, we can say that $f(c)$ is the *average value* of f on $[a, b]$.

The value $f(c)$ is the average value in another sense. First, recognize that the Mean Value Theorem can be rewritten as

$$f(c) = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\, dx,$$

for some value of c in $[a, b]$. Next, partition the interval $[a, b]$ into n equally spaced subintervals, $a = x_1 < x_2 < \ldots < x_{n+1} = b$ and choose any c_i in $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$. The average of the numbers $f(c_1), f(c_2), \ldots, f(c_n)$ is:

$$\frac{1}{n}\Big(f(c_1) + f(c_2) + \ldots + f(c_n)\Big) = \frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i).$$

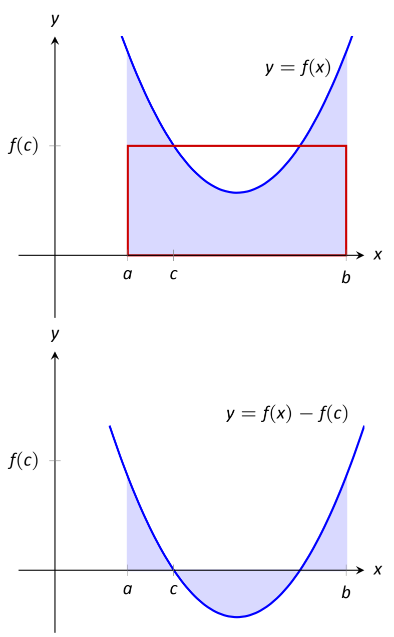


Figure 5.22: On top, a graph of $y = f(x)$ and the rectangle guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem. Below, $y = f(x)$ is shifted down by $f(c)$; the resulting "area under the curve" is 0.

Notes:

Multiply this last expression by 1 in the form of $\frac{(b-a)}{(b-a)}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i) &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\frac{1}{n} \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\frac{1}{n}\frac{(b-a)}{(b-a)} \\
&= \frac{1}{b-a}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\frac{b-a}{n} \\
&= \frac{1}{b-a}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x \quad \text{(where } \Delta x = (b-a)/n)
\end{aligned}$$

Now take the limit as $n \to \infty$:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \frac{1}{b-a}\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x \quad = \quad \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \quad = \quad f(c).$$

This tells us this: when we evaluate f at n (somewhat) equally spaced points in $[a,b]$, the average value of these samples is $f(c)$ as $n \to \infty$.

This leads us to a definition.

Definition 24 The Average Value of f on $[a,b]$

Let f be continuous on $[a,b]$. The **average value of f on $[\mathbf{a},\mathbf{b}]$** is $f(c)$, where c is a value in $[a,b]$ guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem. I.e.,

$$\text{Average Value of } f \text{ on } [a,b] = \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx.$$

An application of this definition is given in the following example.

Example 5.4.8 Finding the average value of a function

An object moves back and forth along a straight line with a velocity given by $v(t) = (t-1)^2$ on $[0,3]$, where t is measured in seconds and $v(t)$ is measured in ft/s.

What is the average velocity of the object?

SOLUTION By our definition, the average velocity is:

$$\frac{1}{3-0}\int_0^3 (t-1)^2\,dt = \frac{1}{3}\int_0^3 \left(t^2-2t+1\right)dt = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{1}{3}t^3 - t^2 + t\right)\Bigg|_0^3 = 1 \text{ ft/s}.$$

Notes:

We can understand the above example through a simpler situation. Suppose you drove 100 miles in 2 hours. What was your average speed? The answer is simple: displacement/time = 100 miles/2 hours = 50 mph.

What was the displacement of the object in Example 5.4.8? We calculate this by integrating its velocity function: $\int_0^3 (t-1)^2\,dt = 3$ ft. Its final position was 3 feet from its initial position after 3 seconds: its average velocity was 1 ft/s.

This section has laid the groundwork for a lot of great mathematics to follow. The most important lesson is this: definite integrals can be evaluated using antiderivatives. Since the previous section established that definite integrals are the limit of Riemann sums, we can later create Riemann sums to approximate values other than "area under the curve," convert the sums to definite integrals, then evaluate these using the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus. This will allow us to compute the work done by a variable force, the volume of certain solids, the arc length of curves, and more.

The downside is this: generally speaking, computing antiderivatives is much more difficult than computing derivatives. Much of our time in Calculus II will be devoted to techniques of finding antiderivatives so that a wide variety of definite integrals can be evaluated.

Notes:

Exercises 5.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. How are definite and indefinite integrals related?

2. What constant of integration is most commonly used when evaluating definite integrals?

3. T/F: If f is a continuous function, then $F(x) = \int_a^x f(t)\,dt$ is also a continuous function.

4. The definite integral can be used to find "the area under a curve." Give two other uses for definite integrals.

Problems

In Exercises 5 – 30, use the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus Part 2 to evaluate the definite integral.

5. $\int_1^3 (3x^2 - 2x + 1)\,dx$

6. $\int_0^4 (x-1)^2\,dx$

7. $\int_{-1}^1 (x^3 - x^5)\,dx$

8. $\int_{\pi/2}^{\pi} \cos x\,dx$

9. $\int_0^{\pi/4} \sec^2 x\,dx$

10. $\int_1^e \frac{1}{x}\,dx$

11. $\int_{-1}^1 5^x\,dx$

12. $\int_{-2}^{-1} (4 - 2x^3)\,dx$

13. $\int_0^{\pi} (2\cos x - 2\sin x)\,dx$

14. $\int_1^3 e^x\,dx$

15. $\int_0^4 \sqrt{t}\,dt$

16. $\int_9^{25} \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}\,dt$

17. $\int_1^8 \sqrt[3]{x}\,dx$

18. $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x}\,dx$

19. $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2}\,dx$

20. $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^3}\,dx$

21. $\int_0^1 x\,dx$

22. $\int_0^1 x^2\,dx$

23. $\int_0^1 x^3\,dx$

24. $\int_0^1 x^{100}\,dx$

25. $\int_{-4}^4 dx$

26. $\int_{-10}^{-5} 3\,dx$

27. $\int_{-2}^2 0\,dx$

28. $\int_{\pi/6}^{\pi/3} \csc x \cot x\,dx$

29. $\int_0^2 |x^2 - 1|\,dx$

30. $\int_0^3 |1 - 2x|\,dx$

31. Explain why:
    (a) $\int_{-1}^1 x^n\,dx = 0$, when n is a positive, odd integer, and
    (b) $\int_{-1}^1 x^n\,dx = 2\int_0^1 x^n\,dx$ when n is a positive, even integer.

In Exercises 32 – 35, find a value c guaranteed by the Mean Value Theorem.

32. $\int_0^2 x^2\,dx$

33. $\int_{-2}^2 x^2\,dx$

34. $\int_0^1 e^x \, dx$

35. $\int_0^{16} \sqrt{x} \, dx$

In Exercises 36 – 41, find the average value of the function on the given interval.

36. $f(x) = \sin x$ on $[0, \pi/2]$

37. $y = \sin x$ on $[0, \pi]$

38. $y = x$ on $[0, 4]$

39. $y = x^2$ on $[0, 4]$

40. $y = x^3$ on $[0, 4]$

41. $g(t) = 1/t$ on $[1, e]$

In Exercises 42 – 46, a velocity function of an object moving along a straight line is given. Find (a) the displacement of the object over the given time interval and (b) the total distance traveled by the object over the given time interval.

42. $v(t) = -32t + 20$ft/s on $[0, 5]$

43. $v(t) = -32t + 200$ft/s on $[0, 10]$

44. $v(t) = \cos t$ ft/s on $[0, 3\pi/2]$

45. $v(t) = \sqrt[4]{t}$ ft/s on $[0, 16]$

In Exercises 46 – 49, an acceleration function of an object moving along a straight line is given. Find the change of the object's velocity over the given time interval.

46. $a(t) = -32$ft/s^2 on $[0, 2]$

47. $a(t) = 10$ft/s^2 on $[0, 5]$

48. $a(t) = t$ ft/s^2 on $[0, 2]$

49. $a(t) = \cos t$ ft/s^2 on $[0, \pi]$

In Exercises 50 – 53, use the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus Part 1 to find $F'(x)$.

50. $F(x) = \int_2^{x^3+x} \frac{1}{t} \, dt$

51. $F(x) = \int_{x^3}^{0} t^3 \, dt$

52. $F(x) = \int_x^{x^2} (t+2) \, dt$

53. $F(x) = \int_{\ln x}^{e^x} \sin t \, dt$

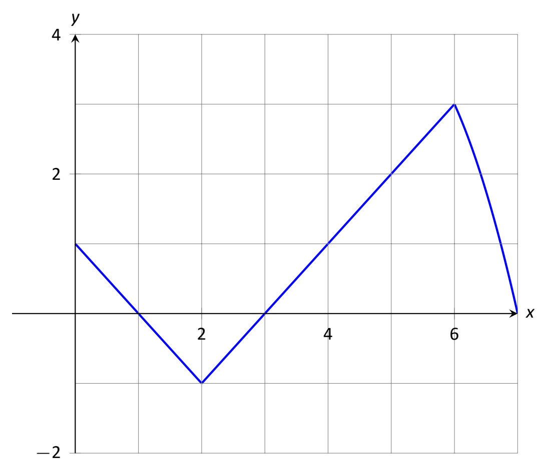
54. Let $g(x) = \int_0^x f(t) \, dt$ where f is the function whose graph is shown below.

(a) Evaluate $g(x)$ for $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$.

(b) Estimate $g(7)$.

(c) Where does g have a minimum value? a maximum value?

(d) Sketch the graph of g.



5.5 Substitution

We motivate this section with an example. Let $f(x) = (x^2+3x-5)^{10}$. We can compute $f'(x)$ using the Chain Rule. It is:

$$f'(x) = 10(x^2+3x-5)^9 \cdot (2x+3) = (20x+30)(x^2+3x-5)^9.$$

Now consider this: What is $\int (20x+30)(x^2+3x-5)^9\ dx$? We have the answer in front of us;

$$\int (20x+30)(x^2+3x-5)^9\ dx = (x^2+3x-5)^{10} + C.$$

How would we have evaluated this indefinite integral without starting with $f(x)$ as we did?

This section explores *integration by substitution.* It allows us to "undo the Chain Rule." Substitution allows us to evaluate the above integral without knowing the original function first.

The underlying principle is to rewrite a "complicated" integral of the form $\int f(x)\ dx$ as a not–so–complicated integral $\int h(u)\ du$. We'll formally establish later how this is done. First, consider again our introductory indefinite integral, $\int (20x+30)(x^2+3x-5)^9\ dx$. Arguably the most "complicated" part of the integrand is $(x^2+3x-5)^9$. We wish to make this simpler; we do so through a substitution. Let $u = x^2+3x-5$. Thus

$$(x^2+3x-5)^9 = u^9.$$

We have established u as a function of x, so now consider the differential of u:

$$du = (2x+3)dx.$$

Keep in mind that $(2x+3)$ and dx are multiplied; the dx is not "just sitting there."

Note: Recall from Section 4.3 that the differential of x, denoted dx, is any nonzero real number. If u is a function of x, then the differential of u, denoted du, is defined by $du = u'(x)\ dx$.

Return to the original integral and do some substitutions through algebra:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int (20x+30)(x^2+3x-5)^9\ dx &= \int 10(2x+3)(x^2+3x-5)^9\ dx \\
&= \int 10(\underbrace{x^2+3x-5}_{u})^9\ \underbrace{(2x+3)\ dx}_{du} \\
&= \int 10u^9\ du \\
&= u^{10} + C \quad \text{(replace } u \text{ with } x^2+3x-5) \\
&= (x^2+3x-5)^{10} + C
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

One might well look at this and think "I (sort of) followed how that worked, but I could never come up with that on my own," but the process is learnable. This section contains numerous examples through which the reader will gain understanding and mathematical maturity enabling them to regard substitution as a natural tool when evaluating integrals.

We stated before that integration by substitution "undoes" the Chain Rule. Specifically, let $F(x)$ and $g(x)$ be differentiable functions and consider the derivative of their composition:

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(F\big(g(x)\big)\Big) = F'(g(x))g'(x).$$

Thus

$$\int F'(g(x))g'(x)\ dx = F(g(x)) + C.$$

Integration by substitution works by recognizing the "inside" function $g(x)$ and replacing it with a variable. By setting $u = g(x)$, we can rewrite the derivative as

$$\frac{d}{dx}\Big(F\big(u\big)\Big) = F'(u)u'.$$

Since $du = g'(x)dx$, we can rewrite the above integral as

$$\int F'(g(x))g'(x)\ dx = \int F'(u)du = F(u) + C = F(g(x)) + C.$$

This concept is important so we restate it in the context of a theorem.

Theorem 41 Integration by Substitution

Let F and g be differentiable functions, where the range of g is an interval I contained in the domain of F. Then

$$\int F'(g(x))g'(x)\ dx = F(g(x)) + C.$$

If $u = g(x)$, then $du = g'(x)dx$ and

$$\int F'(g(x))g'(x)\ dx = \int F'(u)\ du = F(u) + C = F(g(x)) + C.$$

The point of substitution is to make the integration step easy. Indeed, the step $\int F'(u)\ du = F(u) + C$ looks easy, as the antiderivative of the derivative of F is just F, plus a constant. The "work" involved is making the proper substitution. There is not a step–by–step process to memorize; rather, experience will

Notes:

be your guide. To gain experience, we now embark on many examples.

Watch the video:
Integration by U-Substitution (Indefinite Integral) at
`https://youtu.be/li1SMPsqNuw`

Example 5.5.1 Integrating by substitution

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int x\sin(x^2+5)\,dx$.

Solution Knowing that substitution is related to the Chain Rule, we choose to let u be the "inside" function of $\sin(x^2+5)$. (This is not *always* a good choice, but it is often the best place to start.)

Let $u = x^2+5$, hence $du = 2x\,dx$. The integrand has an $x\,dx$ term, but not a $2x\,dx$ term. (Recall that multiplication is commutative, so the x does not physically have to be next to dx for there to be an $x\,dx$ term.) We can divide both sides of the du expression by 2:

$$du = 2x\,dx \quad\Rightarrow\quad \frac{1}{2}du = x\,dx.$$

We can now substitute.

$$\begin{aligned}\int x\sin(x^2+5)\,dx &= \int \sin(\underbrace{x^2+5}_{u})\,\underbrace{x\,dx}_{\frac{1}{2}du}\\ &= \int \frac{1}{2}\sin u\,du\\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\cos u + C \quad \text{(now replace } u \text{ with } x^2+5\text{)}\\ &= -\frac{1}{2}\cos(x^2+5)+C.\end{aligned}$$

Thus $\int x\sin(x^2+5)\,dx = -\frac{1}{2}\cos(x^2+5)+C$. We can check our work by evaluating the derivative of the right hand side.

Notes:

Example 5.5.2 Integrating by substitution

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \cos(5x)\, dx.$

SOLUTION Again let u replace the "inside" function. Letting $u = 5x$, we have $du = 5dx$. Since our integrand does not have a $5dx$ term, we can divide the previous equation by 5 to obtain $\frac{1}{5}du = dx$. We can now substitute.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \cos(5x)\, dx &= \int \cos(\underbrace{5x}_{u})\,\underbrace{dx}_{\frac{1}{5}du}\\ &= \int \frac{1}{5}\cos u\, du\\ &= \frac{1}{5}\sin u + C\\ &= \frac{1}{5}\sin(5x) + C.\end{aligned}$$

We can again check our work through differentiation.

The previous example exhibited a common, and simple, type of substitution. The "inside" function was a linear function (in this case, $y = 5x$). When the inside function is linear, the resulting integration is very predictable, so that we can say

$$\int F'(ax+b)\, dx = \frac{1}{a}F(ax+b) + C.$$

For example, $\int \sin(7x-4)\, dx = -\frac{1}{7}\cos(7x-4) + C$. Our next example can use this idea, but we will only employ it after going through all of the steps.

Example 5.5.3 Integrating by substituting a linear function

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \frac{7}{-3x+1}\, dx.$

SOLUTION View this as a composition of functions $f(g(x))$, where $f(x) = 7/x$ and $g(x) = -3x+1$. Employing our understanding of substitution, we let $u = -3x+1$, the inside function. Thus $du = -3dx$. The integrand lacks a -3; hence divide the previous equation by -3 to obtain $-du/3 = dx$. We can now

Notes:

evaluate the integral through substitution.

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{7}{-3x+1}\,dx &= \int \left(\frac{7}{u}\right)\left(\frac{du}{-3}\right)\\ &= \frac{-7}{3}\int \frac{du}{u}\\ &= \frac{-7}{3}\ln|u| + C\\ &= -\frac{7}{3}\ln|-3x+1| + C.\end{aligned}$$

Not all integrals that benefit from substitution have a clear "inside" function. Several of the following examples will demonstrate ways in which this occurs.

Example 5.5.4 Integrating by substitution

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \sin x \cos x\, dx$.

Solution There is not a composition of function here to exploit; rather, just a product of functions. Do not be afraid to experiment; when given an integral to evaluate, it is often beneficial to think "If I let u be *this*, then du must be *that* …" and see if this helps simplify the integral at all.

In this example, let's set $u = \sin x$. Then $du = \cos x\, dx$, which we have as part of the integrand. The substitution becomes very straightforward:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \sin x \cos x\, dx &= \int u\, du\\ &= \frac{1}{2}u^2 + C\\ &= \frac{1}{2}\sin^2 x + C.\end{aligned}$$

One would do well to ask "What would happen if we let $u = \cos x$?" The result is just as easy to find, yet looks very different. The challenge to the reader is to evaluate the integral letting $u = \cos x$ and discover why the answer is the same, yet looks different.

Our examples so far have required "basic substitution." The next example demonstrates how substitutions can be made that often strike the new learner as being "nonstandard."

Notes:

Example 5.5.5 Integrating by substitution

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int x\sqrt{x+3}\,dx$.

Solution Recognizing the composition of functions, set $u = x+3$. Then $du = dx$, giving what seems initially to be a simple substitution. But at this stage, we have:

$$\int x\sqrt{x+3}\,dx = \int x\sqrt{u}\,du.$$

We cannot evaluate an integral that has both an x and an u in it. We need to convert the x to an expression involving just u.

Since we set $u = x+3$, we can also state that $u-3 = x$. Thus we can replace x in the integrand with $u-3$. It will also be helpful to rewrite $\sqrt{u}$ as $u^{\frac{1}{2}}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\int x\sqrt{x+3}\,dx &= \int (u-3)u^{\frac{1}{2}}\,du\\ &= \int \left(u^{\frac{3}{2}} - 3u^{\frac{1}{2}}\right)du\\ &= \frac{2}{5}u^{\frac{5}{2}} - 2u^{\frac{3}{2}} + C\\ &= \frac{2}{5}(x+3)^{\frac{5}{2}} - 2(x+3)^{\frac{3}{2}} + C.\end{aligned}$$

Checking your work is always a good idea. In this particular case, some algebra will be needed to make one's answer match the integrand in the original problem.

Example 5.5.6 Integrating by substitution

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\ln x}\,dx$.

Solution This is another example where there does not seem to be an obvious composition of functions. The line of thinking used in Example 5.5.5 is useful here: choose something for u and consider what this implies du must be. If u can be chosen such that du also appears in the integrand, then we have chosen well.

Choosing $u = 1/x$ makes $du = -1/x^2\,dx$; that does not seem helpful. How-

Notes:

ever, setting $u = \ln x$ makes $du = 1/x\,dx$, which is part of the integrand. Thus:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{1}{x\ln x}\,dx &= \int \underbrace{\frac{1}{\ln x}}_{1/u}\underbrace{\frac{1}{x}\,dx}_{du}\\ &= \int \frac{1}{u}\,du\\ &= \ln|u| + C\\ &= \ln|\ln x| + C.\end{aligned}$$

The final answer is interesting; the natural log of the natural log. Take the derivative to confirm this answer is indeed correct.

Integrals Involving Trigonometric Functions

Calculus II delves deeper into integrals of a variety of trigonometric functions; here we use substitution to establish a foundation that we will build upon.

The next three examples will help fill in some missing pieces of our antiderivative knowledge. We know the antiderivatives of the sine and cosine functions; what about the other standard functions tangent, cotangent, secant and cosecant? We discover these next.

Example 5.5.7 Integration by substitution: antiderivatives of $\tan x$

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \tan x\,dx$.

Solution The previous paragraph established that we did not know the antiderivatives of tangent, hence we must assume that we have learned something in this section that can help us evaluate this indefinite integral.

Rewrite $\tan x$ as $\sin x/\cos x$. While the presence of a composition of functions may not be immediately obvious, recognize that $\cos x$ is "inside" the $1/x$ function. Therefore, we see if setting $u = \cos x$ returns usable results. We have

Notes:

that $du = -\sin x\,dx$, hence $-du = \sin x\,dx$. We can integrate:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \tan x\,dx &= \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}\,dx \\
&= \int \frac{1}{\underbrace{\cos x}_{u}} \underbrace{\sin x\,dx}_{-du} \\
&= \int \frac{-1}{u}\,du \\
&= -\ln|u| + C \\
&= -\ln|\cos x| + C.
\end{aligned}$$

Some texts prefer to bring the -1 inside the logarithm as a power of $\cos x$, as in:

$$\begin{aligned}
-\ln|\cos x| + C &= \ln\left|(\cos x)^{-1}\right| + C \\
&= \ln\left|\frac{1}{\cos x}\right| + C \\
&= \ln|\sec x| + C.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus the result they give is $\int \tan x\,dx = \ln|\sec x| + C$. These two answers are equivalent.

Example 5.5.8 Integrating by substitution: antiderivatives of $\sec x$

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \sec x\,dx$.

Solution This example employs a wonderful trick: multiply the integrand by "1" so that we see how to integrate more clearly. In this case, we write "1" as

$$1 = \frac{\sec x + \tan x}{\sec x + \tan x}.$$

This may seem like it came out of left field, but it works beautifully. Consider:

$$\begin{aligned}
\int \sec x\,dx &= \int \sec x \cdot \frac{\sec x + \tan x}{\sec x + \tan x}\,dx \\
&= \int \frac{\sec^2 x + \sec x \tan x}{\sec x + \tan x}\,dx.
\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Now let $u = \sec x + \tan x$; this means $du = (\sec x \tan x + \sec^2 x)\ dx$, which is our numerator. Thus:

$$\begin{aligned} &= \int \frac{du}{u} \\ &= \ln|u| + C \\ &= \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C. \end{aligned}$$

We can use similar techniques to those used in Examples 5.5.7 and 5.5.8 to find antiderivatives of $\cot x$ and $\csc x$ (which the reader can explore in the exercises.) We summarize our results here.

Theorem 42 Antiderivatives of Trigonometric Functions

1. $\displaystyle\int \sin x\ dx = -\cos x + C$
2. $\displaystyle\int \cos x\ dx = \sin x + C$
3. $\displaystyle\int \tan x\ dx = \ln|\sec x| + C$
4. $\displaystyle\int \csc x\ dx = -\ln|\csc x + \cot x| + C$
5. $\displaystyle\int \sec x\ dx = \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C$
6. $\displaystyle\int \cot x\ dx = \ln|\sin x| + C$

Simplifying the Integrand

It is common to be reluctant to manipulate the integrand of an integral; at first, our grasp of integration is tenuous and one may think that working with the integrand will improperly change the results. Integration by substitution works using a different logic: as long as *equality* is maintained, the integrand can be manipulated so that its *form* is easier to deal with. The next example demonstrates a common way in which using algebra first makes the integration easier to perform.

Example 5.5.9 Integration by alternate methods

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+2x+3}{\sqrt{x}}\ dx$ with, and without, substitution.

Solution We already know how to integrate this particular example. Rewrite $\sqrt{x}$ as $x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and simplify the fraction:

$$\frac{x^2+2x+3}{x^{1/2}} = x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + 3x^{-\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Notes:

We can now integrate using the Power Rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+2x+3}{x^{1/2}}\,dx &= \int \left(x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + 3x^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)\,dx \\ &= \frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + \frac{4}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 6x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C\end{aligned}$$

This is a perfectly fine approach. We demonstrate how this can also be solved using substitution as its implementation is rather clever.

Let $u = \sqrt{x} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$; therefore

$$du = \frac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}}dx = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}\,dx \quad \Rightarrow \quad 2du = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx.$$

This gives us $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2+2x+3}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx = \int (x^2+2x+3)\cdot 2\,du$. What are we to do with the other x terms? Since $u = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$, we have $u^2 = x$ and $u^4 = x^2$. We can then replace x^2 and x with appropriate powers of u. We thus have

$$\begin{aligned}\int \frac{x^2+2x+3}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx &= \int (x^2+2x+3)\cdot 2\,du \\ &= \int 2(u^4+2u^2+3)\,du \\ &= \frac{2}{5}u^5 + \frac{4}{3}u^3 + 6u + C \\ &= \frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + \frac{4}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 6x^{\frac{1}{2}} + C,\end{aligned}$$

which is obviously the same answer we obtained before. In this situation, substitution is arguably more work than our other method. The fantastic thing is that it works. It demonstrates how flexible integration is.

Substitution and Definite Integration

So far this section has focused on learning a new technique for finding antiderivatives. In practice, we will frequently be interested in finding definite integrals. We can use this antiderivative to evaluate the definite integral, but there is a more efficient method.

At its heart, (using the notation of Theorem 41) substitution converts integrals of the form $\int F'(g(x))g'(x)\,dx$ into an integral of the form $\int F'(u)\,du$ with the substitution of $u = g(x)$. The following theorem states how the bounds of a definite integral can be changed as the substitution is performed.

Notes:

Theorem 43 Substitution with Definite Integrals
Let F and g be differentiable functions, where the range of g is an interval I that is contained in the domain of F. Then

$$\int_a^b F'\big(g(x)\big)g'(x)\,dx = \int_{g(a)}^{g(b)} F'(u)\,du.$$

In effect, Theorem 43 states that once you convert to integrating with respect to u, you do not need to switch back to evaluating with respect to x. A few examples will help one understand.

Example 5.5.10 Definite integrals and substitution: changing the bounds
Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^2 \cos(3x-1)\,dx$ using Theorem 43.

Solution Observing the composition of functions, let $u = 3x-1$, hence $du = 3dx$. As $3dx$ does not appear in the integrand, divide the latter equation by 3 to get $du/3 = dx$.

By setting $u = 3x-1$, we are implicitly stating that $g(x) = 3x-1$. Theorem 43 states that the new lower bound is $g(0) = -1$; the new upper bound is $g(2) = 5$. We now evaluate the definite integral:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_1^2 \cos(3x-1)\,dx &= \int_{-1}^5 \cos u\frac{du}{3}\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\sin u\Big|_{-1}^5\\ &= \frac{1}{3}\big(\sin 5-\sin(-1)\big).\end{aligned}$$

Notice how once we converted the integral to be in terms of u, we never went back to using x.

The graphs in Figure 5.23 tell more of the story. In (a) the area defined by the original integrand is shaded, whereas in (b) the area defined by the new integrand is shaded. In this particular situation, the areas look very similar; the new region is "shorter" but "wider," giving the same area.

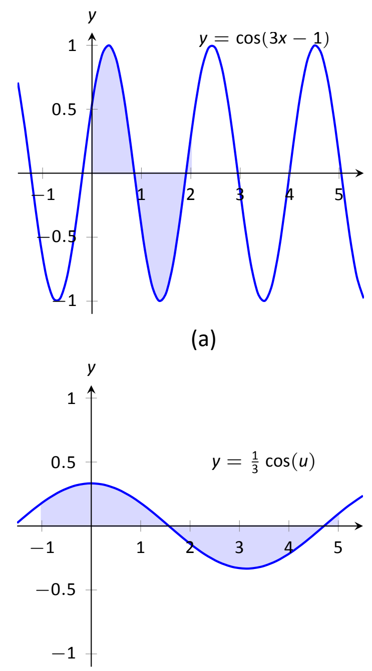


Figure 5.23: Graphing the areas defined by the definite integrals of Example 5.5.10.

Example 5.5.11 Definite integrals and substitution: changing the bounds
Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x\cos x\,dx$ using Theorem 43.

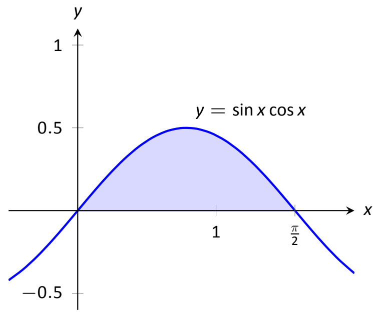
Notes:

Solution We saw the corresponding indefinite integral in Example 5.5.4. In that example we set $u = \sin x$ but stated that we could have let $u = \cos x$. For variety, we do the latter here.

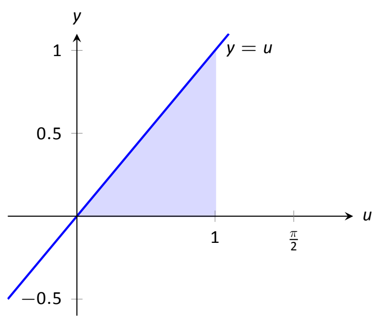
Let $u = g(x) = \cos x$, giving $du = -\sin x\,dx$ and hence $\sin x\,dx = -du$. The new upper bound is $g(\pi/2) = 0$; the new lower bound is $g(0) = 1$. Note how the lower bound is actually larger than the upper bound now. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin x \cos x\,dx &= \int_1^0 -u\,du \qquad \text{(switch bounds \& change sign)}\\ &= \int_0^1 u\,du\\ &= \frac{1}{2}u^2\Big|_0^1 = \frac{1}{2}.\end{aligned}$$

In Figure 5.24 we have again graphed the two regions defined by our definite integrals. Unlike the previous example, they bear no resemblance to each other. However, Theorem 43 guarantees that they have the same area.



(a)



(b)

Figure 5.24: Graphing the areas defined by the definite integrals of Example 5.5.11.

Example 5.5.12 Definite integrals and substitution: changing the bounds

Evaluate $\displaystyle\int_0^2 xe^{x^2+1}\,dx$ using Theorem 43.

Solution We note the composition of functions and let $u = x^2 + 1$, hence $du = 2x\,dx$. We divide the differential by 2 to get $\frac{du}{2} = x\,dx$.

Setting $g(x) = u = x^2 + 1$, we find that the new lower bound is $g(0) = 1$; the new upper bound is $g(2) = 5$. We now evaluate:

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^2 xe^{x^2+1}\,dx &= \int_1^5 e^u \frac{du}{2}\\ &= \frac{1}{2}e^u\Big|_1^5\\ &= \frac{1}{2}(e^5 - e^1)\\ &= \frac{e}{2}(e^4 - 1).\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Exercises 5.5 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. Substitution "undoes" what derivative rule?

2. T/F: One can sometimes use algebra to rewrite the integrand of an integral to make it easier to evaluate.

Problems

In Exercises 3 – 49, evaluate the indefinite integral.

3. $\displaystyle\int 3x^2\left(x^3-5\right)^7\,dx$

4. $\displaystyle\int (2x-5)\left(x^2-5x+7\right)^3\,dx$

5. $\displaystyle\int x\left(x^2+1\right)^8\,dx$

6. $\displaystyle\int (12x+14)\left(3x^2+7x-1\right)^5\,dx$

7. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{2x+7}dx$

8. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{2x+3}}dx$

9. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+3}}dx$

10. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^3-x}{\sqrt{x}}dx$

11. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}dx$

12. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^4}{\sqrt{x^5+1}}dx$

13. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\frac{1}{x}+1}{x^2}dx$

14. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\ln(x)}{x}dx$

15. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2(x)\cos(x)dx$

16. $\displaystyle\int \cos(3-6x)dx$

17. $\displaystyle\int \sec^2(4-x)dx$

18. $\displaystyle\int \sec(2x)dx$

19. $\displaystyle\int \tan^2(x)\sec^2(x)dx$

20. $\displaystyle\int x\cos\left(x^2\right)\,dx$

21. $\displaystyle\int \cot x\,dx$. Do not just refer to Theorem 42 for the answer; justify it through Substitution.

22. $\displaystyle\int \csc x\,dx$. Do not just refer to Theorem 42 for the answer; justify it through Substitution.

23. $\displaystyle\int e^{3x-1}dx$

24. $\displaystyle\int e^{x^3}x^2dx$

25. $\displaystyle\int e^{x^2-2x+1}(x-1)dx$

26. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x+1}{e^x}dx$

27. $\displaystyle\int \frac{e^x-e^{-x}}{e^{2x}}dx$

28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\ln x}{x}dx$

29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\left(\ln x\right)^2}{x}dx$

30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{\ln\left(x^3\right)}{x}dx$

31. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\ln\left(x^2\right)}dx$

32. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x^2}{\left(x^3+3\right)^2}dx$

33. $\displaystyle\int \left(3x^2+2x\right)\left(5x^3+5x^2+2\right)^8\,dx$

34. $\displaystyle\int \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}dx$

35. $\displaystyle\int x^2\csc^2\left(x^3+1\right)\,dx$

36. $\displaystyle\int \sin(x)\sqrt{\cos(x)}dx$

37. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x-5}dx$

38. $\int \frac{7}{3x+2}dx$

39. $\int \frac{2x+7}{x^2+7x+3}dx$

40. $\int \frac{9(2x+3)}{3x^2+9x+7}dx$

41. $\int \frac{3x-3}{\sqrt{x^2-2x-6}}dx$

42. $\int \frac{x-3}{\sqrt{x^2-6x+8}}dx$

43. $\int \frac{\cos\sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x}}\,dx$

44. $\int \sec^2\theta\tan\theta\,d\theta$

In Exercises 45 – 55, evaluate the definite integral.

45. $\int_1^3 \frac{1}{x-5}dx$

46. $\int_2^6 x\sqrt{x-2}dx$

47. $\int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \sin^2 x\cos x\,dx$

48. $\int_0^1 2x(1-x^2)^4\,dx$

49. $\int_{-2}^{-1} (x+1)e^{x^2+2x+1}\,dx$

50. $\int_0^{\pi/4} e^{\tan x}\sec^2 x\,dx$

51. $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx$

52. $\int_1^{\ln 3} \frac{e^x}{1+e^x}\,dx$

53. $\int_0^1 \frac{2x^2+1}{(2x^3+3x+2)^3}\,dx$

54. $\int_{-1}^2 \frac{x}{\sqrt{x+2}}\,dx$

55. $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos^5(2x)\sin(2x)\,dx$

6: Applications of Integration

We begin this chapter with a reminder of a few key concepts from chapter 5. Let f be a continuous function on $[a, b]$ which is partitioned into n equally spaced subintervals as

$$a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_{n-1} < x_n = b.$$

Let $\Delta x = (b - a)/n$ denote the length of the subintervals, and let c_i be any x-value in the i^{th} subinterval. Definition 23 states that the sum

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x$$

is a *Riemann Sum.* Riemann Sums are often used to approximate some quantity (area, volume, work, pressure, etc.). The *approximation* becomes *exact* by taking the limit

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x.$$

Theorem 36 connects limits of Riemann Sums to definite integrals:

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x = \int_a^b f(x)\, dx.$$

Finally, the Fundamental Theorem of Calculus states how definite integrals can be evaluated using antiderivatives.

This chapter employs the following technique to a variety of applications. Suppose the value Q of a quantity is to be calculated. We first approximate the value of Q using a Riemann Sum, then find the exact value via a definite integral. We spell out this technique in the following Key Idea.

> **Key Idea 11 Application of Definite Integrals Strategy**
> Let a quantity be given whose value Q is to be computed.
>
> 1. Divide the quantity into n smaller "subquantities" of value Q_i.
> 2. Identify a variable x and function $f(x)$ such that each subquantity can be approximated with the product $f(c_i)\Delta x$, where Δx represents a small change in x. Thus $Q_i \approx f(c_i)\Delta x$.
> 3. Recognize that $Q \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} Q_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} f(c_i)\Delta x$, which is a Riemann Sum.
> 4. Taking the appropriate limit gives $Q = \int_a^b f(x)\,dx$

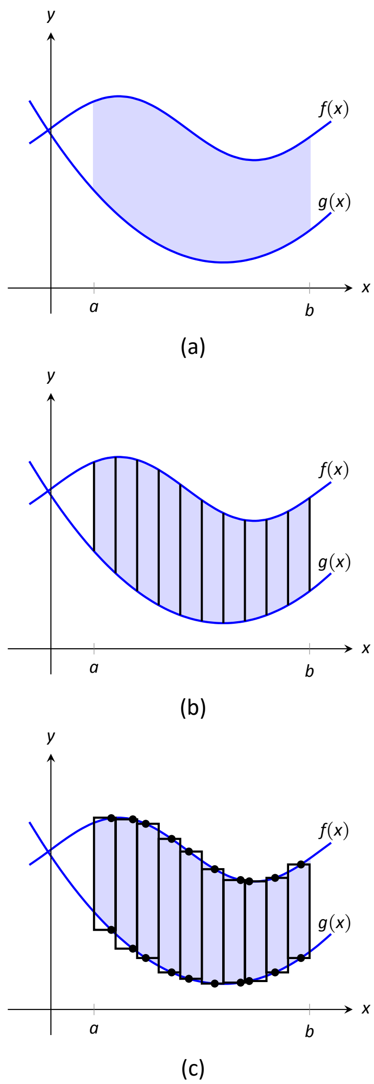


Figure 6.1: Subdividing a region into vertical slices and approximating the areas with rectangles.

This Key Idea will make more sense after we have had a chance to use it several times. We begin with Area Between Curves.

6.1 Area Between Curves

We are often interested in knowing the area of a region. Forget momentarily that we addressed this already in Section 5.4 and approach it instead using the technique described in Key Idea 11.

Let Q be the area of a region bounded by continuous functions f and g. If we break the region into many subregions, we have an obvious equation:

Total Area = sum of the areas of the subregions.

The issue to address next is how to systematically break a region into subregions. A graph will help. Consider Figure 6.1 (a) where a region between two curves is shaded. While there are many ways to break this into subregions, one particularly efficient way is to "slice" it vertically, as shown in Figure 6.1 (b), into n equally spaced slices.

We now approximate the area of a slice. Again, we have many options, but using a rectangle seems simplest. Picking any x-value c_i in the i^{th} slice, we set the height of the rectangle to be $f(c_i) - g(c_i)$, the difference of the corresponding y-values. The width of the rectangle is a small difference in x-values, which we represent with Δx. Figure 6.1 (c) shows sample points c_i chosen in each subinterval and appropriate rectangles drawn. Each slice has an area approximately equal to $\big(f(c_i) - g(c_i)\big)\Delta x$; hence, the total area is approximately the Riemann

Notes:

Sum

$$Q \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} \big(f(c_i) - g(c_i)\big)\Delta x.$$

Taking the limit as $n \to \infty$ gives the exact area as $\int_a^b \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\,dx$.

Theorem 44 Area Between Curves
Let $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ be continuous functions defined on $[a,b]$ where $f(x) \geq g(x)$ for all x in $[a,b]$. The area of the region bounded by the curves $y = f(x)$, $y = g(x)$ and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is

$$\int_a^b \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\,dx.$$

Often, we do not know which function is greater (or they switch within the domain of integration). In that case, we can say that the area is $\int_a^b |f(x) - g(x)|\,dx$, which may involve dividing the domain of integration into pieces.

Watch the video:
Finding Areas Between Curves at
`https://youtu.be/DRFyNHdVgUA`

Example 6.1.1 Finding area enclosed by curves
Find the area of the region bounded by $f(x) = \sin x + 2$, $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}\cos(2x) - 1$, $x = 0$ and $x = 4\pi$, as shown in Figure 6.2.

Solution The graph verifies that the upper boundary of the region is given by f and the lower bound is given by g. Therefore the area of the region is the value of the integral

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^{4\pi} \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\,dx &= \int_0^{4\pi} \Big(\sin x + 2 - \big(\tfrac{1}{2}\cos(2x) - 1\big)\Big)\,dx \\ &= -\cos x - \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x) + 3x\Big|_0^{4\pi} \\ &= 12\pi \text{ units}^2.\end{aligned}$$

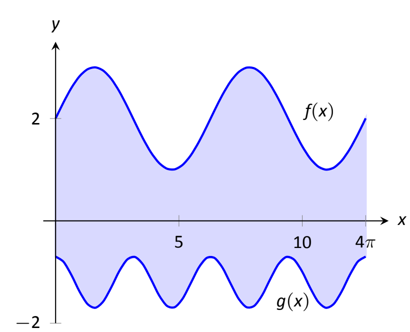


Figure 6.2: Graphing an enclosed region in Example 6.1.1.

Notes:

Example 6.1.2 Finding area between curves

Find the area of the region enclosed by $y = x^2 + x - 5$ and $y = 3x - 2$.

Solution It will help to sketch these two functions, as done in Figure 6.3. The region whose area we seek is completely bounded by these two functions; they seem to intersect at $x = -1$ and $x = 3$. To check, set $x^2 + x - 5 = 3x - 2$ and solve for x:

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + x - 5 &= 3x - 2 \\ (x^2 + x - 5) - (3x - 2) &= 0 \\ x^2 - 2x - 3 &= 0 \\ (x-3)(x+1) &= 0 \\ x &= -1,\ 3. \end{aligned}$$

Following Theorem 44, the area is

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-1}^{3} \big(3x - 2 - (x^2 + x - 5)\big)\, dx &= \int_{-1}^{3} (-x^2 + 2x + 3)\, dx \\ &= \left(-\frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2 + 3x\right)\Big|_{-1}^{3} \\ &= -\frac{1}{3}(27) + 9 + 9 - \left(\frac{1}{3} + 1 - 3\right) \\ &= 10\frac{2}{3} = 10.\overline{6} \end{aligned}$$

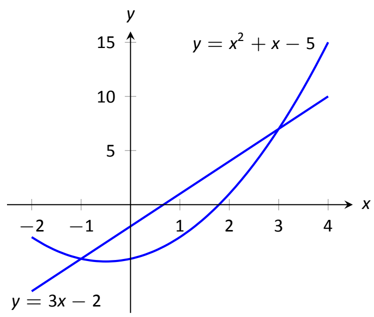


Figure 6.3: Sketching the region enclosed by $y = x^2 + x - 5$ and $y = 3x - 2$ in Example 6.1.2.

Example 6.1.3 Finding total area enclosed by curves

Find the total area of the region enclosed by the functions $f(x) = -2x + 5$ and $g(x) = x^3 - 7x^2 + 12x - 3$ as shown in Figure 6.4.

Solution A quick calculation shows that $f = g$ at $x = 1, 2$ and 4. One can proceed thoughtlessly by computing $\displaystyle\int_1^4 \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\, dx$, but this ignores the fact that on $[1, 2]$, $g(x) > f(x)$. (In fact, the thoughtless integration returns $-9/4$, hardly the expected value of an *area*.) Thus we compute the total area by breaking the interval $[1, 4]$ into two subintervals, $[1, 2]$ and $[2, 4]$ and using the

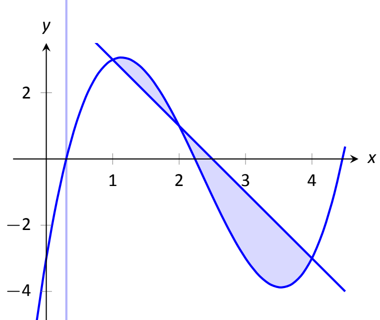


Figure 6.4: Graphing a region enclosed by two functions in Example 6.1.3.

Notes:

proper integrand in each.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Area} &= \int_1^2 \big(g(x) - f(x)\big)\,dx + \int_2^4 \big(f(x) - g(x)\big)\,dx \\ &= \int_1^2 \big(x^3 - 7x^2 + 14x - 8\big)\,dx + \int_2^4 \big(-x^3 + 7x^2 - 14x + 8\big)\,dx \\ &= \frac{5}{12} + \frac{8}{3} \\ &= \frac{37}{12}\ \text{units}^2.\end{aligned}$$

The previous example makes note that we are expecting area to be *positive*. When first learning about the definite integral, we interpreted it as "signed area under the curve," allowing for "negative area." That doesn't apply here; area is to be positive.

The previous example also demonstrates that we often have to break a given region into subregions before applying Theorem 44. The following example shows another situation where this is applicable, along with an alternate view of applying the Theorem.

Example 6.1.4 Finding area: integrating with respect to y

Find the area of the region enclosed by the functions $y = \sqrt{x} + 2$, $y = -(x-1)^2 + 3$ and $y = 2$, as shown in Figure 6.5.

Solution We give two approaches to this problem. In the first approach, we notice that the region's "top" is defined by two different curves. On $[0, 1]$, the top function is $y = \sqrt{x} + 2$; on $[1, 2]$, the top function is $y = -(x-1)^2 + 3$. Thus we compute the area as the sum of two integrals:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Area} &= \int_0^1 \Big(\big(\sqrt{x} + 2\big) - 2\Big)\,dx + \int_1^2 \Big(\big(-(x-1)^2 + 3\big) - 2\Big)\,dx \\ &= 2/3 + 2/3 \\ &= 4/3.\end{aligned}$$

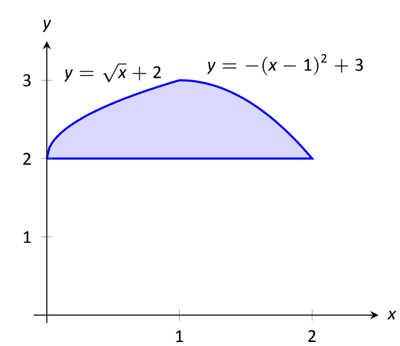


Figure 6.5: Graphing a region for Example 6.1.4.

The second approach is clever and very useful in certain situations. We are used to viewing curves as functions of x; we input an x-value and a y-value is returned. Some curves can also be described as functions of y: input a y-value and an x-value is returned. We can rewrite the equations describing the boundary by solving for x:

$$\begin{aligned} y = \sqrt{x} + 2 \quad &\Rightarrow \quad x = (y-2)^2 \\ y = -(x-1)^2 + 3 \quad &\Rightarrow \quad x = \sqrt{3-y} + 1.\end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Figure 6.6 shows the region with the boundaries relabeled. A horizontal rectangle is also pictured. The width of the rectangle is a small change in y: Δy. The height of the rectangle is a difference in x-values. The "top" x-value is the largest value, i.e., the rightmost. The "bottom" x-value is the smaller, i.e., the leftmost. Therefore the height of the rectangle is

$$\big(\sqrt{3-y}+1\big)-(y-2)^2.$$

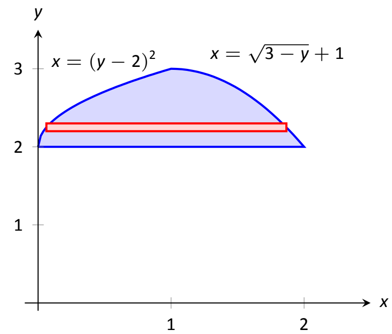


Figure 6.6: The region used in Example 6.1.4 with boundaries relabeled as functions of y.

The area is found by integrating the above function with respect to y with the appropriate bounds. We determine these by considering the y-values the region occupies. It is bounded below by $y=2$, and bounded above by $y=3$. That is, both the "top" and "bottom" functions exist on the y interval $[2,3]$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Area} &= \int_2^3 \big(\sqrt{3-y}+1-(y-2)^2\big)\,dy\\ &= \left(-\frac{2}{3}(3-y)^{3/2}+y-\frac{1}{3}(y-2)^3\right)\Bigg|_2^3\\ &= 4/3.\end{aligned}$$

The important thing to notice is that by integrating with respect to y instead of x, we only had to do one integral and did not need to find the point at which to switch from one integration to another.

This calculus–based technique of finding area can be useful even with shapes that we normally think of as "easy." Example 6.1.5 computes the area of a triangle. While the formula "$\frac{1}{2}\times$ base $\times$ height" is well known, in arbitrary triangles it can be nontrivial to compute the height. Calculus makes the problem simple.

Example 6.1.5 Finding the area of a triangle

Compute the area of the regions bounded by the lines $y=3-x$, $y=x+3$ and $y=5x-15$, as shown in Figure 6.7.

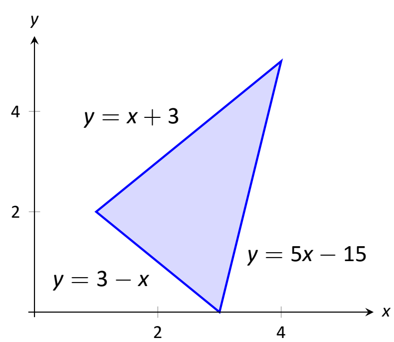


Figure 6.7: Graphing a triangular region in Example 6.1.5.

Solution Recognize that there are two "bottom" functions to this region, causing us to use two definite integrals.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Area} &= \int_1^3 \big((x+3)-(3-x)\big)\,dx+\int_3^4\big((x+3)-(5x-15)\big)\,dx\\ &= 8+4\\ &= 12.\end{aligned}$$

We can also approach this by converting each function into a function of y. This also requires 2 integrals, so there isn't really any advantage to doing so. We do it here for demonstration purposes.

Notes:

The "top" function is always $x = \frac{y}{5} + 3$ while there are two "bottom" functions: $x = 3 - y$ and $x = y - 3$. Being mindful of the proper integration bounds, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total Area} &= \int_0^2 \left(\left(\frac{y}{5}+3\right) - (3-y)\right)\,dy + \int_2^5 \left(\left(\frac{y}{5}+3\right) - (y-3)\right)\,dy\\ &= \frac{12}{5} + \frac{48}{5}\\ &= 12.\end{aligned}$$

Of course, the final answer is the same (and we see that integrating with respect to x was probably easier, since it avoided fractions).

In the next section we apply Key Idea 11 to finding the volumes of certain solids.

Notes:

Exercises 6.1 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

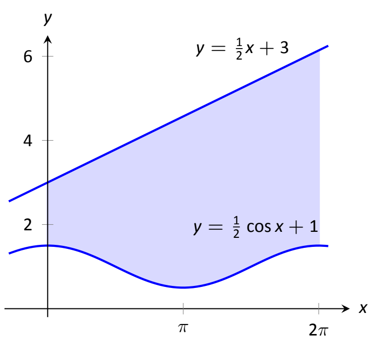
1. T/F: The area between curves is always positive.

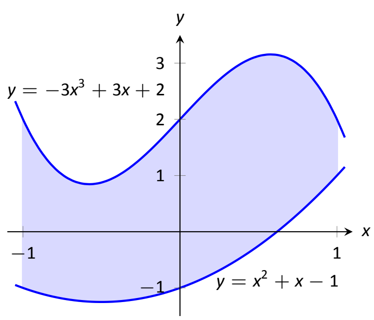
2. T/F: Calculus can be used to find the area of basic geometric shapes.

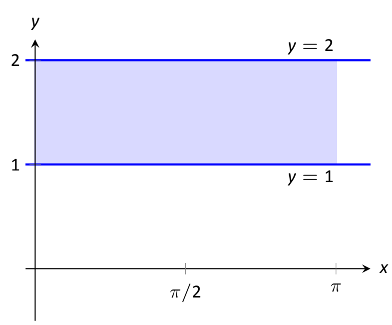
3. In your own words, describe how to find the total area enclosed by $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$.

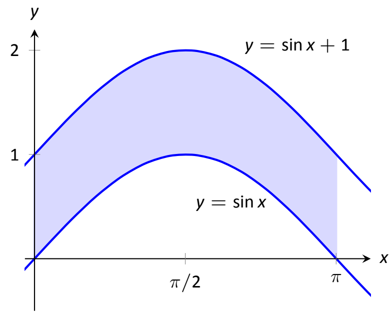
Problems

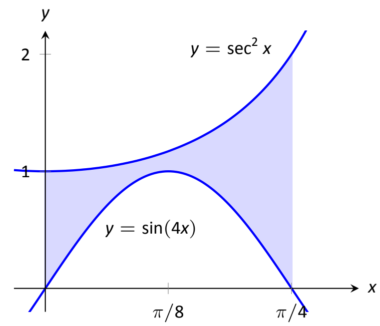
In Exercises 4 – 10, find the area of the shaded region in the given graph.

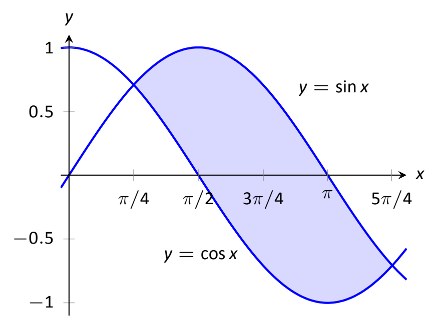
4.


5.


6.


7.


8.


9.


In Exercises 10 – 15, find the total area enclosed by the functions *f* and *g*.

10. $f(x) = 2x^2 + 5x - 3$, $g(x) = x^2 + 4x - 1$

11. $f(x) = x^2 - 3x + 2$, $g(x) = -3x + 3$

12. $f(x) = \sin x$, $g(x) = 2x/\pi$

13. $f(x) = x^3 - 4x^2 + x - 1$, $g(x) = -x^2 + 2x - 4$

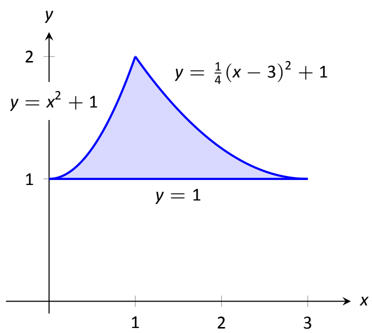
14. $f(x) = x$, $g(x) = \sqrt{x}$

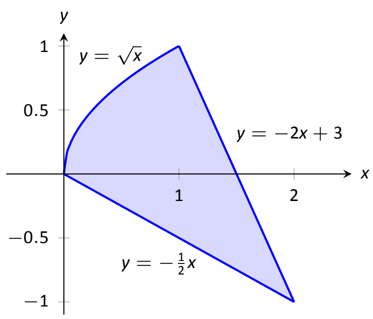
15. $f(x) = -x^3 + 5x^2 + 2x + 1$, $g(x) = 3x^2 + x + 3$

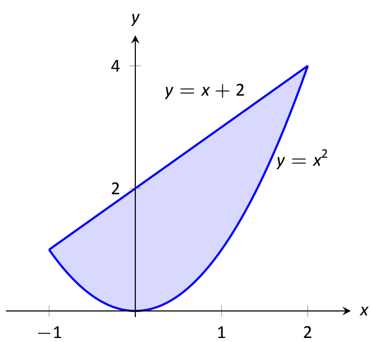
16. The functions $f(x) = \cos(2x)$ and $g(x) = \sin x$ intersect infinitely many times, forming an infinite number of repeated, enclosed regions. Find the areas of these regions.

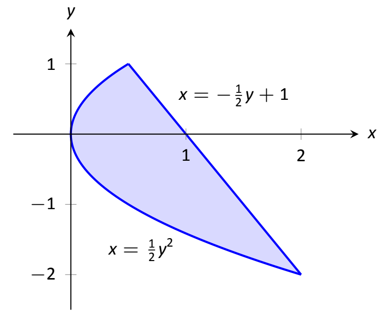
In Exercises 17 – 21, find the area of the enclosed region in two ways:

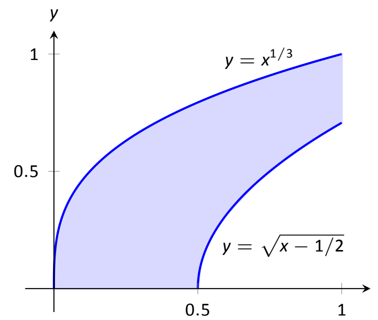
1. **by treating the boundaries as functions of x, and**
2. **by treating the boundaries as functions of y.**

17. 

18. 

19. 

20. 

21. 

In Exercises 22 – 25, find the area triangle formed by the given three points.

22. $(1, 1)$, $(2, 3)$, and $(3, 3)$

23. $(-1, 1)$, $(1, 3)$, and $(2, -1)$

24. $(1, 1)$, $(3, 3)$, and $(3, 3)$

25. $(0, 0)$, $(2, 5)$, and $(5, 2)$

6.2 Volume by Cross-Sectional Area; Disk and Washer Methods

The volume of a general right cylinder, as shown in Figure 6.8, is

$$\text{Area of the base} \times \text{height}.$$

We can use this fact as the building block in finding volumes of a variety of shapes.

Given an arbitrary solid, we can *approximate* its volume by cutting it into n thin slices. When the slices are thin, each slice can be approximated well by a general right cylinder. Thus the volume of each slice is approximately its cross-sectional area $\times$ thickness.

By orienting a solid along the x-axis, we can let $A(x_i)$ represent the cross-sectional area of the i^{th} slice, and let Δx_i represent the thickness of this slice (the thickness is a small change in x). The total volume of the solid is approximately:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Volume} &\approx \sum_{i=1}^{n}\Big[\text{Area} \times \text{thickness}\Big]\\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} A(x_i)\Delta x_i.\end{aligned}$$

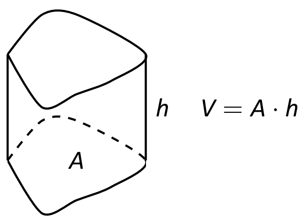


Figure 6.8: The volume of a general right cylinder

Recognize that this is a Riemann Sum. By taking a limit (as the thickness of the slices goes to 0) we can find the volume exactly.

$$\text{Volume} = \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} A(x_i)\Delta x$$

with $\Delta x = \frac{b-a}{n}$ and $x_i = a + i\Delta x$. We recognize this as a definite integral.

Theorem 45 Volume By Cross-Sectional Area
The volume V of a solid, oriented along the x-axis with cross-sectional area $A(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$, is

$$V = \int_a^b A(x)\,dx.$$

Notes:

Example 6.2.1 Finding the volume of a solid

Find the volume of a pyramid with a square base of side length 10 in and a height of 5 in.

Solution There are many ways to "orient" the pyramid along the x-axis; Figure 6.9 gives one such way, with the pointed top of the pyramid at the origin and the x-axis going through the center of the base.

Each cross section of the pyramid is a square. To determine its area $A(x)$, we need to determine the side lengths of the square.

When $x=5$, the square has side length 10; when $x=0$, the square has side length 0. Since the edges of the pyramid are lines, it is easy to figure that each cross-sectional square has side length $2x$, giving $A(x)=(2x)^2=4x^2$.

If one were to cut a slice out of the pyramid at $x=3$, as shown in Figure 6.10, one would have a shape with square bottom and top with sloped sides. If the slice were thin, both the bottom and top squares would have sides lengths of about 6, and thus the cross–sectional area of the bottom and top would be about 36in^2. Letting Δx_i represent the thickness of the slice, the volume of this slice would then be about $36\Delta x_i$in^3.

Cutting the pyramid into n slices divides the total volume into n equally–spaced smaller pieces, each with volume $(2x_i)^2\Delta x$, where x_i is the approximate location of the slice along the x-axis and Δx represents the thickness of each slice. One can approximate total volume of the pyramid by summing up the volumes of these slices:

$$\text{Volume } \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n}(2x_i)^2\Delta x.$$

Taking the limit as $n\to\infty$ gives the actual volume of the pyramid; recognizing this sum as a Riemann Sum allows us to find the exact answer using a definite integral, matching the definite integral given by Theorem 45.

We have

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n}(2x_i)^2\Delta x \\ &= \int_0^5 4x^2\,dx \\ &= \frac{4}{3}x^3\Big|_0^5 \\ &= \frac{500}{3}\ \text{in}^3. \end{aligned}$$

We can check our work by consulting the general equation for the volume of a pyramid (see the back cover under "Volume of A General Cone"):

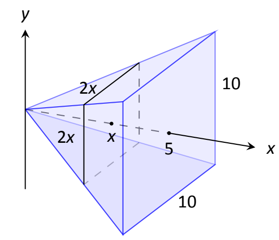


Figure 6.9: Orienting a pyramid along the x-axis in Example 6.2.1.

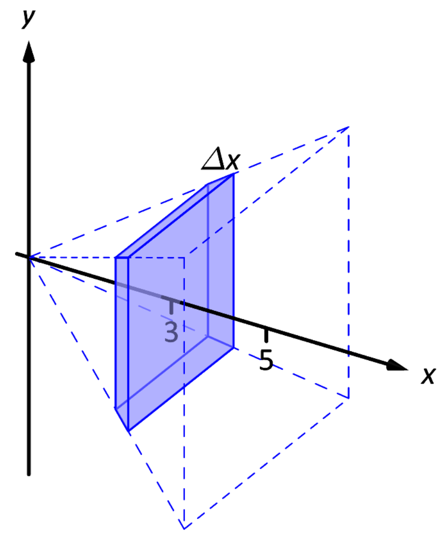


Figure 6.10: Cutting a slice in the pyramid in Example 6.2.1 at $x=3$.

Notes:

$$\frac{1}{3} \times \text{area of base} \times \text{height}.$$

Certainly, using this formula from geometry is faster than our new method, but the calculus–based method can be applied to much more than just cones.

An important special case of Theorem 45 is when the solid is a **solid of revolution**, that is, when the solid is formed by rotating a shape around an axis.

Start with a function $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$. Revolving this curve about a horizontal axis encloses a three-dimensional solid whose cross sections are disks (thin circles), perpendicular to the axis of rotation. Let $R(x)$ represent the radius of the cross-sectional disk at x; the area of this disk is $\pi[R(x)]^2$. Applying Theorem 45 gives the Disk Method.

Key Idea 12 The Disk Method
Let a solid be enclosed by revolving the curve $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$ around a horizontal axis, and let $R(x)$ be the radius of the cross-sectional disk at x. The volume of the solid is

$$V = \pi \int_a^b [R(x)]^2 \, dx.$$

Watch the video:
Longer Version — Volumes using Disks/Washers at
`https://youtu.be/nZqOKc067Z8`

Notes:

Example 6.2.2 **Finding volume using the Disk Method**
Find the volume of the solid formed by revolving about the x-axis the region bounded by the curves $y = 1/x$, $x = 1$, $x = 2$ and the x-axis.

SOLUTION A sketch can help us understand this problem. In Figure 6.11(a) we have sketched the region we will be rotating. In Figure 6.11(b), the curve $y = 1/x$ is sketched along with the sample slice, a disk, at x with radius $R(x) = 1/x$. In Figure 6.11(c) the whole solid is pictured, along with the sample slice.

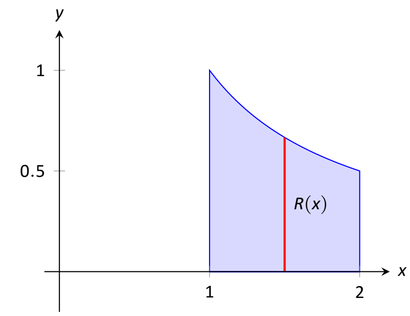
The volume of the sample slice shown in part (b) of the figure is approximately $\pi R(x_i)^2 \Delta x$, where $R(x_i)$ is the radius of the disk shown and Δx is the thickness of that slice. The radius $R(x_i)$ is the distance from the x-axis to the curve, hence $R(x_i) = 1/x_i$.

Slicing the solid into n equally–spaced slices, we can approximate the total volume by adding up the approximate volume of each slice:

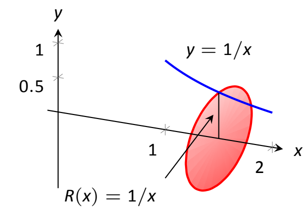
$$\text{Approximate volume} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \pi \left(\frac{1}{x_i}\right)^2 \Delta x.$$

Taking the limit of the above sum as $n \to \infty$ gives the actual volume; recognizing this sum as a Riemann sum allows us to evaluate the limit with a definite integral, which matches the formula given in Key Idea 12:

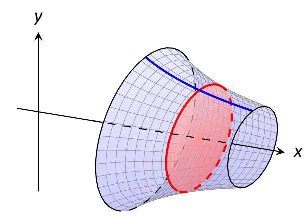
$$\begin{aligned} V &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} \pi \left(\frac{1}{x_i}\right)^2 \Delta x \\ &= \pi \int_1^2 \left(\frac{1}{x}\right)^2 dx \\ &= \pi \int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2}\, dx \\ &= \pi \left[-\frac{1}{x}\right]\Big|_1^2 \\ &= \pi \left[-\frac{1}{2} - (-1)\right] \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2}\ \text{units}^3. \end{aligned}$$



(a)



(b)



(c)

Figure 6.11: Sketching a solid in Example 6.2.2.

Notes:

While Key Idea 12 is given in terms of functions of x, the principle involved can be applied to functions of y when the axis of rotation is vertical, not horizontal. We demonstrate this in the next example.

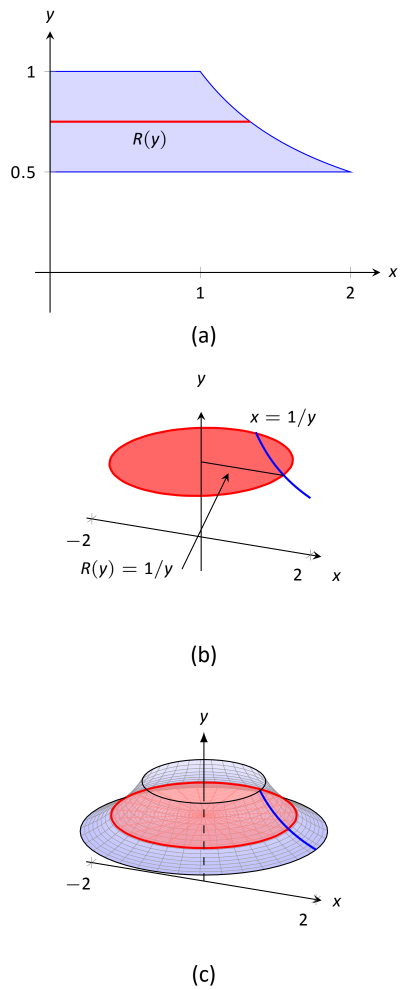


Figure 6.12: Sketching a solid in Example 6.2.3.

Example 6.2.3 Finding volume using the Disk Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by revolving about the y-axis the region bounded by the curves $y = 1/x$, $y = 1$, $y = 0.5$, and the y-axis.

Solution Since the axis of rotation is vertical, our perpendicular cross sections have thickness Δy and radius $x = R(y)$. We need to convert the function into a function of y. Since $y = 1/x$ defines the curve, we rewrite it as $x = 1/y$.

Thus we are rotating about the y-axis the region bounded by the curves $x = 1/y$, $y = 1/2$, $y = 1$, and the y-axis to form a solid. The region of revolution is sketched in Figure 6.12(a), the curve and sample sample disk are sketched in Figure 6.12(b), and a full sketch of the solid is in Figure 6.12(b). We integrate to find the volume:

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_{1/2}^{1} \frac{1}{y^2}\, dy \\ &= -\frac{\pi}{y}\Big|_{1/2}^{1} \\ &= \pi \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

We can also compute the volume of solids of revolution that have a hole in the center. The general principle is simple: compute the volume of the solid irrespective of the hole, then subtract the volume of the hole. If the outside radius of the solid is $R(x)$ and the inside radius (defining the hole) is $r(x)$, then the volume is

$$V = \pi \int_a^b [R(x)]^2\, dx - \pi \int_a^b [r(x)]^2\, dx = \pi \int_a^b \left([R(x)]^2 - [r(x)]^2\right)\, dx.$$

One can generate a solid of revolution with a hole in the middle by revolving a region about an axis. Consider Figure 6.13(a), where a region is sketched along with a dashed, horizontal axis of rotation. By rotating the region about the axis, a solid is formed. Each cross section of this solid will be a washer (a disk with a hole in the center) as sketched in Figure 6.13(b). The outside of the washer has radius $R(x)$, whereas the inside has radius $r(x)$. The entire solid is sketched in Figure 6.13(c). This leads us to the Washer Method.

Notes:

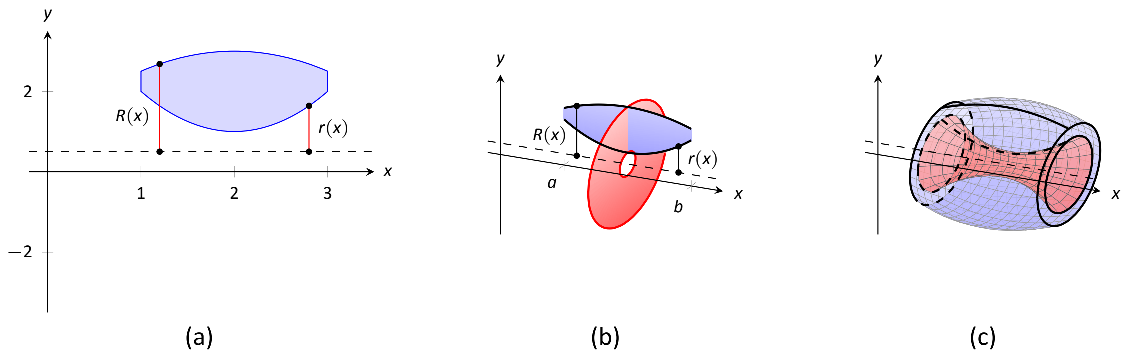


Figure 6.13: Establishing the Washer Method.

Key Idea 13 The Washer Method

Let a region bounded by $y = f(x)$, $y = g(x)$, $x = a$ and $x = b$ be rotated about a horizontal axis that does not intersect the region, forming a solid. Each cross section at x will be a washer with outside radius $R(x)$ and inside radius $r(x)$. The volume of the solid is

$$V = \pi \int_a^b \left([R(x)]^2 - [r(x)]^2 \right) dx.$$

Even though we introduced it first, the Disk Method is just a special case of the Washer Method with an inside radius of $r(x) = 0$.

Example 6.2.4 Finding volume with the Washer Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$ and $y = 2x - 1$ about the x-axis.

Solution A sketch of the region will help, as given in Figure 6.14(a). Rotating about the x-axis will produce cross sections in the shape of washers, as shown in Figure 6.14(b); the complete solid is shown in part (c). The outside radius of this washer is $R(x) = 2x + 1$; the inside radius is $r(x) = x^2 - 2x + 2$. As the region is bounded from $x = 1$ to $x = 3$, we integrate as follows to compute

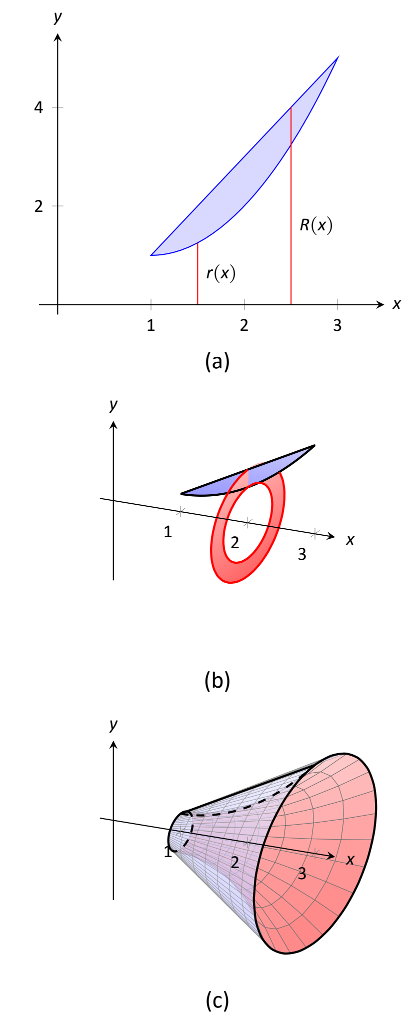


Figure 6.14: Sketching the region, a sample slice, and solid in Example 6.2.4.

Notes:

the volume.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_1^3 \Big((2x-1)^2 - (x^2-2x+2)^2\Big)\,dx \\ &= \pi \int_1^3 \big(-x^4+4x^3-4x^2+4x-3\big)\,dx \\ &= \pi \Big[-\frac{1}{5}x^5 + x^4 - \frac{4}{3}x^3 + 2x^2 - 3x\Big]\Big|_1^3 \\ &= \frac{104}{15}\pi \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

When rotating about a vertical axis, the outside and inside radius functions must be functions of y.

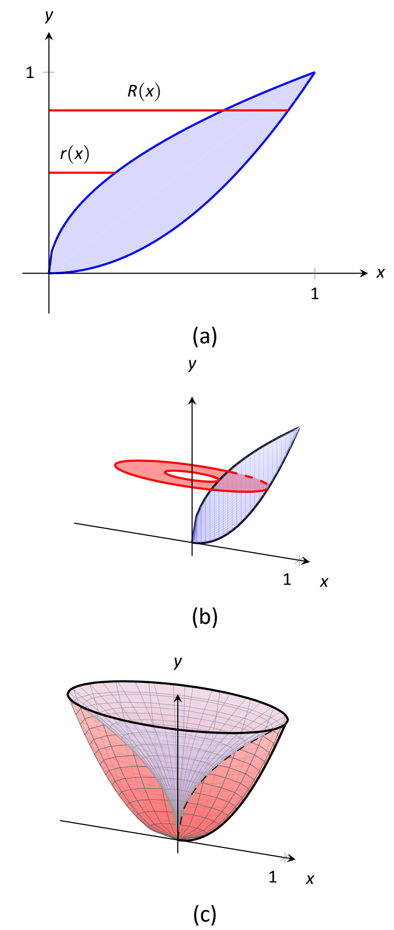


Figure 6.15: Sketching the region, a sample slice, and the solid in Example 6.2.5.

Example 6.2.5 Finding volume with the Washer Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $x = y^2$ about the y-axis.

Solution In Figure 6.15 we have a sketch of the region (a), a sample slice (b), and the solid (c). Rotating about the y-axis will produce cross sections in the shape of washers, as shown in Figure (not yet created); the complete solid is shown in part (c). Since the axis of rotation is vertical, each radius is a function of y. The outside radius of this washer is $R(y) = \sqrt{y}$ and the inside radius is $r(y) = y^2$. As the region is bounded from $y = 0$ to $y = 1$, we integrate as follows to compute the volume.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_0^1 \big((\sqrt{y})^2 - (y^2)^2\big)\ dy \\ &= \pi \int_0^1 y - y^4\,dy \\ &= \pi \left[\frac{1}{2}y^2 - \frac{1}{5}y^5\right]\Big|_0^1 \\ &= \frac{3\pi}{10}\text{units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

Notes:

Example 6.2.6 Finding volume with the Washer Method
Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the triangular region with vertices at $(1,1)$, $(2,1)$ and $(2,3)$ about the y-axis.

Solution The triangular region is sketched in Figure 6.16(a); the sample slice is sketched in (b) and the full solid is drawn in (c). They help us establish the outside and inside radii. Since the axis of rotation is vertical, each radius is a function of y.

The outside radius $R(y)$ is formed by the line connecting $(2,1)$ and $(2,3)$; it is a constant function, as regardless of the y-value the distance from the line to the axis of rotation is 2. Thus $R(y)=2$.

The inside radius is formed by the line connecting $(1,1)$ and $(2,3)$. The equation of this line is $y=2x-1$, but we need to refer to it as a function of y. Solving for x gives $r(y)=\frac{1}{2}(y+1)$.

We integrate over the y-bounds of $y=1$ to $y=3$. Thus the volume is

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi\int_1^3 \left(2^2-\left(\frac{1}{2}(y+1)\right)^2\right)\,dy \\ &= \pi\int_1^3 \left(-\frac{1}{4}y^2-\frac{1}{2}y+\frac{15}{4}\right)\,dy \\ &= \pi\left[-\frac{1}{12}y^3-\frac{1}{4}y^2+\frac{15}{4}y\right]\Bigg|_1^3 \\ &= \frac{10}{3}\pi \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

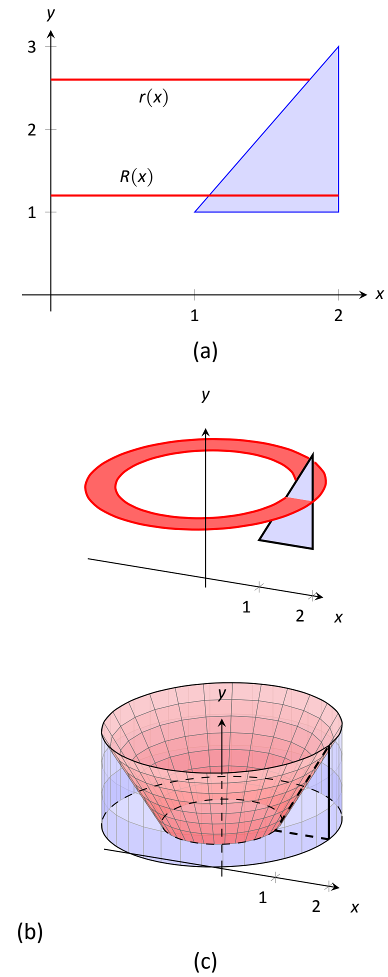


Figure 6.16: Sketching the region, a sample slice, and the solid in Example 6.2.6.

In the previous examples, the axis of rotation has either been the x or y axis. We will now consider a problem where the axis of rotation is some other horizontal line.

Example 6.2.7 Finding volume with the Washer Method
Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y=\sqrt{x}$ and $y=x$ about $y=2$.

Solution Figure 6.17 shows the region we are rotating (a), a sample slice (b) and the full solid (c). The axis of rotation is horizontal so the radii must be functions of x. The radii is the distance from the axis of rotation to the curve so the outside radius of this washer is $R(x)=2-x$ and the inside radius is

Notes:

$r(x) = 2 - \sqrt{x}$. The region is bounded from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, thus the volume is

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \pi \int_0^1 \left((2-x)^2 - (2-\sqrt{x})^2\right)\,dx \\ &= \pi \int_0^1 (4 - 4x + x^2) - (4 - 4\sqrt{x} + x)\,dx \\ &= \pi \int_0^1 x^2 - 5x + 4\sqrt{x}\,dx \\ &= \pi \left[\frac{1}{3}x^3 - \frac{5}{2}x^2 + \frac{8}{3}x^{3/2}\right]\Bigg|_0^1 \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2}\text{units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

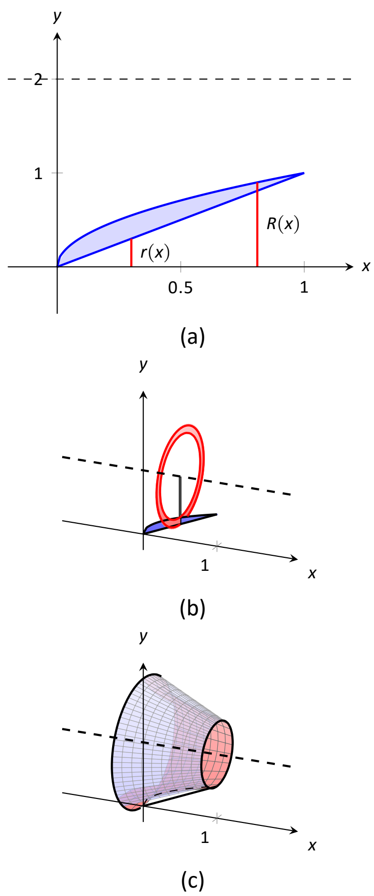


Figure 6.17: Sketching the solid in Example 6.2.7.

This section introduced a new application of the definite integral. Our default view of the definite integral is that it gives "the area under the curve." However, we can establish definite integrals that represent other quantities; in this section, we computed volume.

The ultimate goal of this section is not to compute volumes of solids. That can be useful, but what is more useful is the understanding of this basic principle of integral calculus, outlined in Key Idea 11: to find the exact value of some quantity,

- we start with an approximation (in this section, slice the solid and approximate the volume of each slice),
- then make the approximation better by refining our original approximation (i.e., use more slices),
- then use limits to establish a definite integral which gives the exact value.

We practice this principle in the next section where we find volumes by slicing solids in a different way.

Notes:

Exercises 6.2 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

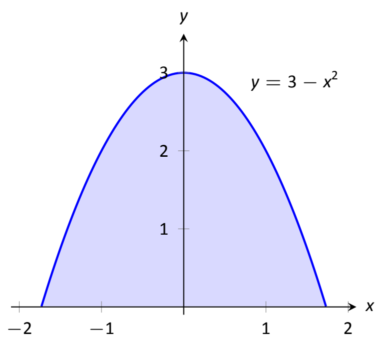
1. T/F: A solid of revolution is formed by revolving a shape around an axis.

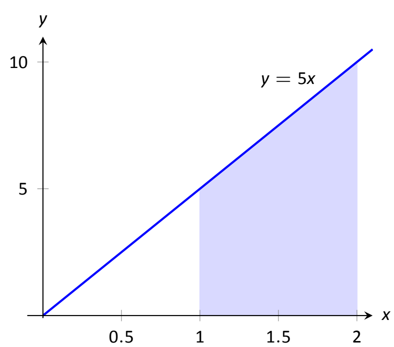
2. In your own words, explain how the Disk and Washer Methods are related.

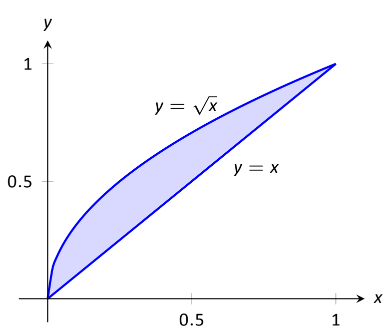
3. Explain the how the units of volume are found in the integral of Theorem 45: if $A(x)$ has units of in^2, how does $\int A(x)\,dx$ have units of in^3?

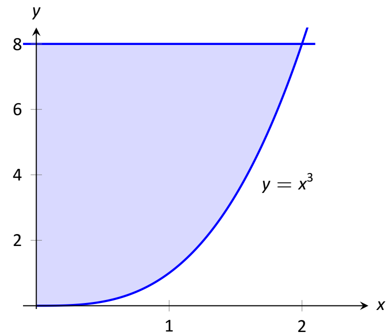
Problems

In Exercises 4 – 8, a region of the Cartesian plane is shaded. Use the Disk/Washer Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by revolving the region about the *x*-axis.

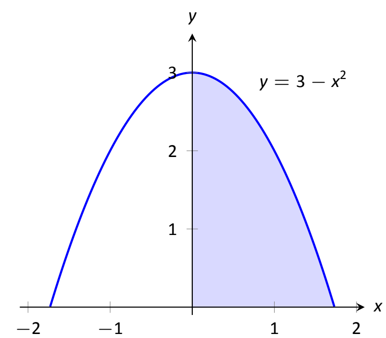
4. 

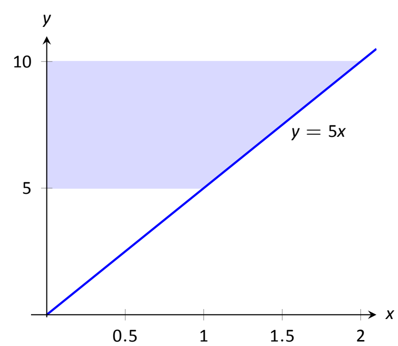
5. 

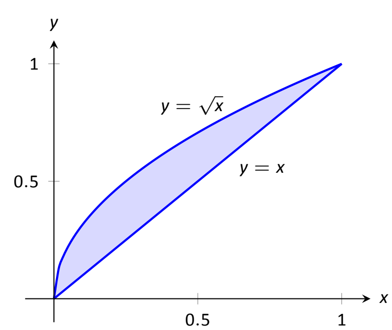
6. 

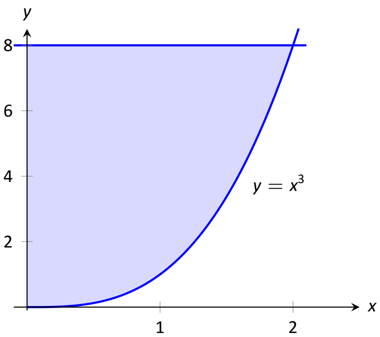
7. 

In Exercises 8 – 12, a region of the Cartesian plane is shaded. Use the Disk/Washer Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by revolving the region about the *y*-axis.

8. 

9. 

10. 

11. 

In Exercises 12 – 17, a region of the Cartesian plane is described. Use the Disk/Washer Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating the region about each of the given axes.

12. Region bounded by: $y = \sqrt{x}$, $y = 0$ and $x = 1$.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 1$
    (c) the y-axis
    (d) $x = 1$

13. Region bounded by: $y = 4 - x^2$ and $y = 0$.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 4$
    (c) $y = -1$
    (d) $x = 2$

14. The triangle with vertices $(1, 1)$, $(1, 2)$ and $(2, 1)$.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 2$
    (c) the y-axis
    (d) $x = 1$

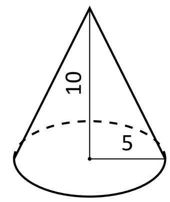
15. Region bounded by $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$ and $y = 2x - 1$.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 1$
    (c) $y = 5$

16. Region bounded by $y = 2x$, $y = x$ and $x = 2$.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 4$
    (c) the y-axis
    (d) $x = 2$

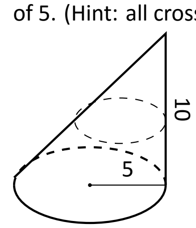
17. Region bounded by $y = \cos x$, $x = 0$, $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ and the x-axis.
Rotate about:
    (a) the x-axis
    (b) $y = 1$
    (c) $y = -1$

In Exercises 18 – 21, a solid is described. Orient the solid along the x-axis such that a cross-sectional area function $A(x)$ can be obtained, then apply Theorem 45 to find the volume of the solid.

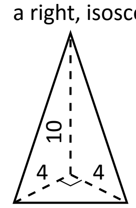
18. A right circular cone with height of 10 and base radius of 5.



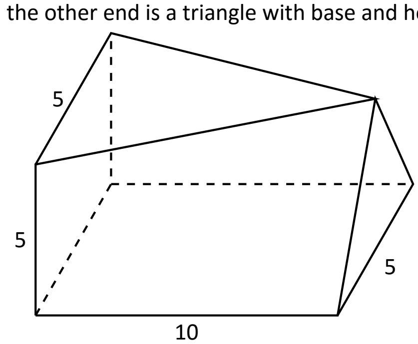
19. A skew right circular cone with height of 10 and base radius of 5. (Hint: all cross-sections are circles.)



20. A right triangular cone with height of 10 and whose base is a right, isosceles triangle with side length 4.



21. A solid with length 10 with a rectangular base and triangular top, wherein one end is a square with side length 5 and the other end is a triangle with base and height of 5.



6.3 The Shell Method

Often a given problem can be solved in more than one way. A particular method may be chosen out of convenience, personal preference, or perhaps necessity. Ultimately, it is good to have options.

The previous section introduced the Disk and Washer Methods, which computed the volume of solids of revolution by integrating the cross–sectional area of the solid. This section develops another method of computing volume, the **Shell Method.** Instead of slicing the solid perpendicular to the axis of rotation creating cross-sections, we now slice it parallel to the axis of rotation, creating "shells."

Consider Figure 6.18, where the region shown in (a) is rotated around the y-axis forming the solid shown in (c). A small slice of the region is drawn in (a), *parallel* to the axis of rotation. When the region is rotated, this thin slice forms a **cylindrical shell**, as pictured in part (b) of the figure. The previous section approximated a solid with lots of thin disks (or washers); we now approximate a solid with many thin cylindrical shells.

To compute the volume of one shell, first consider the paper label on a soup can with radius r and height h. What is the area of this label? A simple way of determining this is to cut the label and lay it out flat, forming a rectangle with height h and length $2\pi r$. Thus the area is $A = 2\pi rh$; see Figure 6.19(a).

Do a similar process with a cylindrical shell, with height h, thickness Δx, and approximate radius r. Cutting the shell and laying it flat forms a rectangular solid with length $2\pi r$, height h and depth Δx. Thus the volume is $V \approx 2\pi rh\Delta x$; see Figure 6.19(b). (We say "approximately" since our radius was an approximation.)

By breaking the solid into n cylindrical shells, we can approximate the volume of the solid as

$$V \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} 2\pi r_i h_i \Delta x_i,$$

where r_i, h_i and Δx_i are the radius, height and thickness of the i^{th} shell, respectively.

This is a Riemann Sum. Taking a limit as the thickness of the shells approaches 0 leads to a definite integral.

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{i=1}^{n} 2\pi r_i h_i \Delta x_i \\ &= 2\pi \int_a^b r(x)h(x)\,dx \end{aligned}$$

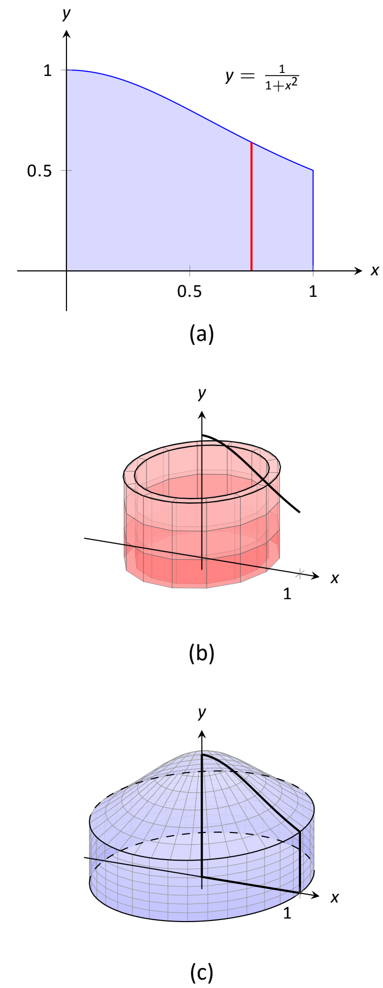


Figure 6.18: Introducing the Shell Method.

Notes:

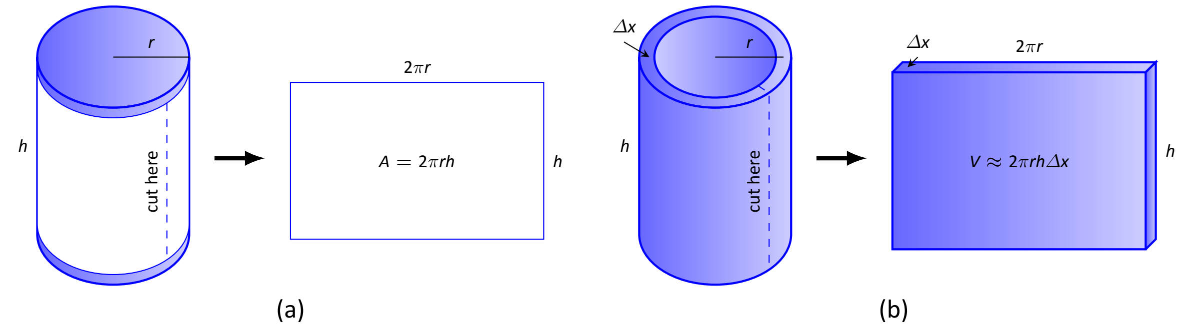


Figure 6.19: Determining the volume of a thin cylindrical shell.

Key Idea 14 The Shell Method

Let a solid be formed by revolving a region R, bounded by $x = a$ and $x = b$, around a vertical axis. Let $r(x)$ represent the distance from the axis of rotation to x (i.e., the radius of a sample shell) and let $h(x)$ represent the height of the solid at x (i.e., the height of the shell). The volume of the solid is

$$V = 2\pi \int_a^b r(x)h(x)\,dx.$$

Special Cases:

1. When the region R is bounded above by $y = f(x)$ and below by $y = g(x)$, then $h(x) = f(x) - g(x)$.

2. When the axis of rotation is the y-axis (i.e., $x = 0$) then $r(x) = x$.

Watch the video:
Volumes of Revolution — Cylindrical Shells at
`https://youtu.be/V6nTsxumjgU`

Let's practice using the Shell Method.

Notes:

Example 6.3.1 Finding volume using the Shell Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = 0$, $y = 1/(1+x^2)$, $x = 0$ and $x = 1$ about the y-axis.

Solution This is the region used to introduce the Shell Method in Figure 6.18, but is sketched again in Figure 6.20 for closer reference. A line is drawn in the region parallel to the axis of rotation representing a shell that will be carved out as the region is rotated about the y-axis.

The distance this line is from the axis of rotation determines $r(x)$; as the distance from x to the y-axis is x, we have $r(x) = x$. The height of this line determines $h(x)$; the top of the line is at $y = 1/(1+x^2)$, whereas the bottom of the line is at $y = 0$. Thus $h(x) = 1/(1+x^2) - 0 = 1/(1+x^2)$. The region is bounded from $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, so the volume is

$$V = 2\pi\int_0^1 \frac{x}{1+x^2}\,dx.$$

This requires substitution. Let $u = 1+x^2$, so $du = 2x\,dx$. We also change the bounds: $u(0) = 1$ and $u(1) = 2$. Thus we have:

$$\begin{aligned} &= \pi\int_1^2 \frac{1}{u}\,du \\ &= \pi \ln u\Big|_1^2 \\ &= \pi \ln 2 \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

Note: in order to find this volume using the Disk Method, two integrals would be needed to account for the regions above and below $y = 1/2$.

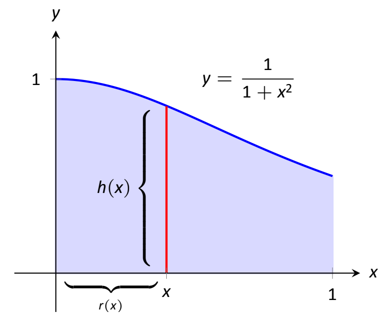


Figure 6.20: Graphing a region in Example 6.3.1.

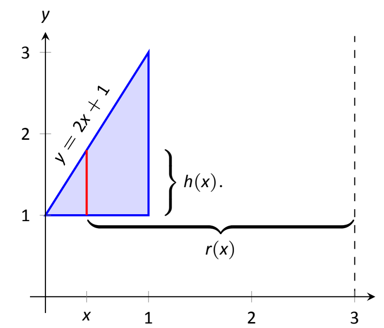
With the Shell Method, nothing special needs to be accounted for to compute the volume of a solid that has a hole in the middle, as demonstrated next.

Example 6.3.2 Finding volume using the Shell Method

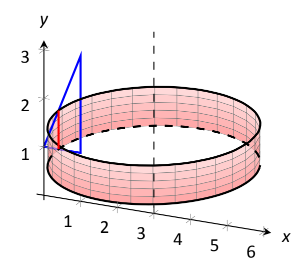
Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the triangular region determined by the points $(0, 1)$, $(1, 1)$ and $(1, 3)$ about the line $x = 3$.

Solution The region is sketched in Figure 6.21(a) along with a line within the region parallel to the axis of rotation. In part (b) of the figure, we see a sample shell, and in part (c) the whole solid is shown.

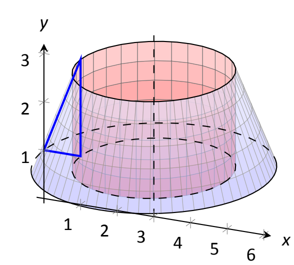
The height of the sample shell is the distance from $y = 1$ to $y = 2x+1$, the line that connects the points $(0, 1)$ and $(1, 3)$. Thus $h(x) = 2x+1-1 = 2x$. The



(a)



(b)



(c)

Figure 6.21: Graphing a region in Example 6.3.2.

Notes:

radius of the sample shell is the distance from x to $x = 3$; that is, it is $r(x) = 3-x$. The x-bounds of the region are $x = 0$ to $x = 1$, giving

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^1 (3-x)(2x)\,dx \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^1 \left(6x - 2x^2\right)dx \\ &= 2\pi \left(3x^2 - \frac{2}{3}x^3\right)\Big|_0^1 \\ &= \frac{14}{3}\pi \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

When revolving a region around a horizontal axis, we must consider the radius and height functions in terms of y, not x.

Example 6.3.3 Finding volume using the Shell Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region given in Example 6.3.2 about the x-axis.

Solution The region is sketched in Figure 6.22(a). In part (b) of the figure the sample shell is drawn, and the solid is sketched in (c). (Note that the triangular region looks "short and wide" here, whereas in the previous example the same region looked "tall and narrow." This is because the bounds on the graphs are different.)

The height of the sample shell is an x-distance, between $x = \frac{1}{2}y - \frac{1}{2}$ and $x = 1$. Thus $h(y) = 1 - (\frac{1}{2}y - \frac{1}{2}) = -\frac{1}{2}y + \frac{3}{2}$. The radius is the distance from y to the x-axis, so $r(y) = y$. The y bounds of the region are $y = 1$ and $y = 3$, leading to the integral

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_1^3 \left[y\left(-\frac{1}{2}y + \frac{3}{2}\right)\right] dy \\ &= 2\pi \int_1^3 \left[-\frac{1}{2}y^2 + \frac{3}{2}y\right] dy \\ &= 2\pi \left[-\frac{1}{6}y^3 + \frac{3}{4}y^2\right]\Big|_1^3 \\ &= 2\pi \left[\frac{9}{4} - \frac{7}{12}\right] \\ &= \frac{10}{3}\pi \text{ units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

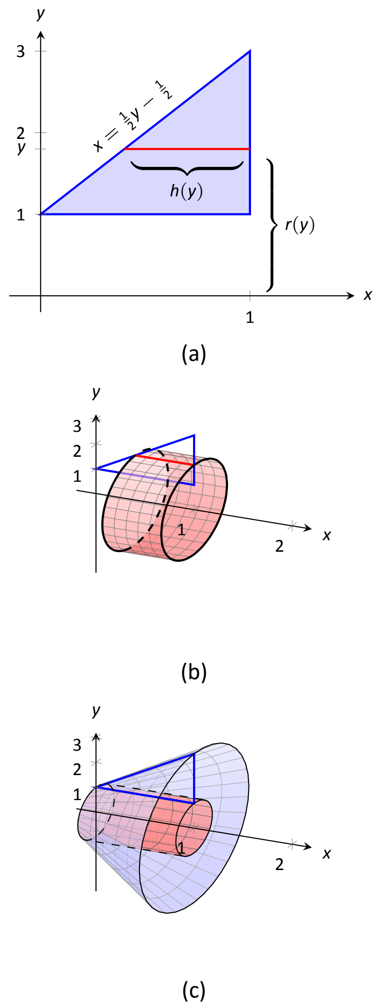


Figure 6.22: Graphing a region in Example 6.3.3.

Notes:

The following example shows how there are times when it does not matter which method you choose to evaluate the volume of a solid. In Example 6.2.7 we found the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = x$ about $y = 2$. We will now demonstrate how to find the volume with the shell method. Note that your answer should be the same whichever method you choose.

Example 6.3.4 Using the shell method instead of the washer method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = x$ about $y = 2$ using the Shell Method.

Solution Since our shells are parallel to the axis of rotation, we must consider the radius and height functions in terms of y. The radius of a sample shell will be $r(y) = 2 - y$ and the height of a sample shell will be $h(y) = y = y^2$. The y bounds for the region will be $y = 0$ to $y = 1$ resulting in the integral

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^1 (2-y)(y-y^2)\, dy \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^1 y^3 - 3y^2 + 2y\, dy \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2}\text{units}^3. \end{aligned}$$

At the beginning of this section it was stated that "it is good to have options." The next example finds the volume of a solid rather easily with the Shell Method, but using the Washer Method would be quite a chore.

Example 6.3.5 Finding volume using the Shell Method

Find the volume of the solid formed by rotating the region bounded by $y = 3x - x^2$ and $y = x$ about the y-axis.

Solution The region, a sample shell, and the resulting solid are shown in Figure 6.23. The radius of a sample shell is $r(x) = x$; the height of a sample shell is $h(x) = (3x - x^2) - x = 2x - x^2$. The x bounds on the region are $x = 0$

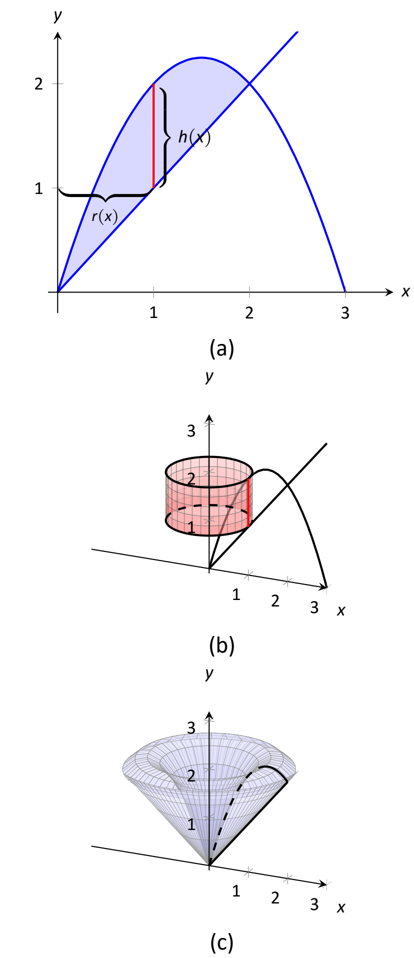


Figure 6.23: Graphing a region in Example 6.3.5.

Notes:

to $x = 2$ leading to the integral

$$\begin{aligned} V &= 2\pi \int_0^2 x(2x - x^2)\,dx \\ &= 2\pi \int_0^2 2x^2 - x^3\,dx \\ &= 2\pi \left[\frac{2}{3}x^3 - \frac{1}{4}x^4\right]\Bigg|_0^2 \\ &= \frac{4\pi}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Note that in order to use the Washer Method, we would need to solve $y = 3x - x^2$ for x, requiring us to complete the square. We must evaluate two integrals as we have two different sample slices. The volume can be computed as

$$\begin{aligned} V = 2\pi &\int_0^2 \left(y - \left(\frac{3}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} - y}\right)\right)^2\,dy \\ &+ 2\pi \int_2^{9/4} \left(\left(\frac{3}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} - y}\right) - \left(\frac{3}{2} - \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} - y}\right)\right)^2\,dy \\ = 2\pi &\int_0^2 \left(y - \frac{3}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{9}{4} - y}\right)^2\,dy + 2\pi \int_2^{9/4} \left(2\sqrt{\frac{9}{4} - y}\right)^2\,dy \end{aligned}$$

While this integral is not impossible to solve, using the Shell Method gave us a significantly easier way to compute the volume.

As in the previous section, the real goal of this section is not to be able to compute volumes of certain solids. Rather, it is to be able to solve a problem by first approximating, then using limits to refine the approximation to give the exact value. In this section, we approximate the volume of a solid by cutting it into thin cylindrical shells. By summing up the volumes of each shell, we get an approximation of the volume. By taking a limit as the number of equally spaced shells goes to infinity, our summation can be evaluated as a definite integral, giving the exact value.

Notes:

Exercises 6.3 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. T/F: A solid of revolution is formed by revolving a shape around an axis.

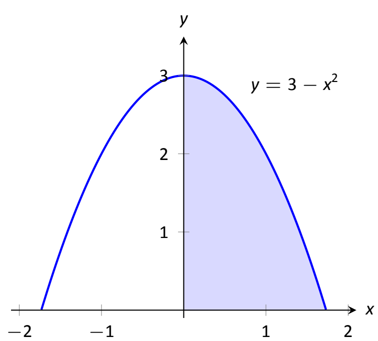
2. T/F: The Shell Method can only be used when the Washer Method fails.

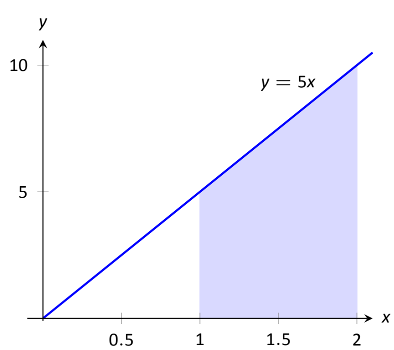
3. T/F: The Shell Method works by integrating cross–sectional areas of a solid.

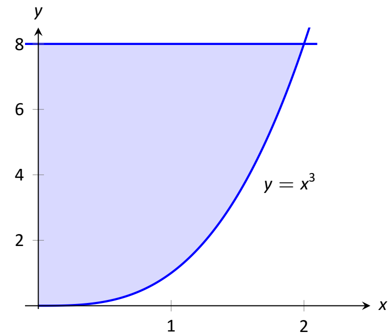
4. T/F: When finding the volume of a solid of revolution that was revolved around a vertical axis, the Shell Method integrates with respect to x.

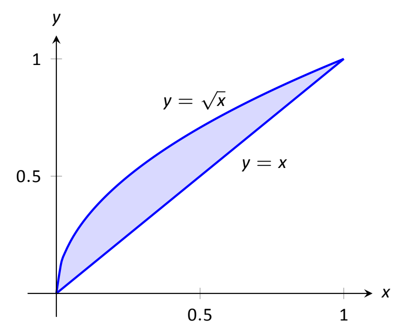
Problems

In Exercises 5 – 8, a region of the Cartesian plane is shaded. Use the Shell Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by revolving the region about the *y*-axis.

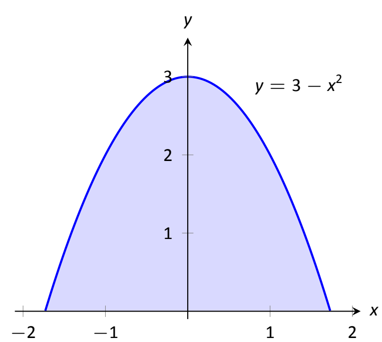
5. 

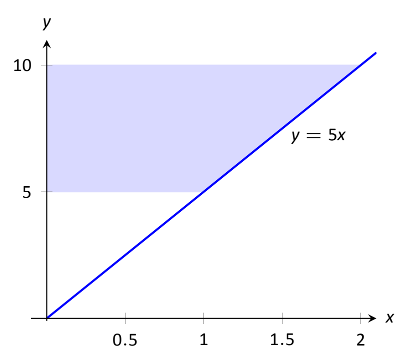
6. 

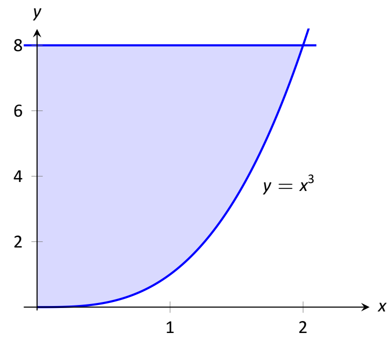
7. 

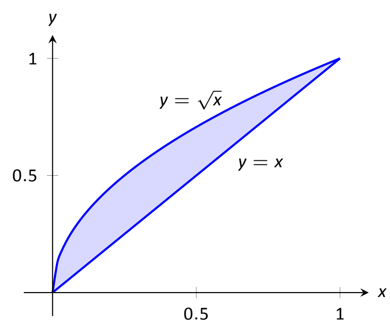
8. 

In Exercises 9 – 12, a region of the Cartesian plane is shaded. Use the Shell Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by revolving the region about the *x*-axis.

9. 

10. 

11. 

12. 

In Exercises 13 – 18, a region of the Cartesian plane is described. Use the Shell Method to find the volume of the solid of revolution formed by rotating the region about each of the given axes.

13. Region bounded by: $y = \sqrt{x}$, $y = 0$ and $x = 1$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) $x = 1$
(c) the x-axis
(d) $y = 1$

14. Region bounded by: $y = 4 - x^2$ and $y = 0$.
Rotate about:
(a) $x = 2$
(b) $x = -2$
(c) the x-axis
(d) $y = 4$

15. The triangle with vertices $(1, 1)$, $(1, 2)$ and $(2, 1)$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) $x = 1$
(c) the x-axis
(d) $y = 2$

16. Region bounded by $y = x^2 - 2x + 2$ and $y = 2x - 1$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) $x = 1$
(c) $x = -1$

17. Region bounded by $y = 2x$, $y = x$ and $x = 2$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) $x = 2$
(c) the x-axis
(d) $y = 4$

In Exercises 18 – 24, use your choice of the Washer or Shell Method to find the indicated volume.

18. Region bounded by $y = x^4$, $y = 0$, and $x = 1$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) the x-axis

19. Region bounded by $y = x^3 + 1$, $x = 0$, and $y = 2$.
Rotate about:
(a) the y-axis
(b) $y = 2$

20. Region bounded by $y = 4x^2$ and $4x + y = 8$.
Rotate about
(a) the x-axis
(b) $x = 1$
(c) $y = 16$

6.4 Work

Work is the scientific term used to describe the action of a force which moves an object. When a constant force F is applied to move an object a distance d, the amount of work performed is $W = F \cdot d$.

The SI unit of force is the Newton, (kg·m/s^2), and the SI unit of distance is a meter (m). The fundamental unit of work is one Newton–meter, or a Joule (J). That is, applying a force of one Newton for one meter performs one Joule of work. In Imperial units (as used in the United States), force is measured in pounds (lb) and distance is measured in feet (ft), hence work is measured in ft–lb.

When force is constant, the measurement of work is straightforward. For instance, lifting a 200 lb object 5 ft performs $200 \cdot 5 = 1000$ ft–lb of work.

What if the force applied is variable? For instance, imagine a climber pulling a 200 ft rope up a vertical face. The rope becomes lighter as more is pulled in, requiring less force and hence the climber performs less work.

In general, let $F(x)$ be a force function on an interval $[a, b]$. We want to measure the amount of work done applying the force F from $x = a$ to $x = b$. We can approximate the amount of work being done by partitioning $[a, b]$ into subintervals $a = x_0 < x_1 < \cdots < x_n = b$ and assuming that F is constant on each subinterval. Let c_i be a value in the i^{th} subinterval $[x_i, x_{i+1}]$. Then the work done on this interval is approximately $W_i \approx F(c_i) \cdot (x_{i+1} - x_i) = F(c_i)\Delta x_i$, a constant force $\times$ the distance over which it is applied. The total work is

$$W = \sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} F(c_i)\Delta x_i.$$

This, of course, is a Riemann sum. Taking a limit as the subinterval lengths go to zero give an exact value of work which can be evaluated through a definite integral.

Key Idea 15 Work

Let $F(x)$ be a continuous function on $[a, b]$ describing the amount of force being applied to an object in the direction of travel from distance $x = a$ to distance $x = b$. The total work W done on $[a, b]$ is

$$W = \int_a^b F(x)\, dx.$$

Note: *Mass* and *weight* are closely related, yet different, concepts. The mass m of an object is a quantitative measure of that object's resistance to acceleration. The weight w of an object is a measurement of the force applied to the object by the acceleration of gravity g.

Since the two measurements are proportional, $w = m \cdot g$, they are often used interchangeably in everyday conversation. When computing work, one must be careful to note which is being referred to. When mass is given, it must be multiplied by the acceleration of gravity to reference the related force.

Notes:

Watch the video:
Finding Work using Calculus — The Cable/Rope Problem at
https://youtu.be/2pbInn9PkHQ

Example 6.4.1 Computing work performed: applying variable force

A 60 m climbing rope is hanging over the side of a tall cliff. How much work is performed in pulling the rope up to the top, where the rope has a mass of 66 g/m?

Solution We need to create a force function $F(x)$ on the interval $[0, 60]$. To do so, we must first decide what x is measuring: it is the length of the rope still hanging or is it the amount of rope pulled in? As long as we are consistent, either approach is fine. We adopt for this example the convention that x is the amount of rope pulled in. This seems to match intuition better; pulling up the first 10 meters of rope involves $x = 0$ to $x = 10$ instead of $x = 60$ to $x = 50$.

As x is the amount of rope pulled in, the amount of rope still hanging is $60-x$. This length of rope has a mass of 66 g/m, or 0.066 kg/m. The the mass of the rope still hanging is $0.066(60 - x)$ kg; multiplying this mass by the acceleration of gravity, 9.8 m/s^2, gives our variable force function

$$F(x) = (9.8)(0.066)(60 - x) = 0.6468(60 - x).$$

Thus the total work performed in pulling up the rope is

$$W = \int_0^{60} 0.6468(60 - x)\,dx = 1,164.24 \text{ J}.$$

By comparison, consider the work done in lifting the entire rope 60 meters. The rope weights $60\times0.066\times9.8 = 38.808$ N, so the work applying this force for 60 meters is $60 \times 38.808 = 2,328.48$ J. This is exactly twice the work calculated before (and we leave it to the reader to understand why.)

Example 6.4.2 Computing work performed: applying variable force

Consider again pulling a 60 m rope up a cliff face, where the rope has a mass of 66 g/m. At what point is exactly half the work performed?

Solution From Example 6.4.1 we know the total work performed is $1,164.24$ J. We want to find a height h such that the work in pulling the rope

Notes:

from a height of $x = 0$ to a height of $x = h$ is 582.12, half the total work. Thus we want to solve for h in the equation

$$\int_0^h 0.6468(60 - x)\,dx = 582.12.$$

We see that

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^h 0.6468(60 - x)\,dx &= 582.12\\
\left(38.808x - 0.3234x^2\right)\Big|_0^h &= 582.12\\
38.808h - 0.3234h^2 &= 582.12\\
-0.3234h^2 + 38.808h - 582.12 &= 0 \qquad \text{(Apply the Quadratic Formula)}\\
h &\approx 17.57 \text{ and } 102.43
\end{aligned}$$

As the rope is only 60m long, the only sensible answer is $h = 17.57$. Thus about half the work is done pulling up the first 17.57m the other half of the work is done pulling up the remaining 42.43m.

Note: In Example 6.4.2, we find that half of the work performed in pulling up a 60 m rope is done in the last 42.43 m. Why is it not coincidental that $60/\sqrt{2} = 42.43$?

Example 6.4.3 Computing work performed: applying variable force

A box of 100 lb of sand is being pulled up at a uniform rate a distance of 50 ft over 1 minute. The sand is leaking from the box at a rate of 1 lb/s. The box itself weighs 5 lb and is pulled by a rope weighing .2 lb/ft.

1. How much work is done lifting just the rope?
2. How much work is done lifting just the box and sand?
3. What is the total amount of work performed?

Solution

1. We start by forming the force function $F_r(x)$ for the rope (where the subscript denotes we are considering the rope). As in the previous example, let x denote the amount of rope, in feet, pulled in. (This is the same as saying x denotes the height of the box.) The weight of the rope with x feet pulled in is $F_r(x) = 0.2(50 - x) = 10 - 0.2x$. (Note that we do not have to include the acceleration of gravity here, for the *weight* of the rope per foot is given, not its *mass* per meter as before.) The work performed lifting the rope is

$$W_r = \int_0^{50} (10 - 0.2x)\,dx = 250 \text{ ft–lb}.$$

Notes:

2. The sand is leaving the box at a rate of 1 lb/s. As the vertical trip is to take one minute, we know that 60 lb will have left when the box reaches its final height of 50 ft. Again letting x represent the height of the box, we have two points on the line that describes the weight of the sand: when $x = 0$, the sand weight is 100 lb, producing the point $(0, 100)$; when $x = 50$, the sand in the box weighs 40 lb, producing the point $(50, 40)$. The slope of this line is $\frac{100-40}{0-50} = -1.2$, giving the equation of the weight of the sand at height x as $w(x) = -1.2x + 100$. The box itself weighs a constant 5 lb, so the total force function is $F_b(x) = -1.2x + 105$. Integrating from $x = 0$ to $x = 50$ gives the work performed in lifting box and sand:

$$W_b = \int_0^{50} (-1.2x + 105)\, dx = 3750 \text{ ft–lb}.$$

3. The total work is the sum of W_r and W_b: $250 + 3750 = 4000$ ft–lb. We can also arrive at this via integration:

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \int_0^{50} (F_r(x) + F_b(x))\, dx \\ &= \int_0^{50} (10 - 0.2x - 1.2x + 105)\, dx \\ &= \int_0^{50} (-1.4x + 115)\, dx \\ &= 4000 \text{ ft–lb}. \end{aligned}$$

Hooke's Law and Springs

Hooke's Law states that the force required to compress or stretch a spring x units from its natural length is proportional to x; that is, this force is $F(x) = kx$ for some constant k. For example, if a force of 1 N stretches a given spring 2 cm, then a force of 5 N will stretch the spring 10 cm. Converting the distances to meters, we have that stretching this spring 0.02 m requires a force of $F(0.02) = k(0.02) = 1$ N, hence $k = 1/0.02 = 50$ N/m.

Example 6.4.4 Computing work performed: stretching a spring

A force of 20 lb stretches a spring from a natural length of 7 inches to a length of 12 inches. How much work was performed in stretching the spring to this length?

Notes:

Solution In many ways, we are not at all concerned with the actual length of the spring, only with the amount of its change. Hence, we do not care that 20 lb of force stretches the spring to a length of 12 inches, but rather that a force of 20 lb stretches the spring by 5 in. This is illustrated in Figure 6.24; we only measure the change in the spring's length, not the overall length of the spring.

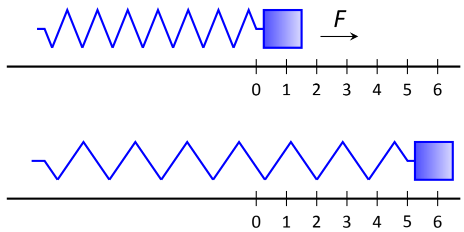


Figure 6.24: Illustrating the important aspects of stretching a spring in computing work in Example 6.4.4.

Converting the units of length to feet, we have

$$F(5/12) = (5/12)k = 20 \text{ lb}.$$

Thus $k = 48$ lb/ft and $F(x) = 48x$.

We compute the total work performed by integrating $F(x)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = 5/12$:

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \int_0^{5/12} 48x\,dx \\ &= 24x^2\Big|_0^{5/12} \\ &= 25/6 \text{ ft–lb}. \end{aligned}$$

Pumping Fluids

Another useful example of the application of integration to compute work comes in the pumping of fluids, often illustrated in the context of emptying a storage tank by pumping the fluid out the top. This situation is different than our previous examples for the forces involved are constant. After all, the force required to move one cubic foot of water (about 62.4 lb) is the same regardless of its location in the tank. What is variable is the distance that cubic foot of water has

Fluid	lb/ft^3	kg/m^3
Gasoline	45.93	737.22
Methanol	49.3	791.3
Fuel Oil	55.46	890.13
Water	62.4	1000
Milk, whole	63.6	1020
Milk, nonfat	65.4	1050
Concrete	150	2400
Iodine	307	4927
Mercury	844	13546

Figure 6.25: Weight and Mass densities

Notes:

to travel; water closer to the top travels less distance than water at the bottom, producing less work.

We demonstrate how to compute the total work done in pumping a fluid out of the top of a tank in the next two examples.

Example 6.4.5 Computing work performed: pumping fluids

A cylindrical storage tank with a radius of 10 ft and a height of 30 ft is filled with water, which weighs approximately 62.4 lb/ft^3. Compute the amount of work performed by pumping the water up to a point 5 feet above the top of the tank.

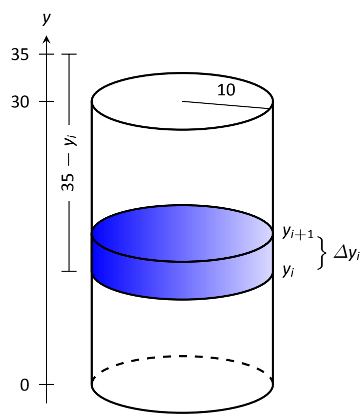


Figure 6.26: Illustrating a water tank in order to compute the work required to empty it in Example 6.4.5.

Solution We will refer often to Figure 6.26 which illustrates the salient aspects of this problem.

We start as we often do: we partition an interval into subintervals. We orient our tank vertically since this makes intuitive sense with the base of the tank at $y = 0$. Hence the top of the water is at $y = 30$, meaning we are interested in subdividing the y-interval $[0, 30]$ into n subintervals as

$$0 = y_0 < y_1 < \cdots < y_n = 30.$$

Consider the work W_i of pumping only the water residing in the i^{th} subinterval, illustrated in Figure 6.26. The force required to move this water is equal to its weight which we calculate as volume $\times$ density. The volume of water in this subinterval is $V_i = 10^2\pi\Delta y_i$; its density is 62.4 lb/ft^3. Thus the required force is $6240\pi\Delta y_i$ lb.

We approximate the distance the force is applied by using any y-value contained in the i^{th} subinterval; for simplicity, we arbitrarily use y_i for now (it will not matter later on). The water will be pumped to a point 5 feet above the top of the tank, that is, to the height of $y = 35$ ft. Thus the distance the water at height y_i travels is $35 - y_i$ ft.

In all, the approximate work W_i peformed in moving the water in the i^{th} subinterval to a point 5 feet above the tank is

$$W_i \approx 6240\pi\Delta y_i(35 - y_i).$$

To approximate the total work performed in pumping out all the water from the tank, we sum all the work W_i performed in pumping the water from each of the n subintervals of $[0, 30]$:

$$W \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} W_i = \sum_{i=1}^{n} 6240\pi\Delta y_i(35 - y_i).$$

Notes:

This is a Riemann sum. Taking the limit as the subinterval length goes to 0 gives

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \int_0^{30} 6240\pi(35-y)\,dy \\ &= 6240\pi\left(35y - \frac{y^2}{2}\right)\Big|_0^{30} \\ &= 11,762,123 \text{ ft–lb} \\ &\approx 1.176\times 10^7 \text{ ft–lb}. \end{aligned}$$

We can "streamline" the above process a bit as we may now recognize what the important features of the problem are. Figure 6.27 shows the tank from Example 6.4.5 without the i^{th} subinterval identified. Instead, we just draw a sample slice. This helps establish the height a small amount of water must travel along with the force required to move it (where the force is volume $\times$ density).

We demonstrate the concepts again in the next examples.

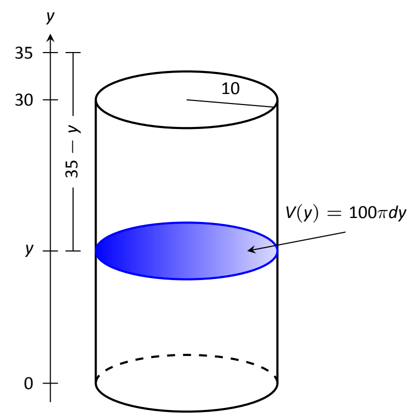


Figure 6.27: A simplified illustration for computing work.

Example 6.4.6 Computing work performed: pumping fluids

A conical water tank has its top at ground level and its base 10 feet below ground. The radius of the cone at ground level is 2 ft. It is filled with water weighing 62.4 lb/ft^3 and is to be emptied by pumping the water to a spigot 3 feet above ground level. Find the total amount of work performed in emptying the tank.

Solution The conical tank is sketched in Figure 6.28. We can orient the tank in a variety of ways; we could let $y = 0$ represent the base of the tank and $y = 10$ represent the top of the tank, but we choose to keep the convention of the wording given in the problem and let $y = 0$ represent ground level and hence $y = -10$ represents the bottom of the tank. The actual "height" of the water does not matter; rather, we are concerned with the distance the water travels.

The figure also sketches a cross–sectional circle. The radius of this circle is variable, depending on y. When $y = -10$, the circle has radius 0; when $y = 0$, the circle has radius 2. These two points, $(-10, 0)$ and $(0, 2)$, allow us to find the equation of the line that gives the radius of the cross–sectional circle, which is $r(y) = y/5+2$. Hence the volume of water at this height is $V(y) = \pi(y/5+2)^2dy$, where dy represents a very small height of the slice. The force required to move the water at height y is $F(y) = 62.4 \times V(y)$.

The distance the water at height y travels is given by $h(y) = 3 - y$. Thus the

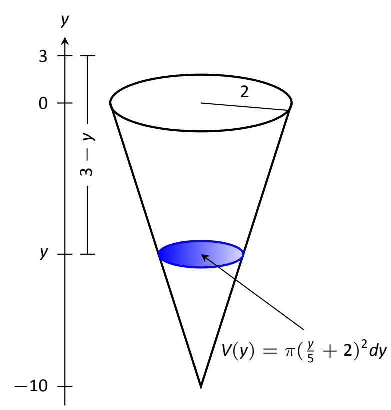


Figure 6.28: A graph of the conical water tank in Example 6.4.6.

Notes:

total work done in pumping the water from the tank is

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \int_{-10}^{0} 62.4\pi(y/5+2)^2(3-y)\,dy \\ &= 62.4\pi \int_{-10}^{0} \left(-\frac{1}{25}y^3 - \frac{17}{25}y^2 - \frac{8}{5}y + 12\right)\,dy \\ &= 62.2\pi \cdot \frac{220}{3} \text{ ft–lb.} \end{aligned}$$

Example 6.4.7 Computing work performed: pumping fluids

A rectangular swimming pool is 20 ft wide and has a 3 ft "shallow end" and a 6 ft "deep end." It is to have its water pumped out to a point 2 ft above the current top of the water. The cross–sectional dimensions of the water in the pool are given in Figure 6.29(a). (Note that the "20 ft wide" is into the picture; the pool is 25 ft long.) Compute the amount of work performed in draining the pool.

Solution For the purposes of this problem we choose to set $y = 0$ to represent the bottom of the pool, meaning the top of the water is at $y = 6$. Figure 6.29(b) shows the pool oriented with this y-axis, along with 2 sample slices as the pool must be split into two different regions.

The top region lies in the y-interval of $[3, 6]$, where the length of the sample slice is 25 ft as shown. As the pool is 20 ft wide, this sample slice of water has a volume of $V(y) = 20 \cdot 25 \cdot dy$. The water is to be pumped to a height of $y = 8$, so the height function is $h(y) = 8 - y$. The work done in pumping this top region of water is

$$W_t = 62.4 \int_{3}^{6} 500(8-y)\,dy = 327,600 \text{ ft–lb.}$$

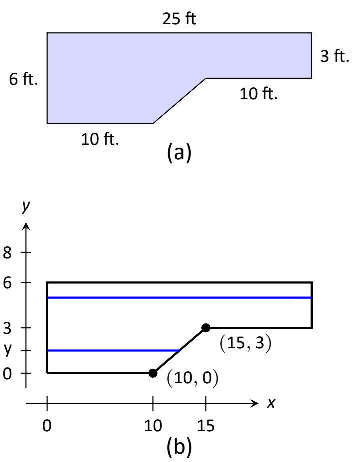


Figure 6.29: The cross–section of a swimming pool filled with water in Example 6.4.7 and two sample slices.

The bottom region lies in the y-interval of $[0, 3]$; we need to compute the length of the sample slice in this interval.

One end of the sample slice is at $x = 0$ and the other is along the line segment joining the points $(10, 0)$ and $(15, 3)$. The equation of this line is $y = 3(x-10)/5$; as we will be integrating with respect to y, we rewrite this equation as $x = 5y/3 + 10$. So the length of the sample slice is a difference of x-values: $x = 0$ and $x = 5y/3 + 10$, giving a length of $x = 5y/3 + 10$.

Again, as the pool is 20 ft wide, this slice of water has a volume of $V(y) = 20 \cdot (5y/3 + 10) \cdot dy$; the height function is the same as before at $h(y) = 8 - y$. The work performed in emptying this part of the pool is

$$W_b = 62.4 \int_{0}^{3} 20(5y/3+10)(8-y)\,dy = 299,520 \text{ ft–lb.}$$

Notes:

The total work in emptying the pool is

$$W = W_b + W_t = 327,600 + 299,520 = 627,120 \text{ ft–lb}.$$

Notice how the emptying of the bottom of the pool performs almost as much work as emptying the top. The top portion travels a shorter distance but has more water. In the end, this extra water produces more work.

Notes:

Exercises 6.4 (solutions)

Terms and Concepts

1. What are the typical units of work?

2. If a man has a mass of 80 kg on Earth, will his mass on the moon be bigger, smaller, or the same?

3. If a woman weighs 130 lb on Earth, will her weight on the moon be bigger, smaller, or the same?

Problems

4. A 100 ft rope, weighing 0.1 lb/ft, hangs over the edge of a tall building.

   (a) How much work is done pulling the entire rope to the top of the building?

   (b) How much rope is pulled in when half of the total work is done?

5. A 50 m rope, with a mass density of 0.2 kg/m, hangs over the edge of a tall building.

   (a) How much work is done pulling the entire rope to the top of the building?

   (b) How much work is done pulling in the first 20 m?

6. A rope of length ℓ ft hangs over the edge of tall cliff. (Assume the cliff is taller than the length of the rope.) The rope has a weight density of d lb/ft.

   (a) How much work is done pulling the entire rope to the top of the cliff?

   (b) What percentage of the total work is done pulling in the first half of the rope?

   (c) How much rope is pulled in when half of the total work is done?

7. A 20 m rope with mass density of 0.5 kg/m hangs over the edge of a 10 m building. How much work is done pulling the rope to the top?

8. A crane lifts a 2,000 lb load vertically 30 ft with a 1" cable weighing 1.68 lb/ft.

   (a) How much work is done lifting the cable alone?

   (b) How much work is done lifting the load alone?

   (c) Could one conclude that the work done lifting the cable is negligible compared to the work done lifting the load?

9. A 100 lb bag of sand is lifted uniformly 120 ft in one minute. Sand leaks from the bag at a rate of 1/4 lb/s. What is the total work done in lifting the bag?

10. A box weighing 2 lb lifts 10 lb of sand vertically 50 ft. A crack in the box allows the sand to leak out such that 9 lb of sand is in the box at the end of the trip. Assume the sand leaked out at a uniform rate. What is the total work done in lifting the box and sand?

11. A force of 1000 lb compresses a spring 3 in. How much work is performed in compressing the spring?

12. A force of 2 N stretches a spring 5 cm. How much work is performed in stretching the spring?

13. A force of 50 lb compresses a spring from a natural length of 18 in to 12 in. How much work is performed in compressing the spring?

14. A force of 20 lb stretches a spring from a natural length of 6 in to 8 in. How much work is performed in stretching the spring?

15. A force of 7 N stretches a spring from a natural length of 11 cm to 21 cm. How much work is performed in stretching the spring from a length of 16 cm to 21 cm?

16. A force of f N stretches a spring d m from its natural length. How much work is performed in stretching the spring?

17. A 20 lb weight is attached to a spring. The weight rests on the spring, compressing the spring from a natural length of 1 ft to 6 in.

    How much work is done in lifting the box 1.5 ft (i.e, the spring will be stretched 1 ft beyond its natural length)?

18. A 20 lb weight is attached to a spring. The weight rests on the spring, compressing the spring from a natural length of 1 ft to 6 in.

    How much work is done in lifting the box 6 in (i.e, bringing the spring back to its natural length)?

19. A 5 m tall cylindrical tank with radius of 2 m is filled with 3 m of gasoline, with a mass density of 737.22 kg/m^3. Compute the total work performed in pumping all the gasoline to the top of the tank.

20. A 6 ft cylindrical tank with a radius of 3 ft is filled with water, which has a weight density of 62.4 lb/ft^3. The water is to be pumped to a point 2 ft above the top of the tank.

    (a) How much work is performed in pumping all the water from the tank?

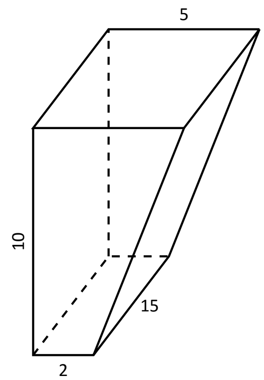
    (b) How much work is performed in pumping 3 ft of water from the tank?

    (c) At what point is 1/2 of the total work done?

21. A gasoline tanker is filled with gasoline with a weight density of 45.93 lb/ft^3. The dispensing valve at the base is jammed shut, forcing the operator to empty the tank via

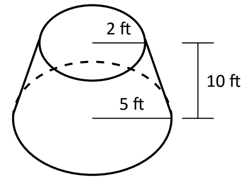
pumping the gas to a point 1 ft above the top of the tank. Assume the tank is a perfect cylinder, 20 ft long with a diameter of 7.5 ft. How much work is performed in pumping all the gasoline from the tank?

22. A fuel oil storage tank is 10 ft deep with trapezoidal sides, 5 ft at the top and 2 ft at the bottom, and is 15 ft wide (see diagram below). Given that fuel oil weighs 55.46 lb/ft^3, find the work performed in pumping all the oil from the tank to a point 3 ft above the top of the tank.

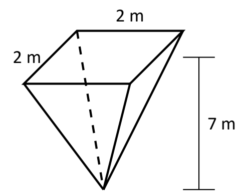


23. A conical water tank is 5 m deep with a top radius of 3 m. (This is similar to Example 6.4.6.) The tank is filled with pure water, with a mass density of 1000 kg/m^3.
    (a) Find the work performed in pumping all the water to the top of the tank.
    (b) Find the work performed in pumping the top 2.5 m of water to the top of the tank.
    (c) Find the work performed in pumping the top half of the water, by volume, to the top of the tank.

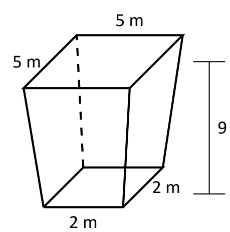
24. A water tank has the shape of a truncated cone, with dimensions given below, and is filled with water with a weight density of 62.4 lb/ft^3. Find the work performed in pumping all water to a point 1 ft above the top of the tank.



25. A water tank has the shape of an inverted pyramid, with dimensions given below, and is filled with water with a mass density of 1000 kg/m^3. Find the work performed in pumping all water to a point 5 m above the top of the tank.



26. A water tank has the shape of an truncated, inverted pyramid, with dimensions given below, and is filled with water with a mass density of 1000 kg/m^3. Find the work performed in pumping all water to a point 1 m above the top of the tank.

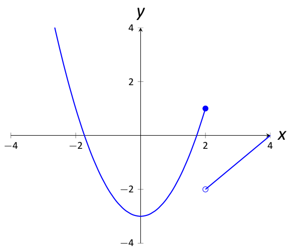


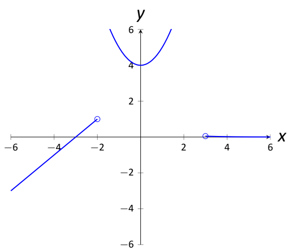
A: Solutions To Selected Problems

Chapter 1

Exercises 1.0

1. $(-\infty, \infty)$
3. $(-\infty, -1] \cup [7, \infty)$
5. $(-\infty, 2) \cup (2, \infty)$
7. $(-\infty, \infty)$
9. $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$

11. 

13. 

15. (a) 14
    (b) 11
    (c) $3a^2 - 2a + 6$
    (d) $3(x+h)^2 - 2(x+h) + 6$
    (e) $\dfrac{h(3h + 6x - 2)}{h}$

17. (a) -1
    (b) $\dfrac{1}{9}$
    (c) $\dfrac{1}{t+3}$
    (d) $\dfrac{1}{x+h}$
    (e) $\dfrac{\frac{1}{x+h} - \frac{1}{x}}{h} = -\dfrac{h}{hx(x+h)}$

Exercises 1.1

1. Answers will vary.
3. F
5. Answers will vary.
7. -5
9. 2
11. Limit does not exist.
13. 7
15. Limit does not exist.

17.

h	$\frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h}$
-0.1	9
-0.01	9
0.01	9
0.1	9

The limit seems to be exactly 9.

19.

h	$\frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h}$
-0.1	-0.114943
-0.01	-0.111483
0.01	-0.110742
0.1	-0.107527

The limit is approx. -0.11.

21.

h	$\frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h}$
-0.1	0.202027
-0.01	0.2002
0.01	0.1998
0.1	0.198026

The limit is approx. 0.2.

23.

h	$\frac{f(a+h)-f(a)}{h}$
-0.1	-0.0499583
-0.01	-0.00499996
0.01	0.00499996
0.1	0.0499583

The limit is approx. 0.

Exercises 1.2

1. ε should be given first, and the restriction $|x-a| < \delta$ implies $|f(x) - K| < \varepsilon$, not the other way around.
3. T
5. $\delta \leq 0.45$
7. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We wish to find $\delta > 0$ such that when $|x-5| < \delta$, $|f(x) - (-2)| < \varepsilon$.
Scratch-Work: Consider $|f(x) - (-2)| < \varepsilon$:
$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) + 2| &< \varepsilon \\ |(3-x) + 2| &< \varepsilon \\ |5 - x| &< \varepsilon \\ -\varepsilon < 5 - x &< \varepsilon \\ -\varepsilon < x - 5 &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$
This implies we can let $\delta = \varepsilon$.
Proof: Given $\varepsilon > 0$, choose $\delta = \varepsilon$.
$$\begin{aligned} |x-5| &< \delta \\ -\delta < x - 5 &< \delta \\ -\varepsilon < x - 5 &< \varepsilon \\ -\varepsilon < (x-3) - 2 &< \varepsilon \\ -\varepsilon < (-x+3) - (-2) &< \varepsilon \\ |3 - x - (-2)| &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$
Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 5} 3 - x = -2$.
9. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We wish to find $\delta > 0$ such that when $|x-3| < \delta$, $|f(x) - (-1)| < \varepsilon$.
Scratch-Work: Consider $|f(x) - (-1)| < \varepsilon$, keeping in mind we want to make a statement about $|x-3|$:
$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) - (-1)| &< \varepsilon \\ |5 - 2x + 1| &< \varepsilon \\ |-2x + 6| &< \varepsilon \\ 2|x-3| &< \varepsilon \\ |x-3| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \end{aligned}$$

suggesting $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$.

Proof: Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \dfrac{\varepsilon}{2}$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} |x-3| &< \delta \\ |x-3| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{2} \\ 2|x-3| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{2}\cdot 2 \\ |-2x+6| &< \varepsilon \\ |5-2x+1| &< \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 3} 5-2x = -1$.

11. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We wish to find $\delta > 0$ such that when $|x-4| < \delta$, $|f(x)-15| < \varepsilon$.
Scratch-Work: Consider $|f(x)-15| < \varepsilon$, keeping in mind we want to make a statement about $|x-4|$:

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x)-15| &< \varepsilon \\ |x^2+x-5-15| &< \varepsilon \\ |x^2+x-20| &< \varepsilon \\ |x-4|\cdot|x+5| &< \varepsilon \\ |x-4| &< \varepsilon/|x+5| \end{aligned}$$

Since x is near 4, we can safely assume that, for instance, $3 < x < 5$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} 3+5 < x+5 &< 5+5 \\ 8 < x+5 &< 10 \\ \frac{1}{10} < \frac{1}{x+5} &< \frac{1}{8} \\ \frac{\varepsilon}{10} < \frac{\varepsilon}{x+5} &< \frac{\varepsilon}{8} \end{aligned}$$

suggesting $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{10}$.
Proof: Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{10}$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} |x-4| &< \delta \\ |x-4| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{10} \\ |x-4| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{x+5} \\ |x-4|\cdot|x+5| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{x+5}\cdot|x+5| \end{aligned}$$

Assuming x is near 4, $x+5$ is positive and we can drop the absolute value signs on the right.

$$\begin{aligned} |x-4|\cdot|x+5| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{x+5}\cdot(x+5) \\ |x^2+x-20| &< \varepsilon \\ |(x^2+x-5)-15| &< \varepsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Thus, $\lim\limits_{x\to 4} x^2+x-5 = 15$.

13. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We wish to find $\delta > 0$ such that when $|x-2| < \delta$, $|f(x)-5| < \varepsilon$. However, since $f(x)=5$, a constant function, the latter inequality is simply $|5-5| < \varepsilon$, which is always true. Thus we can choose any δ we like; we arbitrarily choose $\delta = \varepsilon$.

Exercises 1.3

1. Answers will vary.
3. Answers will vary.
5. As x is near 1, both f and g are near 0, but f is approximately twice the size of g. (I.e., $f(x) \approx 2g(x)$.)
7. 6
9. Limit does not exist.
11. Not possible to know.
13. -45
15. -1
17. π
19. $-0.000000015 \approx 0$
21. Limit does not exist
23. 2
25. $\frac{\pi^2+3\pi+5}{5\pi^2-2\pi-3} \approx 0.6064$
27. -8
29. 10
31. $-3/2$
33. $1/3$
35. $-1/9$
37. -8
39. 0
41. 9
43. 3
45. 1
47. $4/3$
49. We find $\lim\limits_{x\to 0}\dfrac{\cos^2 x-1}{x(\cos x+1)} = \lim\limits_{x\to 0}\dfrac{\sin^2 x}{x(\cos x+1)} = \lim\limits_{x\to 0}\dfrac{\sin x}{x}\lim\limits_{x\to 0}\dfrac{\sin x}{\cos x+1} = 0$.

Exercises 1.4

1. The function approaches different values from the left and right; the function grows without bound; the function oscillates.
3. F
5. (a) 2
   (b) 2
   (c) 2
   (d) 1
   (e) As f is not defined for $x < 0$, this limit is not defined.
   (f) 1
7. (a) 2
   (b) 0
   (c) Does not exist.
   (d) 1
9. (a) 4
   (b) -4
   (c) Does not exist.
   (d) 0
11. (a) $a-1$
   (b) a
   (c) Does not exist.
   (d) a

13. (a) -1
 (b) 1
 (c) Does not exist.
 (d) 1
15. (a) -1
 (b) 0
 (c) Does not exist.
 (d) 0
17. (a) 2
 (b) 0
 (c) Does not exist
 (d) 1
19. (a) c
 (b) c
 (c) c
 (d) c
21. Answers will vary.
23. Answers will vary.
25. $-3/5$
27. $\frac{1}{2\sqrt{3}}$
29. -1.63

Exercises 1.5

1. F
3. F
5. T
7. Answers will vary.
9. (a) ∞
 (b) ∞
11. (a) 1
 (b) 0
 (c) $1/2$
 (d) $1/2$
13. (a) Limit does not exist
 (b) Limit does not exist
15. Tables will vary.

 (a)

x	$f(x)$
2.9	-15.1224
2.99	-159.12
2.999	-1599.12

 It seems $\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x) = -\infty$.

 (b)

x	$f(x)$
3.1	16.8824
3.01	160.88
3.001	1600.88

 It seems $\lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x) = \infty$.

 (c) It seems $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x)$ does not exist.

17. Tables will vary.

 (a)

x	$f(x)$
2.9	132.857
2.99	12124.4

 It seems $\lim_{x\to 3^-} f(x) = \infty$.

 (b)

x	$f(x)$
3.1	108.039
3.01	11876.4

 It seems $\lim_{x\to 3^+} f(x) = \infty$.

 (c) It seems $\lim_{x\to 3} f(x) = \infty$.

19. Horizontal asymptote at $y = 2$; vertical asymptotes at $x = -5, 4$.
21. Horizontal asymptote at $y = 0$; vertical asymptotes at $x = -1, 0$.
23. No horizontal or vertical asymptotes.
25. ∞
27. $-\infty$
29. Let $\varepsilon > 0$ be given. We wish to find $\delta > 0$ such that when $|x-1| < \delta$, $|f(x) - 3| < \varepsilon$.
 Scratch-Work: Consider $|f(x) - 3| < \varepsilon$, keeping in mind we want to make a statement about $|x - 1|$:

$$\begin{aligned} |f(x) - 3| &< \varepsilon \\ |5x - 2 - 3| &< \varepsilon \\ |5x - 5| &< \varepsilon \\ 5\,|x - 1| &< \varepsilon \\ |x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{5} \end{aligned}$$

 suggesting $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{5}$.
 Proof: Given $\varepsilon > 0$, let $\delta = \frac{\varepsilon}{5}$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned} |x - 1| &< \delta \\ |x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{5} \\ 5\,|x - 1| &< \frac{\varepsilon}{5}\cdot 5 \\ |5x - 5| &< \varepsilon \\ |5x - 2 - 3| &< \varepsilon \end{aligned}$$

 Thus $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} 5x - 2 = 3$.
31. Yes. The only "questionable" place is at $x = 3$, but the left and right limits agree.

Exercises 1.6

1. Answers will vary.
3. A root of a function f is a value c such that $f(c) = 0$.
5. F
7. T
9. F
11. No; $\lim\limits_{x\to 1} f(x) = 2$, while $f(1) = 1$.
13. No; $f(1)$ does not exist.
15. Yes
17. (a) No; $\lim\limits_{x\to -2} f(x) \neq f(-2)$
 (b) Yes
 (c) No; $f(2)$ is not defined.
19. (a) Yes
 (b) No; the left and right hand limits at 1 are not equal.
21. (a) Yes
 (b) No. $\lim_{x\to 8} f(x) = 16/5 \neq f(8) = 5$.
23. $(-\infty, -2] \cup [2, \infty)$
25. $(-\infty, -\sqrt{6}] \cup [\sqrt{6}, \infty)$
27. $(-\infty, \infty)$
29. $(0, \infty)$

31. $(-\infty, 0]$

33. $(-\infty,-4) \cup (-4,2) \cup (2,5) \cup (5,\infty)$

35. Yes, by the Intermediate Value Theorem.

37. We cannot say; the Intermediate Value Theorem only applies to function values between -10 and 10; as 11 is outside this range, we do not know.

39. $a = \frac{1}{3}$

41. $a = \frac{3}{4}$ and $b = -\frac{1}{4}$

43. Answers will vary.

45. Answers will vary.

47. Use the Bisection Method with an appropriate interval.

49. Use the Bisection Method with an appropriate interval.

51. (a) 20
    (b) 25
    (c) Limit does not exist
    (d) 25

53. Answers will vary.

Chapter 2

Exercises 2.0

1. $80x^{12}y^{17}$

3. $\dfrac{-x^3}{16y^{22}z^{35}}$

5. $\frac{5(x-1)}{3x^{\frac{1}{3}}}$

7. $6x(3x^2+2)^3(x^2-5)^2(7x^2-18)$

9. (a) $-\frac{1}{3}$ (b) undefined (c) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x-2}-5}$ (d) $\sqrt{\dfrac{1}{x-5}-2}$

11. (a) Possible solution: $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$, $g(x) = x^2$, and $h(x) = 2x+1$
(b) Possible solution: $f(x) = 2x+1$, $g(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$, and $h(x) = x^2$

Exercises 2.1

1. T

3. Answers will vary.

5. Answers will vary.

7. (a) $f'(x) = 2$, (b) $y = 2x$

9. (a) $g'(x) = 2x$, (b) $y = -4x-4$

11. (a) $f''(x) = 6x-1$, (b) $y = -7x+1$

13. (a) $r'(x) = \frac{-1}{x^2}$, (b) $y = -\frac{x}{4} - 1$

15. (a) $f'(x) = \dfrac{-1}{(s-2)^2}$, (b) $y = -x+4$

17. $f(x) = x^4$, $c = 3$

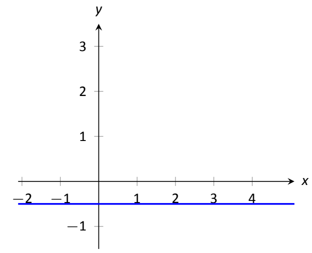
19. $f(x) = \cos x$, $c = -\pi$.

21. $y = .248x + 1.006$

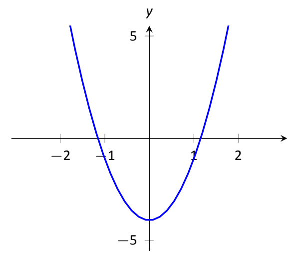
23. $y = 7.77(x-2) + e^2$, or $y = 7.77(x-2) + 7.39$.

25. (a) Approximations will vary; they should match (c) closely.
    (b) $f'(x) = 2x$
    (c) At $(-1,0)$, slope is -2. At $(0,-1)$, slope is 0. At $(2,3)$, slope is 4.

27.



29.



31. (a) Approximately on $(-1.5, 1.5)$.
    (b) Approximately on $(-\infty,-1.5) \cup (1.5,\infty)$.
    (c) Approximately at $x = \pm 1.5$.
    (d) On $(-\infty,-1) \cup (0,1)$.
    (e) On $(-1,0) \cup (1,\infty)$.
    (f) At $x = \pm 1$.

33. Approximately 0.54.

35. (a) 1
    (b) 3
    (c) Does not exist
    (d) $(-\infty,-3) \cup (3,\infty)$

Exercises 2.2

1. Velocity

3. Linear functions.

5. -17

7. $f(10.1)$ is likely most accurate, as accuracy is lost the farther from $x = 10$ we go.

9. 6

11. ft/s^2

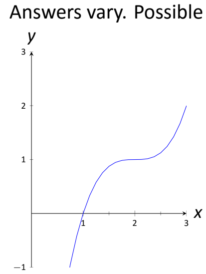
13. (a) thousands of dollars per car
    (b) It is likely that $P(0) < 0$. That is, negative profit for not producing any cars.

15. $f(x) = g'(x)$

17. Either $g(x) = f'(x)$ or $f(x) = g'(x)$ is acceptable. The actual answer is $g(x) = f'(x)$, but is very hard to show that $f(x) \neq g'(x)$ given the level of detail given in the graph.

19. $f(6) = 1$, $f'(6) = -\frac{3}{4}$

21. Answers vary. Possible solution



23. $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 12x + 12$

25. $f'(9) \approx 0.1667$.

Exercises 2.3

1. Power Rule.
3. One answer is $f(x) = 10e^x$.
5. $f(x)$, $g(x)$, $h(x)$, and $m(x)$
7. One possible answer is $f(x) = 17x - 205$.
9. $f'(x)$ is a velocity function, and $f''(x)$ is acceleration.
11. $f'(x) = 14x - 5$
13. $m'(t) = 45t^4 - \frac{3}{8}t^2 + 3$
15. $f'(r) = 6e^r$
17. $f'(x) = \frac{2}{x} - 1$
19. $h'(t) = e^t - \cos t + \sin t$
21. $f'(t) = 0$
23. $g'(x) = 24x^2 - 120x + 150$
25. $f'(x) = 18x - 12$
27. $f'(x) = \dfrac{3}{2}\sqrt{x} - \dfrac{1}{2x\sqrt{x}}$
29.
31. $n = -3, 2$
33. d is f, c is f', b is f'', and a is f'''
35. $g'(x) = -2\sin x$ $g''(x) = -2\cos x$ $g'''(x) = 2\sin x$ $g^{(4)}(x) = 2\cos x$
37. $p'(\theta) = 4\theta^3 - 3\theta^2$ $p''(\theta) = 12\theta^2 - 6\theta$ $p'''(\theta) = 24\theta - 6$ $p^{(4)}(\theta) = 24$
39. $f'(x) = f''(x) = f'''(x) = f^{(4)}(x) = 0$
41. (a) $v(t) = 5e^x - 5$, $a(t) = 5e^x$
    (b) $a(2) = 5e^2$ ft/s^2
    (c) $v(t) = 0$ at $t = 0$ sec, $a(0) = 5$ in/s^2
43. Tangent line: $y = t + 4$
45. Tangent line: $y = 4$
47. Tangent line: $y = 2x + 3$
49. The tangent line to $f(x) = x^4$ at $x = 3$ is $y = 108(x - 3) + 81$; thus $(3.01)^4 \approx y(3.01) = 108(.01) + 81 = 82.08$.

Exercises 2.4

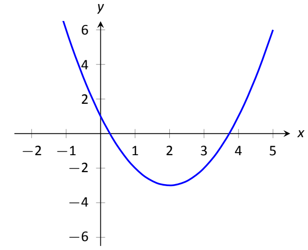
1. F
3. T
5. F
7.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}(\cot x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{\cos x}{\sin x}\right)\\ &= \frac{\sin x(-\sin x) - (\cos x)(\cos x)}{(\sin x)^2}\\ &= \frac{-[(\sin x)^2 + (\cos x)^2]}{(\sin x)^2}\\ &= \frac{-1}{(\sin x)^2} = -\csc^2 x\end{aligned}$$

9.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}(\csc x) &= \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{\sin x}\right)\\ &= \frac{\sin x \cdot 0 - 1\cdot(\cos x)}{(\sin x)^2}\\ &= \frac{-\cos x}{(\sin x)^2} = -\csc x \cot x\end{aligned}$$

11. (a) $g'(x) = 4x(5x^3) + 2x^2(15x^2)$
    (b) $g'(x) = 50x^4$
    (c) They are equal.
13. (a) $f'(x) = 2x(3 - x^3) + (x^2 + 5)(-3x^2)$
    (b) $f'(x) = -5x^4 - 15x^2 + 6x$
    (c) They are equal.
15. (a) $g'(x) = \frac{2x^2(3x^2-4x)-(x^3-2x^2)(4x)}{4x^4}$
    (b) $g'(x) = 1/2$
    (c) They are equal.
17. (a) $f'(t) = \frac{(t+1)(2t)-(t^2-1)(1)}{(t+1)^2}$
    (b) $f(t) = t - 1$ when $t \neq -1$, so $f'(t) = 1$.
    (c) They are equal.
19. $f'(t) = \frac{-2}{t^3}(\csc t - 4) + \frac{1}{t^2}(-\csc t \cot t)$
21. $F'(y) = \dfrac{8}{3}y^{5/3} + 15y^{2/3} = \frac{\sqrt[3]{y^2}(8y+45)}{3}$
23. $y' = \dfrac{4 - x}{2\sqrt{x}(x + 4)^2}$
25. $g'(t) = \frac{(\cos t-2t^2)(5t^4)-(t^5)(-\sin t-4t)}{(\cos t-2t^2)^2}$
27. $h'(t) = 14t + 6$
29. $f'(x) = -\dfrac{1}{x^2} + \dfrac{5}{2x^3\sqrt{x}} = \dfrac{-2x\sqrt{x} + 5}{2x^3\sqrt{x}}$
31. $g'(x) = -\frac{1+2x+3x^2}{(1+x+x^2+x^3)^2}$
33. $f'(x) = 7$
35. $f'(x) = \frac{\sin^2(x)+\cos^2(x)+3\cos(x)}{(\cos(x)+3)^2}$
37. $g'(t) = 12t^2e^t + 4t^3e^t - \cos^2 t + \sin^2 t$
39. $F'(x) = (8x - 1)(x^2 + 4x + 7)(3x^2) + (8x - 1)(2x + 4)(x^3 - 5) + (8)(x^2 + 4x + 7)(x^3 - 5)$
41. $f'(x) = 2xe^x \tan x = x^2e^x \tan x + x^2e^x \sec^2 x$
43. $y = 2x + 2$
45. $y = 4$
47. $x = 3/2$
49. $f'(x)$ is never 0.
51. $f''(x) = 2\cos x - x\sin x$
53. $f''(x) = \cot^2 x \csc x + \csc^3 x$
55. 1
57. -4
59. $-\dfrac{1}{25}$
61. (a) $-\frac{7}{2}$ (b) $\frac{1}{8}$ (c) $-\frac{9}{2}$ (d) $\frac{15}{2}$
63.



Exercises 2.5

1. T
3. F
5. T
7. $f'(x) = 10(4x^3 - x)^9 \cdot (12x^2 - 1) = (120x^2 - 10)(4x^3 - x)^9$
9. $g'(\theta) = 3(\sin\theta + \cos\theta)^2(\cos\theta - \sin\theta)$
11. $f'(x) = 4\left(x + \frac{1}{x}\right)^3\left(1 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right)$
13. $f'(x) = -3\sin(3x)$
15. $h'(t) = 8\sin^3(2t)\cos(2t)$
17. $g'(x) = 2(\tan x \sec^2 x - x\sec^2(x^2))$
19. $f'(x) = -\tan x$
21. $f'(x) = 2/x$
23. $r'(x) = \dfrac{-6(x-1)}{x^3\sqrt{4x-3}}$
25. $h'(x) = 200(2x+1)^9[(2x+1)10+1]^9$
27. $F'(x) = 2(2x+1)(2x+3)^2(24x^2+26x+3)$
29. $g'(t) = 5\cos(t^2+3t)\cos(5t-7) - (2t+3)\sin(t^2+3t)\sin(5t-7)$
31. $a'(t) = 7t^2e^{\tan(t^2)}(2t^2\sec^2(t^2)+3)$
33. $k'(x) = -\sin(x\sin x^3)(3x^3\cos x^3 + \sin x^3)$
35. 90
37. (a) 12 (b) 2.5 (c) 9 (d) 35
39. Tangent line: $y = 15(t-1)+1$
    Normal line: $y = -1/15(t-1)+1$
41. Tangent line: $y = -5e(t+1)+e$
    Normal line: $y = 1/(5e)(t+1)+e$
43. In both cases the derivative is the same: k/x.
45. Let $h(x) = x^{-1}$. Then $\dfrac{d}{dx}\dfrac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \dfrac{d}{dx}\left[f(x) \cdot h(g(x))\right] = \dfrac{d}{dx}\left[f(x)\right] \cdot h(g(x)) + f(x) \cdot \dfrac{d}{dx}\left[h(g(x))\right] = f'(x) \cdot h(g(x)) + f(x) \cdot h'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x) = f'(x)[g(x)]^{-1} - f(x)[g(x)]^{-2}g'(x) = \dfrac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$
47. (a) $^\circ$ F/mph
    (b) The sign would be negative; when the wind is blowing at 10 mph, any increase in wind speed will make it feel colder, i.e., a lower number on the Fahrenheit scale.

Exercises 2.6

1. Answers will vary.
3. T
5. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-4x^3}{2y+1}$
7. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \sin(x)\sec(y)$
9. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y}{x}$
11. $-\frac{x}{y^2}$
13. $\frac{x^2+2xy^2-y}{2x^2y-x+y^2}$
15. $-\frac{x}{y}$
17. $\dfrac{e^x(x+1)}{e^y(y+1)}$
19. $\dfrac{y - 4xy\sqrt{xy}}{2x^2\sqrt{xy} - x}$
21. (a) $y = 0$
    (b) $y = -1.859(x-0.1)+0.281$
23. (a) $y = 4$
    (b) $y = 0.93(x-2) + \sqrt[4]{108}$
25. (a) $y = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}(x - \frac{7}{2}) + \frac{6+3\sqrt{3}}{2}$
    (b) $y = \sqrt{3}(x - \frac{4+3\sqrt{3}}{2}) + \frac{3}{2}$
27. $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \dfrac{(2y+1)(-12x^2)+4x^3\left(2\frac{-4x^3}{2y+1}\right)}{(2y+1)^2}$
29. $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = \frac{\cos x\cos y + \sin^2 x\tan y}{\cos^2 y}$

Chapter 3

Exercises 3.1

1. Answers will vary.
3. Answers will vary.
5. F
7. A: abs. min B: none C: abs. max D: none E: none
9. $f'(0) = 0$
11. $f'(\pi/2) = 0$ $f'(3\pi/2) = 0$
13. $f'(0) = 0$
15. $f'(2)$ is not defined $f'(6) = 0$
17. min: $(5, -134.5)$
    max: $(0, 3)$
19. min: $(0,0)$ and $(\pm 2, 0)$
    max: $(\pm 2\sqrt{2/3}, 16\sqrt{3}/9)$
21. min: $(0,0)$
    max: $(5, 5/6)$
23. min: $(0,0)$ and $(\pi, 0)$
    max: $(3\pi/4, \frac{\sqrt{2}e^{3\pi/4}}{2})$
25. min: $(2, 2^{2/3} - 2)$
    max: $(8/27, 4/27)$
27. (a) $x^3 - x$, x^3, and $x^3 + x$ have 2, 1, and 0 critical numbers respectively. Because the derivative is a quadratic with at most 2 roots, a cubic cannot have 3 or more critical numbers.
    (b) A cubic can only have 2 or 0 extreme values.
29. $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{y(y-2x)}{x(x-2y)}$
31. $3x^2 + 1$

Exercises 3.2

1. Answers will vary.
3. Any c in $[-1, 1]$ is valid.
5. $c = -1/2$
7. Rolle's Thm. does not apply.
9. Rolle's Thm. does not apply.
11. $c = 0$
13. $c = 3/\sqrt{2}$
15. The Mean Value Theorem does not apply.
17. $c = \pm\sec^{-1}(2/\sqrt{\pi})$

19. $c = \frac{5\pm7\sqrt{7}}{6}$

21. No. Otherwise, with c given by the Mean Value Theorem, $\dfrac{4 - -1}{2 - 0} = f'(c) \leq 2$, a contradiction.

23. If f has more than 3 real roots, then Rolle's Theorem implies f' is a quadratic with more than 2 real roots.

25. $2pc + q = f'(c) = \frac{f(b)-f(a)}{b-a} = \frac{pb^2+qb+r-pa^2-qa-r}{b-a} = \frac{p(b^2-a^2)+q(b-a)}{b-a} = p(b+a) + q$ implies that $c = \frac{a+b}{2}$.

27. They are the odd, integer valued multiples of $\pi/2$ (such as $0, \pm\pi/2, \pm3\pi/2, \pm5\pi/2$, etc.)

Exercises 3.3

1. Answers will vary.

3. Answers will vary.

5. Increasing

7. decreasing on $(0, \frac{\pi}{6}) \cup (\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi6}{)} \cup (\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi)$,
increasing on $(\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}) \cup (\frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{3\pi}{2})$;
local maxima when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$,
local minima when $x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$.

9. decreasing on $(-1, 1)$,
increasing on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$;
local maxima when $x = -1$,
local minima when $x = 1$.

11. Graph and verify.

13. Graph and verify.

15. Graph and verify.

17. Graph and verify.

19. domain=$(-\infty, \infty)$
c.p. at $c = -2, 0$;
increasing on $(-\infty, -2) \cup (0, \infty)$;
decreasing on $(-2, 0)$;
rel. min at $x = 0$;
rel. max at $x = -2$.

21. domain=$(-\infty, \infty)$
c.p. at $c = 1$;
increasing on $(-\infty, \infty)$;

23. domain=$(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$
c.p. at $c = 0$;
decreasing on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (-1, 0)$;
increasing on $(0, 1) \cup (1, \infty)$;
rel. min at $x = 0$;

25. domain=$(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, \infty)$;
c.p. at $c = 2, 6$;
decreasing on $(-\infty, 0) \cup (0, 2) \cup (6, \infty)$;
increasing on $(2, 6)$;
rel. min at $x = 2$; rel. max at $x = 6$.

27. domain = $(-\infty, \infty)$;
c.p. at $c = -1, 1$;
decreasing on $(-1, 1)$;
increasing on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$;
rel. min at $x = 1$;
rel. max at $x = -1$

29. domain=$(-\infty, \infty)$;
c.p. at $c = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$;
decreasing on $(0, \frac{\pi}{2}) \cup (\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi)$;
increasing on $(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2})$;
rel. min at $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$;
rel. max at $x = \frac{3\pi}{2}$

31. domain=$(-\infty, \infty)$;
c.p. at $c = -1, 0, 1$;
decreasing on $(-\infty, 0)$;
increasing on $(0, \infty)$;
rel. min at $x = 0$

33. $c = \pm\cos^{-1}(2/\pi)$

Exercises 3.4

1. Answers will vary.

3. Yes; Answers will vary.

5. concave up on $(-2, 2)$;
concave down on $(-\infty, -2) \cup (2, \infty)$;
inflection points when $x = \pm2$

7. concave up on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$;
concave down on $(-1, 1)$;
inflection points when $x = \pm1$

9. Graph and verify.

11. Graph and verify.

13. Graph and verify.

15. Graph and verify.

17. Graph and verify.

19. (a) Possible points of inflection: none
(b) concave up on $(-\infty, \infty)$
(c) min: $x = 1$
(d) f' has no maximal or minimal value.

21. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = 0$
(b) concave down on $(-\infty, 0)$, concave up on $(0, \infty)$
(c) max: $x = -1/\sqrt{3}$, min: $x = 1/\sqrt{3}$
(d) f' has a minimal value at $x = 0$

23. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = -2/3, 0$
(b) concave down on $(-2/3, 0)$, concave up on $(-\infty, -2/3) \cup (0, \infty)$
(c) min: $x = 1$
(d) f' has a relative min at: $x = 0$, relative max at: $x = -2/3$

25. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = 1$
(b) concave up on $(-\infty, \infty)$
(c) min: $x = 1$
(d) f' has no relative extrema

27. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = 0, \pm1$
(b) concave down on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (0, 1)$, concave up on $(-1, 0) \cup (1, \infty)$
(c) critical values: $x = -1, 1$, no max/min
(d) f' has a relative max at $x = 0$

29. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = -2 \pm \sqrt{2}$
(b) concave down on $(-2 - \sqrt{2}, -2 + \sqrt{2})$, concave up on $(-\infty, -2 - \sqrt{2}) \cup (-2 + \sqrt{2}, \infty)$
(c) max: $x = -2$, min: $x = 0$
(d) f' has a relative max at $x = -2 - \sqrt{2}$, relative min at $x = -2 + \sqrt{2}$

31. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = \pm1/\sqrt{2}$

(b) concave down on $(-1/\sqrt{2}, 1/\sqrt{2})$, concave up on $(-\infty, -1/\sqrt{2}) \cup (1/\sqrt{2}, \infty)$

(c) max: $x = 0$

(d) f' has a relative max at $x = -1/\sqrt{2}$, a relative min at $x = 1/\sqrt{2}$

33. (a) Possible points of inflection: $x = \pi/6, 5\pi/6, 3\pi/2$

(b) concave down on $(0, \pi/6) \cup (5\pi/6, 2\pi)$, concave up on $(\pi/6, 5\pi/6)$

(c) max: $x = 3\pi/2$, min: $x = 3\pi/2$

(d) f' has a relative max at $x = 5\pi/6$, f' has a relative min at $x = \pi/6$

Exercises 3.5

1. Answers will vary.
3. T
5. concave up on $(-\infty, -1) \cup (1, \infty)$
concave down on $(-1, 1)$
inflection points when $x = \pm 1$
increasing on $(-2, 0) \cup (2, \infty)$
decreasing on $(-\infty, -2) \cup (0, 2)$
relative maximum when $x = 0$
relative minima when $x = \pm 2$
7. various possibilities
9. A good sketch will include the x and y intercepts..
11. Use technology to verify sketch.
13. Use technology to verify sketch.
15. Use technology to verify sketch.
17. Use technology to verify sketch.
19. Use technology to verify sketch.
21. Use technology to verify sketch.
23. Use technology to verify sketch.
25. Use technology to verify sketch.
27. Use technology to verify sketch.
29. Use technology to verify sketch.
31. Use technology to verify sketch.
33. Use technology to verify sketch.
35. Critical point: $x = 0$ Points of inflection: $\pm b/\sqrt{3}$
37. Critical point: $x = (a + b)/2$ Points of inflection: none

Chapter 4

Exercises 4.1

1. T
3. (a) $5/(2\pi) \approx 0.796$cm/s
(b) $1/(4\pi) \approx 0.0796$ cm/s
(c) $1/(40\pi) \approx 0.00796$ cm/s
5. 63.14mph
7. Due to the height of the plane, the gun does not have to rotate very fast.
(a) 0.0573 rad/s
(b) 0.0725 rad/s
(c) In the limit, rate goes to 0.0733 rad/s
9. (a) 0.04 ft/s
(b) 0.458 ft/s
(c) 3.35 ft/s
(d) Not defined; as the distance approaches 24, the rates approaches ∞.
11. (a) 50.92 ft/min
(b) 0.509 ft/min
(c) 0.141 ft/min
As the tank holds about 523.6ft^3, it will take about 52.36 minutes.
13. (a) The rope is 80ft long.
(b) 1.71 ft/sec
(c) 1.87 ft/sec
(d) About 34 feet.
15. The cone is rising at a rate of 0.003ft/s.

Exercises 4.2

1. T
3. 2500; the two numbers are each 50.
5. There is no maximum sum; the fundamental equation has only 1 critical value that corresponds to a minimum.
7. Area = 1/4, with sides of length $1/\sqrt{2}$.
9. The radius should be about 3.84cm and the height should be $2r = 7.67$cm. No, this is not the size of the standard can.
11. The height and width should be 18 and the length should be 36, giving a volume of $11,664$in^3.
13. $5 - 10/\sqrt{39} \approx 3.4$ miles should be run underground, giving a minimum cost of $374,899.96.
15. The dog should run about 19 feet along the shore before starting to swim.
17. The largest area is 2 formed by a square with sides of length $\sqrt{2}$.
19. A length of 2 in and height of 2.5 will give a cost of 52¢.

Exercises 4.3

1. T
3. F
5. Answers will vary.
7. Use $y = x^2$; $dy = 2x \cdot dx$ with $x = 6$ and $dx = -0.07$. Thus $dy = -0.84$; knowing $6^2 = 36$, we have $5.93^2 \approx 35.16$.
9. Use $y = x^3$; $dy = 3x^2 \cdot dx$ with $x = 7$ and $dx = -0.2$. Thus $dy = -29.4$; knowing $7^3 = 343$, we have $6.8^3 \approx 313.6$.
11. Use $y = \sqrt{x}$; $dy = 1/(2\sqrt{x}) \cdot dx$ with $x = 25$ and $dx = -1$. Thus $dy = -0.1$; knowing $\sqrt{25} = 5$, we have $\sqrt{24} \approx 4.9$.
13. Use $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$; $dy = 1/(3\sqrt[3]{x^2}) \cdot dx$ with $x = 8$ and $dx = 0.5$. Thus $dy = 1/24 \approx 1/25 = 0.04$; knowing $\sqrt[3]{8} = 2$, we have $\sqrt[3]{8.5} \approx 2.04$.
15. Use $y = \cos x$; $dy = -\sin x \cdot dx$ with $x = \pi/2 \approx 1.57$ and $dx \approx -0.07$. Thus $dy = 0.07$; knowing $\cos \pi/2 = 0$, we have $\cos 1.5 \approx 0.07$.
17. $dy = (2x + 3)dx$
19. $dy = \frac{-2}{4x^3}dx$
21. $dy = \left(2xe^{3x} + 3x^2e^{3x}\right)dx$
23. $dy = \frac{2(\tan x+1)-2x\sec^2 x}{(\tan x+1)^2}dx$
25. $dy = (e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x)dx$
27. $dy = \frac{1}{(x+2)^2}dx$

29. $dy = (\ln x)dx$

31. (a) ± 12.8 feet
 (b) ± 32 feet

33. $\pm 48\text{in}^2$, or $1/3\text{ft}^2$

35. (a) 298.8 feet
 (b) ± 17.3 ft
 (c) $\pm 5.8\%$

37. The isosceles triangle setup works the best with the smallest percent error.

Exercises 4.4

1. F

3. $x_0 = 1.5$, $x_1 = 1.5709148$, $x_2 = 1.5707963$, $x_3 = 1.5707963$, $x_4 = 1.5707963$, $x_5 = 1.5707963$

5. $x_0 = 0$, $x_1 = 2$, $x_2 = 1.2$, $x_3 = 1.0117647$, $x_4 = 1.0000458$, $x_5 = 1$

7. $x_0 = 2$, $x_1 = 0.6137056389$, $x_2 = 0.9133412072$, $x_3 = 0.9961317034$, $x_4 = 0.9999925085$, $x_5 = 1$

9. roots are: $x = -3.714$, $x = -0.857$, $x = 1$ and $x = 1.571$

11. roots are: $x = -2.165$, $x = 0$, $x = 0.525$ and $x = 1.813$

13. $x = -0.637$, $x = 1.410$

15. $x = \pm 4.493$, $x = 0$

17. The approximations alternate between $x = 1$, $x = 2$ and $x = 3$.

19. $f(x) = x^2 - 24$ and $x_0 = 5$ yield $x_1 = \frac{49}{10} = 4.9$ and $x_2 = \frac{4801/980}{\approx} 4.898980$.

21. $f(x) = x^3 - 8.5$ and $x_0 = 2$ yield $x_1 = \frac{49}{24} \approx 2.0416667$ and $x_2 \approx 2.0408279$.

Chapter 5

Exercises 5.1

1. Answers will vary.

3. Answers will vary.

5. Answers will vary.

7. velocity

9. $1/9x^9 + C$

11. $t + C$

13. $-1/(3t) + C$

15. $2\sqrt{x} + C$

17. $-\cos\theta + C$

19. $5e^{\theta} + C$

21. $\frac{5^t}{2\ln 5} + C$

23. $t^6/6 + t^4/4 - 3t^2 + C$

25. $e^{\pi}x + C$

27. $-x^{-3} + C$

29. $\frac{2}{9}x^{9/2} + C$

31. (a) $x > 0$
 (b) $1/x$
 (c) $x < 0$
 (d) $1/x$
 (e) $\ln|x| + C$. Explanations will vary.

33. $5e^x + 5$

35. $\tan x + 4$

37. $5/2x^2 + 7x + 3$

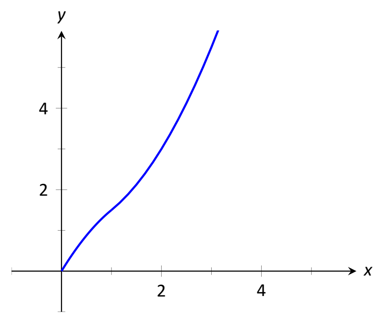
39. $5e^x - 2x$

41. $\frac{2x^4 \ln^2(2) + 2^x + x\ln 2(\ln 32 - 1) + \ln^2(2)\cos(x) - 1 - \ln^2(2)}{\ln^2(2)}$

43. $x^{-2} + 1$

45. $s(t) = 2t^{3/2}$.

47.



Other antiderivatives are vertical shifts of this one.

49. No answer provided.

Exercises 5.2

1. Answers will vary.

3. 0

5. (a) 3
 (b) 4
 (c) 3
 (d) 0
 (e) -4
 (f) 9

7. (a) 4
 (b) 2
 (c) 4
 (d) 2
 (e) 1
 (f) 2

9. (a) π
 (b) π
 (c) 2π
 (d) 10π

11. (a) $4/\pi$
 (b) $-4/\pi$
 (c) 0
 (d) $2/\pi$
 (e) $4/\pi$
 (f) $8/\pi$

13. (a) $40/3$
 (b) $26/3$
 (c) $8/3$
 (d) $38/3$

15. (a) 3ft/s

(b) 9.5ft

(c) 9.5ft

17. (a) 96ft/s

 (b) 6 seconds

 (c) 6 seconds

 (d) Never; the maximum height is 208ft.

19. 5

21. Answers can vary; one solution is $a = -2$, $b = 7$

23. -7

25. Answers can vary; one solution is $a = -11$, $b = 18$

27. $-\cos x - \sin x + \tan x + C$

29. $\ln|x| + \csc x + C$

Exercises 5.3

1. limits

3. Rectangles.

5. $2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 = 29$

7. $0 - 1 + 0 + 1 + 0 = 0$

9. $-1 + 2 - 3 + 4 - 5 + 6 = 3$

11. $1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 6$

13. Answers may vary; $\sum_{i=0}^{8}(i^2 - 1)$

15. Answers may vary; $\sum_{i=0}^{4}(-1)^i e^i$

17. 1045

19. -8525

21. 5050

23. 155

25. 24

27. 19

29. $\pi/3 + \pi/(2\sqrt{3}) \approx 1.954$

31. 0.388584

33. (a) Exact expressions will vary; $\frac{(1+n)^2}{4n^2}$.

 (b) $121/400$, $10201/40000$, $1002001/4000000$

 (c) $1/4$

35. (a) 8.

 (b) 8, 8, 8

 (c) 8

37. (a) Exact expressions will vary; $100 - 200/n$.

 (b) 80, 98, $499/5$

 (c) 100

39. (a) Exact expressions will vary; 80.5.

 (b) 72.25

 (c) 62.5

41.
$$\begin{aligned}\int_a^b k \cdot f(x)\,dx &= \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} k \cdot f(c_i)\Delta x \quad \text{T36.2}\\ &= \lim_{n\to\infty} k \cdot \sum_{i=1}^{n} k \cdot f(c_i)\Delta x \quad \text{T35.3}\\ &= k \cdot \lim_{n\to\infty}\sum_{i=1}^{n} k \cdot f(c_i)\Delta x \quad \text{T1.4}\\ &= k\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \quad \text{T36.2}\end{aligned}$$

43. $F(x) = 5\tan x + 4$

45. $G(t) = 4/6t^6 - 5/4t^4 + 8t + 9$

47. $F(x) = 2\sqrt{x} - \pi$

Exercises 5.4

1. Answers will vary.

3. T

5. 20

7. 0

9. 1

11. $(5 - 1/5)/\ln 5$

13. -4

15. $16/3$

17. $45/4$

19. $1/2$

21. $1/2$

23. $1/4$

25. 8

27. 0

29. 2

31. Explanations will vary. A sketch will help.

33. $c = \pm 2/\sqrt{3}$

35. $c = 64/9 \approx 7.1$

37. $2/pi$

39. $16/3$

41. $1/(e-1)$

43. (a) 400ft; (b) 850ft

45. (a) $128/5$ft; (b) same

47. 50ft/s

49. 0ft/s

51. $F'(x) = 3x^{11}$

53. $F'(x) = e^x \sin(e^x) - 1/x \sin(\ln x)$

Exercises 5.5

1. Chain Rule.

3. $\frac{1}{8}(x^3 - 5)^8 + C$

5. $\frac{1}{18}\left(x^2 + 1\right)^9 + C$

7. $\frac{1}{2}\ln|2x + 7| + C$

9. $\frac{2}{3}(x+3)^{3/2} - 6(x+3)^{1/2} + C = \frac{2}{3}(x-6)\sqrt{x+3} + C$

11. $2e^{\sqrt{x}} + C$

13. $-\frac{1}{2x^2} - \frac{1}{x} + C$

15. $\frac{\sin^3(x)}{3} + C$

17. $-\tan(4 - x) + C$

19. $\frac{\tan^3(x)}{3} + C$

21. The key is to rewrite $\cot x$ as $\cos x/\sin x$, and let $u = \sin x$.

23. $\frac{1}{3}e^{3x-1}+C$

25. $\frac{1}{2}e^{(x-1)^2}+C$

27. $\frac{e^{-3x}}{3}-e^{-x}+C$

29. $\frac{\left(\ln x\right)^3}{3}+C$

31. $\frac{1}{2}\ln\left(\ln\left(x^2\right)\right)+C$

33. $\frac{1}{45}(5x^3+5x^2+2)^9+C$

35. $-\frac{1}{3}\cot\left(x^3+1\right)+C$

37. $\ln|x-5|+C$

39. $\ln\left|x^2+7x+3\right|+C$

41. $3\sqrt{x^2-2x-6}+C$

43. $2\sin\sqrt{x}+C$

45. $-\ln 2$

47. $2/3$

49. $(1-e)/2$

51. 0

53. $\frac{15}{392}$

55. $\frac{1}{12}$

Chapter 6

Exercises 6.1

1. T
3. Answers will vary.
5. $16/3$
7. π
9. $2\sqrt{2}$
11. $4/3$
13. 8
15. $37/12$
17. 1
19. $9/2$
21. $1/12(9-2\sqrt{2})\approx 0.514$
23. 5
25. 133/20

Exercises 6.2

1. T
3. Recall that "dx" does not just "sit there;" it is multiplied by $A(x)$ and represents the thickness of a small slice of the solid. Therefore dx has units of in, giving $A(x)\ dx$ the units of in^3.
5. $175\pi/3$ units^3
7. $\dfrac{768\pi}{7}$
9. $35\pi/3$ units^3
11. $\dfrac{96\pi}{5}$
13. (a) $512\pi/15$
    (b) $256\pi/5$
    (c) $832\pi/15$
    (d) $128\pi/3$
15. (a) $104\pi/15$
    (b) $64\pi/15$
    (c) $32\pi/5$
17. (a) $\frac{\pi^2}{8}+\frac{\pi}{4}$
    (b) $\frac{3\pi^2}{8}+\frac{\pi}{4}-\pi\sqrt{2}$
    (c) $\frac{\pi^2}{8}+\frac{\pi}{4}+\pi\sqrt{2}$
19. The cross–sections of this cone are the same as the cone in Exercise 18. Thus they have the same volume of $250\pi/3$ units^3.
21. Orient the solid so that the x-axis is parallel to long side of the base. All cross–sections are trapezoids (at the far left, the trapezoid is a square; at the far right, the trapezoid has a top length of 0, making it a triangle). The area of the trapezoid at x is $A(x)=1/2(-1/2x+5+5)(5)=-5/4x+25$. The volume is 187.5 units^3.

Exercises 6.3

1. T
3. F
5. $9\pi/2$ units^3
7. $\dfrac{96\pi}{5}$
9. $48\pi\sqrt{3}/5$ units^3
11. $\dfrac{768\pi}{7}$
13. (a) $4\pi/5$
    (b) $8\pi/15$
    (c) $\pi/2$
    (d) $5\pi/6$
15. (a) $4\pi/3$
    (b) $\pi/3$
    (c) $4\pi/3$
    (d) $2\pi/3$
17. (a) $16\pi/3$
    (b) $8\pi/3$
    (c) 8π
    (d) 8π
19. (a) Disk: $\pi\int_1^2(\sqrt[3]{y-1})^2\,dy=\frac{3\pi}{5}$
    Shell: $2\pi\int_0^1 x(2-(x^3+1))\,dx=\frac{3\pi}{5}$
    (b) Disk: $\pi\int_0^1\left[2-(x^3+1)\right]^2\,dx=\frac{9\pi}{14}$
    Shell: $2\pi\int_1^2(2-y)\sqrt[3]{y-1}\,dy=\frac{9\pi}{14}$.

Exercises 6.4

1. In SI units, it is one Joule, i.e., one Newton–meter, or kg$\cdot$m/s$^2\cdot$m. In Imperial Units, it is ft–lb.
3. Smaller.
5. (a) 2450 J
   (b) 1568 J
7. 735 J
9. 11,100 ft–lb
11. 125 ft–lb
13. 12.5 ft–lb

15. 0.2625 = 21/80 J

17. 45 ft–lb

19. $953,284$ J

21. 192,767 ft–lb. Note that the tank is oriented horizontally. Let the origin be the center of one of the circular ends of the tank. Since the radius is 3.75 ft, the fluid is being pumped to $y = 4.75$; thus the distance the gas travels is $h(y) = 4.75 - y$. A differential element of water is a rectangle, with length 20 and width $2\sqrt{3.75^2 - y^2}$. Thus the force required to move that slab of gas is $F(y) = 40 \cdot 45.93 \cdot \sqrt{3.75^2 - y^2}dy$. Total work is $\int_{-3.75}^{3.75} 40 \cdot 45.93 \cdot (4.75 - y)\sqrt{3.75^2 - y^2}\,dy$. This can be evaluated without actual integration; split the integral into $\int_{-3.75}^{3.75} 40 \cdot 45.93 \cdot (4.75)\sqrt{3.75^2 - y^2}\,dy + \int_{-3.75}^{3.75} 40 \cdot 45.93 \cdot (-y)\sqrt{3.75^2 - y^2}\,dy$. The first integral can be evaluated as measuring half the area of a circle; the latter integral can be shown to be 0 without much difficulty. (Use substitution and realize the bounds are both 0.)

23. (a) approx. 577,000 J
    (b) approx. 399,000 J
    (c) approx. 110,000 J (By volume, half of the water is between the base of the cone and a height of 3.9685 m. If one rounds this to 4 m, the work is approx 104,000 J.)

25. 617,400 J

Index

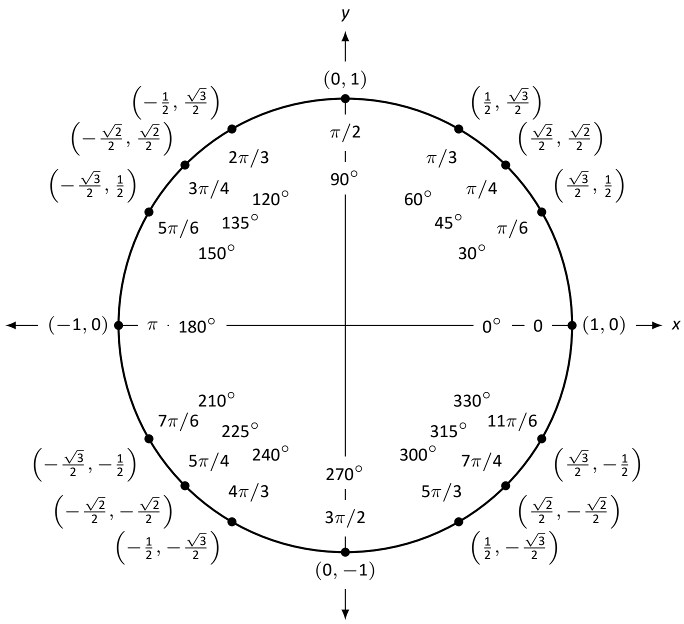
Differentiation Rules

1. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(cx) = c$
2. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(u \pm v) = u' \pm v'$
3. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(u \cdot v) = uv' + u'v$
4. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\dfrac{u}{v}\right) = \dfrac{vu' - uv'}{v^2}$
5. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(u(v)) = u'(v)v'$
6. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(c) = 0$
7. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(x) = 1$
8. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$
9. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$
10. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(a^x) = \ln a \cdot a^x$
11. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \dfrac{1}{x}$
12. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\log_a x) = \dfrac{1}{\ln a} \cdot \dfrac{1}{x}$
13. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x$
14. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x$
15. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\csc x) = -\csc x \cot x$
16. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sec x) = \sec x \tan x$
17. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x$
18. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\cot x) = -\csc^2 x$
19. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sin^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$
20. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\cos^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{-1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$
21. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\csc^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{-1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}$
22. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sec^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}$
23. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\tan^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{1+x^2}$
24. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\cot^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{-1}{1+x^2}$
25. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\cosh x) = \sinh x$
26. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\sinh x) = \cosh x$
27. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\tanh x) = \operatorname{sech}^2 x$
28. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{sech} x) = -\operatorname{sech} x \tanh x$
29. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\operatorname{csch} x) = -\operatorname{csch} x \coth x$
30. $\dfrac{d}{dx}(\coth x) = -\operatorname{csch}^2 x$
31. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\cosh^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-1}}$
32. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\sinh^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$
33. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\operatorname{sech}^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{-1}{x\sqrt{1-x^2}}$
34. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\operatorname{csch}^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{-1}{|x|\sqrt{1+x^2}}$
35. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\tanh^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{1-x^2}$
36. $\dfrac{d}{dx}\left(\coth^{-1} x\right) = \dfrac{1}{1-x^2}$

Integration Rules

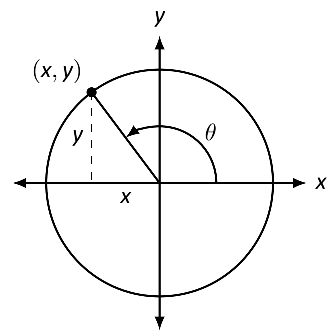
1. $\displaystyle\int c \cdot f(x)\,dx = c\int f(x)\,dx$
2. $\displaystyle\int f(x) \pm g(x)\,dx = \int f(x)\,dx \pm \int g(x)\,dx$
3. $\displaystyle\int 0\,dx = C$
4. $\displaystyle\int 1\,dx = x + C$
5. $\displaystyle\int x^n\,dx = \frac{1}{n+1}x^{n+1} + C,\ n \neq -1$
   $n \neq -1$
6. $\displaystyle\int e^x\,dx = e^x + C$
7. $\displaystyle\int a^x\,dx = \frac{1}{\ln a} \cdot a^x + C$
8. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = \ln|x| + C$
9. $\displaystyle\int \cos x\,dx = \sin x + C$
10. $\displaystyle\int \sin x\,dx = -\cos x + C$
11. $\displaystyle\int \tan x\,dx = -\ln|\cos x| + C$
12. $\displaystyle\int \sec x\,dx = \ln|\sec x + \tan x| + C$
13. $\displaystyle\int \csc x\,dx = -\ln|\csc x + \cot x| + C$
14. $\displaystyle\int \cot x\,dx = \ln|\sin x| + C$
15. $\displaystyle\int \sec^2 x\,dx = \tan x + C$
16. $\displaystyle\int \csc^2 x\,dx = -\cot x + C$
17. $\displaystyle\int \sec x \tan x\,dx = \sec x + C$
18. $\displaystyle\int \csc x \cot x\,dx = -\csc x + C$
19. $\displaystyle\int \cos^2 x\,dx = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x) + C$
20. $\displaystyle\int \sin^2 x\,dx = \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{4}\sin(2x) + C$
21. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x^2+a^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C$
22. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\,dx = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{x}{a}\right) + C$
23. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}\sec^{-1}\left(\frac{|x|}{a}\right) + C$
24. $\displaystyle\int \cosh x\,dx = \sinh x + C$
25. $\displaystyle\int \sinh x\,dx = \cosh x + C$
26. $\displaystyle\int \tanh x\,dx = \ln(\cosh x) + C$
27. $\displaystyle\int \coth x\,dx = \ln|\sinh x| + C$
28. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-a^2}}\,dx = \ln\left|x + \sqrt{x^2-a^2}\right| + C$
29. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \ln\left|x + \sqrt{x^2+a^2}\right| + C$
30. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{a^2-x^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{2a}\ln\left|\frac{a+x}{a-x}\right| + C$
31. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left(\frac{x}{a+\sqrt{a^2-x^2}}\right) + C$
32. $\displaystyle\int \frac{1}{x\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left|\frac{x}{a+\sqrt{x^2+a^2}}\right| + C$

The Unit Circle



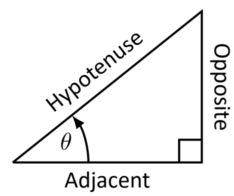
Definitions of the Trigonometric Functions

Unit Circle Definition



$$\sin\theta = y \qquad \cos\theta = x$$
$$\csc\theta = \frac{1}{y} \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{1}{x}$$
$$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x} \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{x}{y}$$

Right Triangle Definition



$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{O}}{\text{H}} \qquad \csc\theta = \frac{\text{H}}{\text{O}}$$
$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{A}}{\text{H}} \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{\text{H}}{\text{A}}$$
$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{O}}{\text{A}} \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{\text{A}}{\text{O}}$$

Common Trigonometric Identities

Pythagorean Identities

$$\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x = 1$$
$$\tan^2 x + 1 = \sec^2 x$$
$$1 + \cot^2 x = \csc^2 x$$

Cofunction Identities

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \cos x \qquad \csc\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \sec x$$
$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \sin x \qquad \sec\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \csc x$$
$$\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \cot x \qquad \cot\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) = \tan x$$

Double Angle Formulas

$$\sin 2x = 2\sin x\cos x$$
$$\begin{aligned}\cos 2x &= \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x\\ &= 2\cos^2 x - 1\\ &= 1 - 2\sin^2 x\end{aligned}$$
$$\tan 2x = \frac{2\tan x}{1 - \tan^2 x}$$

Sum to Product Formulas

$$\sin x + \sin y = 2\sin\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{x-y}{2}\right)$$
$$\sin x - \sin y = 2\sin\left(\frac{x-y}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)$$
$$\cos x + \cos y = 2\cos\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{x-y}{2}\right)$$
$$\cos x - \cos y = 2\sin\left(\frac{x+y}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{y-x}{2}\right)$$

Power–Reducing Formulas

$$\sin^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{2}$$
$$\cos^2 x = \frac{1 + \cos 2x}{2}$$
$$\tan^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{1 + \cos 2x}$$

Even/Odd Identities

$$\sin(-x) = -\sin x$$
$$\cos(-x) = \cos x$$
$$\tan(-x) = -\tan x$$
$$\csc(-x) = -\csc x$$
$$\sec(-x) = \sec x$$
$$\cot(-x) = -\cot x$$

Product to Sum Formulas

$$\sin x\sin y = \frac{1}{2}\big(\cos(x-y) - \cos(x+y)\big)$$
$$\cos x\cos y = \frac{1}{2}\big(\cos(x-y) + \cos(x+y)\big)$$
$$\sin x\cos y = \frac{1}{2}\big(\sin(x+y) + \sin(x-y)\big)$$

Angle Sum/Difference Formulas

$$\sin(x \pm y) = \sin x\cos y \pm \cos x\sin y$$
$$\cos(x \pm y) = \cos x\cos y \mp \sin x\sin y$$
$$\tan(x \pm y) = \frac{\tan x \pm \tan y}{1 \mp \tan x\tan y}$$

Areas and Volumes

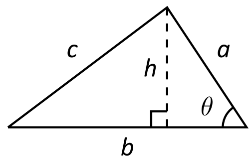
Triangles

$h = a \sin\theta$

Area $= \dfrac{1}{2}bh$

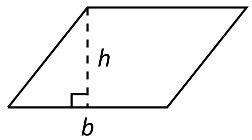
Law of Cosines:

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos\theta$



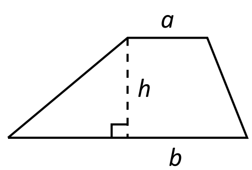
Parallelograms

Area = bh



Trapezoids

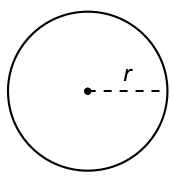
Area = $\frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$



Circles

Area $= \pi r^2$

Circumference $= 2\pi r$

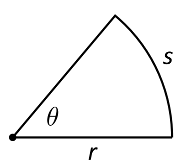


Sectors of Circles

θ in radians

Area $= \dfrac{1}{2}\theta r^2$

$s = r\theta$

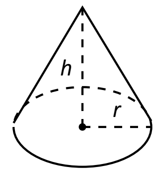


Right Circular Cone

Volume $= \dfrac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$

Surface Area $=$

$\pi r\sqrt{r^2 + h^2} + \pi r^2$

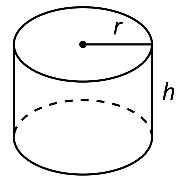


Right Circular Cylinder

Volume $= \pi r^2 h$

Surface Area $=$

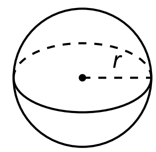
$2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$



Sphere

Volume $= \dfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

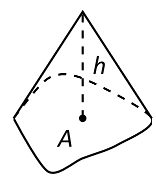
Surface Area $= 4\pi r^2$



General Cone

Area of Base $= A$

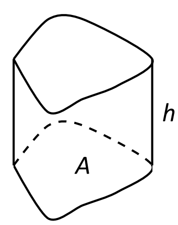
Volume $= \dfrac{1}{3}Ah$



General Right Cylinder

Area of Base $= A$

Volume $= Ah$



Algebra

Factors and Zeros of Polynomials

Let $p(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$ be a polynomial. If $p(a) = 0$, then a is a *zero* of the polynomial and a solution of the equation $p(x) = 0$. Furthermore, $(x - a)$ is a *factor* of the polynomial.

Fundamental Theorem of Algebra

An nth degree polynomial has n (not necessarily distinct) zeros. Although all of these zeros may be imaginary, a real polynomial of odd degree must have at least one real zero.

Quadratic Formula

If $p(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$, then the zeros of p are $x = \dfrac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$

Special Factoring

$$x^2 - a^2 = (x-a)(x+a) \qquad x^3 \pm a^3 = (x \pm a)(x^2 \mp ax + a^2) \qquad x^4 - a^4 = (x^2 - a^2)(x^2 + a^2)$$

Binomial Theorem

$$(x+y)^2 = x^2 + 2xy + y^2 \qquad (x+y)^3 = x^3 + 3x^2y + 3xy^2 + y^3$$

$$(x+y)^4 = x^4 + 4x^3y + 6x^2y^2 + 4xy^3 + y^4 \qquad (x+y)^n = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} y^k$$

Rational Zero Theorem

If $p(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$ has integer coefficients, then every *rational zero* of p is of the form $x = r/s$, where r is a factor of a_0 and s is a factor of a_n.

Factoring by Grouping

$acx^3 + adx^2 + bcx + bd = ax^2(cs + d) + b(cx + d) = (ax^2 + b)(cx + d)$

Arithmetic Operations

$$ab + ac = a(b + c) \qquad \frac{a}{b} + \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad + bc}{bd} \qquad \frac{a+b}{c} = \frac{a}{c} + \frac{b}{c}$$

$$\frac{\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)}{\left(\frac{c}{d}\right)} = \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)\left(\frac{d}{c}\right) = \frac{ad}{bc} \qquad \frac{\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)}{c} = \frac{a}{bc} \qquad \frac{a}{\left(\frac{b}{c}\right)} = \frac{ac}{b}$$

$$a\left(\frac{b}{c}\right) = \frac{ab}{c} \qquad \frac{a-b}{c-d} = \frac{b-a}{d-c} \qquad \frac{ab + ac}{a} = b + c$$

Exponents and Radicals

$$a^0 = 1,\ \ a \neq 0 \qquad (ab)^x = a^x b^x \qquad a^x a^y = a^{x+y} \qquad \sqrt{a} = a^{1/2} \qquad \frac{a^x}{a^y} = a^{x-y} \qquad \sqrt[n]{a} = a^{1/n}$$

$$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^x = \frac{a^x}{b^x} \qquad \sqrt[n]{a^m} = a^{m/n} \qquad a^{-x} = \frac{1}{a^x} \qquad \sqrt[n]{ab} = \sqrt[n]{a}\sqrt[n]{b} \qquad (a^x)^y = a^{xy} \qquad \sqrt[n]{\frac{a}{b}} = \frac{\sqrt[n]{a}}{\sqrt[n]{b}}$$

Additional Formulas

Summation Formulas

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} c = cn \qquad \sum_{i=1}^{n} i = \frac{n(n+1)}{2} \qquad \sum_{i=1}^{n} i^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} \qquad \sum_{i=1}^{n} i^3 = \left(\frac{n(n+1)}{2}\right)^2$$

Trapezoidal Rule

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{2}\left[f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + \cdots + 2f(x_n) + f(x_{n+1})\right]$$

with Error $\leq \dfrac{(b-a)^3}{12n^2}\left[\max|f''(x)|\right]$

Simpson's Rule

$$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{3}\left[f(x_1) + 4f(x_2) + 2f(x_3) + 4f(x_4) + \cdots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + 4f(x_n) + f(x_{n+1})\right]$$

with Error $\leq \dfrac{(b-a)^5}{180n^4}\left[\max\left|f^{(4)}(x)\right|\right]$

Arc Length

$$L = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + f'(x)^2}\,dx$$

Work Done by a Variable Force

$$W = \int_a^b F(x)\,dx$$

Force Exerted by a Fluid

$$F = \int_a^b w\,d(y)\,\ell(y)\,dy$$

Taylor Series Expansion for $f(x)$

$$p_n(x) = f(c) + f'(c)(x-c) + \frac{f''(c)}{2!}(x-c)^2 + \frac{f'''(c)}{3!}(x-c)^3 + \cdots + \frac{f^{(n)}(c)}{n!}(x-c)^n$$

Summary of Tests for Series $\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$

Test	Term	Condition(s) of Convergence	Condition(s) of Divergence	Comment
n^{th}-Term			$\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n \neq 0$	cannot show convergence.
Geometric Series	$a_n = ar^n$	$\lvert r\rvert < 1$	$\lvert r\rvert \geq 1$	Sum $= \dfrac{ar}{1-r}$
Telescoping Series	$a_n = b_n - b_{n+m}$	$\lim_{n\to\infty} b_n = L$		Sum $= \left(\sum_{n=1}^{m} b_n\right) - L$
p-Series	$a_n = (an+b)^{-p}$	$p > 1$	$p \leq 1$	
Integral Test		$\int_1^{\infty} a(n)\, dn$ converges	$\int_1^{\infty} a(n)\, dn$ diverges	$a_n = a(n)$ must be continuous and decreasing
Direct Comparison		$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n$ converges and $0 \leq a_n \leq b_n$	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n$ diverges and $0 \leq b_n \leq a_n$	
Limit Comparison		$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n$ converges and $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n/b_n \geq 0$	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} b_n$ diverges and $\lim_{n\to\infty} a_n/b_n > 0$ or $= \infty$	
Ratio Test		$\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} < 1$	$\lim_{n\to\infty} \dfrac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} > 1$ or $= \infty$	$\{a_n\}$ must be positive
Root Test		$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(a_n\right)^{1/n} < 1$	$\lim_{n\to\infty} \left(a_n\right)^{1/n} > 1$ or $= \infty$	$\{a_n\}$ must be positive